# MANUSMṚTI

***With the 'Manubhāṣya' of Medhātithi***

# MANUSMṚTI

## *With the 'Manubhāṣya' of Medhātithi*

**Text, Translation and Notes**

**VOLUME 1**
*Sanskrit Text*
**Part I: Adhyāyas 1-6**

**VOLUME 2**
*Sanskrit Text*
**Part II: Adhyāyas 7-12**

**VOLUME 3**
*English Translation*
**Part I: Discourses I & II**

**VOLUME 4**
*English Translation*
**Part II: Discourses III & IV**

**VOLUME 5**
*English Translation*
**Part III: Discourses V, VI & VII**

**VOLUME 6**
*English Translation*
**Part IV: Discourse VIII**

**VOLUME 7**
*English Translation*
**Part V: Discourses IX, X, XI & XII**

**VOLUME 8**
*Notes*
**Part I: Textual**

**VOLUME 9**
*Notes*
**Part II: Explanatory**

**VOLUME 10**
*Notes*
**Part III: Comparative**

# MANUSMṚTI

## *With the 'Manubhāṣya' of Medhātithi*

**Volume 5**

ENGLISH TRANSLATION

PART III

DISCOURSES V, VI & VII

*Translated by*

GANGANATH JHA

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS
PRIVATE LIMITED • DELHI

# CONTENTS

## Discourse V


| Section | | Page |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | What shortens Life ? ... ... ... | 1 |
| 2. | Objectionable Food ... ... ... | 5 |
| 3. | Penalty for eating Forbidden Food ... ... | 25 |
| 4. | Killing of Animals for Food ... ... ... | 27 |
| 5. | Stale Food ... ... ... ... | 29 |
| 6. | Lawful and Forbidden Meat ... ... ... | 32 |
| 7. | Impurity due to Death ... ... ... | 66 |
| 8. | Sapiṇḍa—relationship as bearing on 'Impurity' ... | 73 |
| 9. | Other forms of Impurity ... ... ... | 80 |
| 10. | Means of Purification ... ... ... | 123 |
| 11. | Impurity in the case of persons beyond the pale of Sapiṇḍa relationship ... ... ... | 124 |
| 12. | Means of Purification for Corporeal Beings ... | 126 |
| 13. | Purification of Substances ... ... ... | 132 |
| 14. | Duties of Women ... ... ... ... | 171 |
| 15. | Conclusion ... ... ... ... | 185 |


## Discourse VI


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Introductory ... ... ... ... | 187 |
| 2. | The Procedure to be adopted ... ... | 189 |
| 3. | Details of the Hermit's Life ... ... ... | 192 |
| 4. | The Renunciate ... ... ... ... | 217 |
| 5. | The manner of Paying the three Debts ... | 220 |

| SECTION | | PAGE |
|---|---|---|
| 6. | Procedure of going forth as a Wandering Mendicant | 223 |
| 7. | Means of Removing Sin ... ... ... | 241 |
| 8. | The Renouncer of the Veda ... ... ... | 260 |

DISCOURSE VII

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Important Position of the King ... ... | 273 |
| 2. | Punishment ... ... ... ... | 281 |
| 3. | The King's Assistants ... ... ... | 292 |
| 4. | Duties of the King ... ... ... ... | 294 |
| 5. | The Ambassador ... ... ... ... | 319 |
| 6. | Fortification ... ... ... ... | 323 |
| 7. | Domestic Duties ... ... ... .... | 327 |
| 8. | Duties in Battle ... ... ... ... | 336 |
| 9. | Art of Government ... ... ... ... | 346 |
| 10. | Internal Administration ... ... ... | 354 |
| 11. | Customs-Duties ... ... ... ... | 360 |
| 12. | Daily Routine of Work ... ... ... | 367 |
| 13. | War .... .... ... ... ... | 390 |
| 14. | Consolidation of Conquered Territory ... ... | 406 |
| 15. | General Precepts ... ... ... ... | 415 |
| 16. | Subsequent Routine ... ... ... | 418 |
| | *Index* ... ... ... ... ... | 425 |

# DISCOURSE V.

## Sources of Evil

---

## SECTION (I)

## What shortens Life ?

---

### VERSE (I)

THE SAGES, HAVING HEARD THE DUTIES OF THE ACCOMPLISHED STUDENT AS JUST DESCRIBED, SAID THIS TO THE HIGH-SOULED BHṚGU, WHO SPRANG FROM FIRE.—(1)

*Bhāṣya* :

Having heard the duties of the Student and the Householder as expounded in the foregoing three Discourses, the great Sages, Marīchi and others, '*said to*'—asked the following question of—Bhṛgu, their teacher.

"In the text we find the expression *of the Accomplished Student*—'*snātakasya*' ; why then do you bring in the *Student* ?"

Our answer to this is that the present verse is meant to be descriptive of what has gone before ; and as a matter of fact, the duties of the Student also have been described.

'*High-souled*' and '*who sprang from the fire*' are the epithets of Bhṛgu ;—'He whose origination was from the fire.'

"But in discourse I, verse 34, Bhṛgu has been spoken of as the son of Manu".

True; but what was stated there was an imaginary commendation, while what is said here is in accordance with the account found in the Vedas of Bhṛgu having been born out of fire. The name '*Bhṛgu*' has been thus explained—'What rose out first out of the fallen semen was the Sun, and what rose as the second was Bhṛgu'. Or, what is asserted here may be only figurative; the origin of Bhṛgu being described as 'Fire', on the basis of similarity, as regards effulgence.

In any case, it is not necessary to lay stress upon either of the two explanations as being the more reasonable of the two; because this is not what forms the main subject-matter of the treatise.

The whole of the text, describing the question and the answer, is meant to indicate the importance of the subject of the evils attaching to food; the meaning being that the evils attaching to the food itself are more serious than those attaching to the nature of its gift and acceptance; and this on the ground that the defects attaching to the thing itself are more intimate, and hence more serious, than those arising from contact.

"In connection with the defects of contact, the Expiatory Rite that is laid down is a three days' fast; while that in connection with the thing itself, is a single day's fast (5. 20). How then can this latter be said to be *more serious*?"

Our answer is as follows:—The greater seriousness here spoken of refers to *garlic* and such things, in connection with which it is stated that—'by eating these intentionally the man becomes an outcast' (5.19); so that the expiation necessary would be that which has been prescribed for outcasts (which is very serious).—(1)

## VERSE (2)

"How is it, O Lord, that Death overpowers the Brāhmaṇas who are learned in the Vedic lore, and who perform their duty exactly as it has been thus described?" —(2)

### *Bhāṣya*

The Text now shows what the great Sages asked.

'*Thus*'—refers to the *manner* in which the Treatise has propounded the subject; and '*exactly as described*'—refers to the *subject-matter* of the Treatise.

Those Twice-born men who perform the duty exactly in the form in which it has been described in the present Treatise;—that all *twice-born men* are indicated by the terms '*vipra*' '*brahmaṇa*', in the Text will be clear from what is going to be said in verse 26 below, where 'twice-born' is the term used;—'*how is it that Death overpowers them*'—while still in the state of the 'Student,' or in that of the 'Accomplished Student'? How is this, when, in reality, they should live the full span of human life? The span of a man's life is a hundred years; so that the death of Brāhmaṇas before that is not proper; specially as it has been declared that 'from right conduct one attains longevity' (4·156), and 'no calamity befalls persons who recite the Veda and offer oblations' (4·146). (2).

## VERSES (3-4).

BHṚGU, THE RIGHTEOUS SON OF MANU, SAID TO THE GREAT SAGES—"LISTEN, BY WHAT FAULT DEATH SEEKS TO DESTROY THE BRĀHMAṆAS."—(3).

DEATH SEEKS TO DESTROY THE BRĀHMAṆAS ON ACCOUNT OF THEIR OMITTING THE STUDY OF THE VEDAS, ON ACCOUNT OF NEGLECT OF RIGHT CONDUCT, ON ACCOUNT OF SLOTHFULNESS AND ON ACCOUNT OF THE DEFECTS OF FOOD.—(4).

### *Bhāṣya.*

*Objection*—"When the question has been put forward in regard to Brāhmaṇas *who perform their duties*, it is not right to answer it by indicating the 'fault'; nor can there be any connection with what follows (in verse 4) [as omission of Vedic Study &c. is not possible for those who perform their duties]."

The answer to the above is as follows:—'Omission of Vedic Study' and the rest have been put forward only by way of illustration; tne sense being—'just as the omission of Vedic Study

and the rest are acknowledged by you all to be the causes of death, so also are the defects of food, going to be described below. Even when a man carries on Vedic Study &c., the fulfilment of his above-described duty is not complete, if it is beset with the very much more serious drawback of defective food. This is emphasised here in view of the fact that this is an entirely different section (dealing with defects of food). (3-4)

---

## SECTION (2.)

## Objectionable Food.

### VERSE (5).

GARLIC, LEEKS AND ONIONS, MUSHROOMS AND ALL THAT PROCEEDS FROM IMPURE THINGS, ARE UNFIT TO BE EATEN BY TWICE-BORN MEN.—(5).

*Bhāṣya.*

The terms '*garlic*' &c. are well-known among men.

The term '*kavaka*' is the name of a genus, sometimes regarded as the same as the well-known thing '*kryāku*' (?); mushrooms also are '*kavaka*'; as it is forbidden under the name of '*kavaka*', while the expiatory rite in connection with its eating has been prescribed under the name of '*chhatrāka*,' in verse 19; and no other thing (except the mushroom) is known by the name '*chhatrāka*'; nor will it be right to regard, on the basis of verbal similarity alone (between '*chhatrāka*' and '*chhatrākāra*', umbrella-shaped), all those things as '*chhatrāka*' which *resemble the umbrella*, are '*chhatrākāra*'; as in that case the prohibition (of '*chhatrāka*') would apply also to the *suvarchala* and other things (which also are *umbrella-shaped*); and this would be contrary to all usage. Hence we conclude that '*chhatrāka*' and '*kavaka*' are one and the same thing. Says the author of the *Nirukta*—'The *chhatrāka* is *kṣuṇṇa*, since it is smashed.' From this it is clear that the name '*kavaka*' applies to those white shoots that grow out of the earth that has been ploughed; this is also in keeping with what is going to be said in connection with '*kavakas growing out of the earth*' (6·14); and it has also been just pointed out that the name applies to what is 'smashed' by a stroke of the foot. It is for this reason (of its being described as *growing out of the earth*, and of its being *smashed* by a

stroke of the foot) that the prohibition (of '*kavaka*') is not applicable to those vegetable growths that shoot out of the trunks of trees.

In medicinal treatises the *kukuṇḍa* has been described as '*kavaka*'; but this explanation (of the name on a purely conventional basis) cannot be accepted in the same manner as that in regard to the term '*go*' and the rest. Further, as a matter of fact, in ordinary *parlance* the term '*kavaka*' is always applied to a *vegetable*. Hence it is on the basis of usage that the exact signification of the term, wherever it occurs in a medical or other scientific treatise, should be ascertained, and we have already shown what that signification is.

Other things also, which resemble garlic and such things mentioned here, which resemble these latter in colour and smell, have been forbidden by Viṣṇu. In the *Smṛti* of Parāshara however the prohibition is by name, and this for the purpose of prescribing the special Expiatory Rite of '*Chāndrāyaṇa*' in connection with it. From this it follows that '*lavataka*', '*karṇikāra*' and such other things are forbidden.

'*Things proceeding from impure substances*';—those that grow of impure things or are in contact with them.

Others have declared that it is not right to forbid those things that grow only out of impure things, these standing on the same footing as '*mūlā*' (radish) '*vāstuka*' (a kind of grass) and such other things (known to grow out of impure things);—so that the prohibition does not apply to those grains and vegetables growing in fields specially manured for the purpose of enriching the harvest.

This however is not right. Because from what the text says it is clear that all these things are equally unfit to be eaten. Further, what has been suggested might have been accepted, if it were absolutely impossible for anything to grow without the use of impure substances. There are some things however that grow directly out of impure substances, while there are some

that grow out of mere connection with them ; the right view to take therefore is that the prohibition applies to the former only, and not to the later.

As regards *meat*, even though it grows out of semen and blood (both impure substances), yet the present prohibition does not apply to it ; because it has been dealt with in a totally different context.—(5)

## VERSE (6)

**He shall carefully avoid the red exudation from trees, as also those flowing from incisions, the shēlu berries, and 'curdled milk' of the cow.—(6)**

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Exudation from trees*';—anything, apart from the constituent parts of the tree itself,—such as, the root, the trunk, the branches, the leaves, the fruits and the flowers,—which proceeds from the tree, either in the form of some liquid flowing from the cavity in the tree, or in some other form. The epithet 'red' excludes, from prohibition, such exudations as the camphor and the like.

Those that have their origin, source, in '*incisions*'; those that flow from the bark and such parts of the tree. These things, if not red, are not forbidden.

'*Shēlu*'—the *shleṣmātaka* fruit, to be known from medical and other treatises. It should not be taken to mean the cream of fresh milk ; as it is never known to have that meaning. It has been argued that—"it is better to take the word as standing for *cream*, on account of its proximity to the term, 'curdled milk' ". But *proximity* becomes a means of deciding in favour of one of the two possible meanings of a term, only when the term is actually found in usage to be used in both senses ; but it can never be the authority for attributing an unheard of meaning to a word.

'*Of the cow*';—this shows that that of the buffalo etc. is not forbidden. The milk is unfit to be eaten if, by mere contact with

fire, it becomes '*curdled*',—*i.e.* thickened without adhesion; the term '*pīyūṣa*' is used in the sense of the milk of the newly-calved cow.

"The text is going to declare, as *unfit to be eaten*, the milk, along with all its preparations, of the cow for the first ten days of its calving; and it is only during three or four days that the milk is of the nature described above (*i.e.* curdled by mere contact with fire) [so that no separate prohibition appears to be called for.]"

True; the thing is mentioned in the present verse with a view to those cases where the milk continues to be so 'curdled' even after the first ten days.

The two words—'*carefully*' and '*avoid*'—are added only for filling up the metre; since '*unfit to be eaten*' (of verse 5) continues to be connected with all that is mentioned in the text.—(6)

## VERSE (7)

NEEDLESSLY COOKED RICE-SESAMUM AND BUTTER-SUGAR-SESAMUM, MILK-RICE AND FLOUR-CAKES, UNCONSECRATED MEAT, FOOD OF THE GODS AND SACRIFICIAL VIANDS;—(7)

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Kṛsarasamyāvan*' is an aggregative copulative compound. Rice cooked with Sesamum is called '*kṛsara*';—'*samyāva*' is a particular article of food, made up of butter, sugar, sesamum and such things, well-known in cities.

Some people, on the strength of the root '*yu*' (from which the term '*samyāva*' is derived) signifying the act of *mixing*, explain the term '*samyāva*' as standing for all those articles of food that are prepared by mixing together different kinds of grains,—such as the *mudga*, the *kuṣṭhaka* and the rest.

For these persons the separate mention of '*kṛsara*' would be superfluous; as this would be included under '*samyāva*', as just explained.

The term '*needlessly cooked*' is to be construed with all the terms. It stands for what the householder cooks for himself, and not for the sake of Gods, Pitṛs or guests.

This however does not appear to be right. Because the ordinary cooking that the Householder does is not always for any such set purpose as that of making offerings out of it. What happens is that the cooking having been done, without reference to any particular purpose, and only in a general way, the Five Sacrifices have been laid down, as to be offered out of the food thus cooked. So that if the man eats the food without having made the offering to the Vishvedevas out of it, he transgresses a direct injunction; but no prohibition enters into the case. According to the present text however, as just explained, such eating would necessitate two expiatory rites,—one due to transgressing an injunction (by not making the offering to the Vishvedevas), and another due to the doing of a prohibited act (of cooking the Rice-sesamum needlessly). If however such articles of food as 'Rice-sesamum' and the rest, are cooked without reference to a particular God, or to a particular sacrificial rite,—this involves a transgression of the rules pertaining to one's daily duties also.

As regards the text 'one shall not cook for himself',—this cannot be regarded as a prohibition; because it being absolutely necessary to do the cooking, all that the sentence does is simply to make a reference to the *act of eating* done by one who has disobeyed the rules (regarding the daily 'sacrifices'). For, as already pointed out above, if it were a prohibition, there would be a twofold expiatory rite involved. Then again, even when the cooking is done for some other purpose, it cannot be absolutely denied that it has been done by the man 'for himself' also. 'Cooking' means the act of cooking food, and the fact of its being done for one's own self cannot be denied by means of the same word; as the man is directed to live upon the same food (*i.e.* what is left after the feeding of the guests &c). The eating of the remnant of food, after the guests and others have been fed, (which has been laid down for the Householder) is not meant to be a mere 'embellishment' of the Remnant (and not an act necessary for the maintenance of the man himself). Nor has it been laid down anywhere that at the time of cooking the Householder is to make use of any such formula of determination as 'cook food *for me*',

which would be regarded as forbidden (by the sentence 'one shall not cook for himself') In fact the cooking is said to be 'for himself' only in consideration of what happens subsequently. That is to say, if the food were cooked with the determination to make an offering to the Gods, and then subsequently the man, were to eat it all himself, this would involve the wrong of being false to one's own resolve also. From all this it is clear that the sentence in question is a mere reiterative reference, the sense being—'what one cooks, he should not use for himself until he has made the offering to the *Vishvēdēvas*'.

It is in view of all this that this same rule has been held to be applicable also to the case of the man eating *uncooked* food; in accordance with the assertion—'the Gods of a man have the same food as the man himself' (*Vālmīkīya Rāmāyaṇa*.)

Further, cooking is not to be done only by the hungry householder; in fact, the act of cooking every day forms an integral factor of *Householdership* itself. So that even on the day on which the man himself does not eat, if he omits the act of cooking, he incurs sin.

The upshot of the whole is this:—The man may cook for himself, or for others; the words 'shall not cook for himself' can only mean that people should not undertake the act, if they do not intend to make the offering to the Vishvēdēvas. So that this only reiterates the obligatory character of the offering. Similarly also the text that—'For the removal of the sin of the Five Slaughters, the Vishvēdēva-offering shall be made in the ordinary fire, in the Vedic sacrificial fire, in the fire in which oblations have been already poured and the deity dismissed, in water or on the ground,'— only reiterates the obligatory character of the offering to the *Vishvēdēvas*. Because the said offering cannot be made into the Vedic sacrificial fire; specially as there is no authority attaching to a *Smṛti* text (as against a *Shruti* text) [so that the text just quoted cannot be taken in its literal sense].

'*Milk-rice and flour-cakes*'.—'*Pāyasa*', '*Milk-rice,*' stands for rice cooked in milk, and not for preparations of milk ;—'*Puroḍāsha*' is flour-cake.

'*Food of the Goods*' : - what these are can only be ascertained from usage.

'*Sacrificial viands*',—the materials laid down in the *Shruti* as to be offered into the Fire.

These are 'unfit to be eaten' only before the *Grahahomas* ; as the text is going to lay down the necessity of eating the remnants of the offerings.

The meat of an animal that has not been 'consecrated,'—*i.e.* which has not been killed at a sacrifice. 'Consecration' is a peculiar form of purification of the animal, prescribed in connection with the 'Animal-Sacrifice.' The mention of this indicates that one should eat the remnant of the meat that has been offered at a sacrifice.

Though the Text has already used the qualification '*needlessly prepared*', yet the epithet '*unconsecrated*' has been added with a view to forbid the meat of the cow, the sheep and the goa that may have been left by the guest and other persons to whom they may have been offered. Or, the term *unconsecrated* may be taken as refering specially to the meat of the cow, the sheep and the goat; since it is the killing of these animals only that has been enjoined in connection with sacrifices; the other animals being described as already '*prokṣita*', 'washed clean' (fit for eating).

## VERSE (8)

THE MILK OF THE COW THAT HAS NOT PASSED ITS TEN DAYS, AS ALSO THAT OF THE CAMEL AND OF ONE-HOOFED ANIMALS AND OF SHEEP; THE MILK OF THE IRREGULAR COW, AS ALSO THE MILK OF THE COW WITHOUT HER CALF.—(8)

### *Bhāṣya.*

If we read the opening words as '*anirdashāham goḥ kṣīram,*' then the prohibition regarding the milk of the camel and other ani-

mals also would be understood as limited to the ten days from calving; so that the qualification 'that has not passed its ten days' being taken with every one of the animals, it would become necessary to depend entirely upon usage in support of the absolute prohibition of the milk of the camel and other animals. If however we read '*anirdashāyāḥ*' in the feminine form, then there would be no possibility of the above misunderstanding. Because it would not be possible to interpret the nominal affixes (attached to the names of the other animals) as, in any way, connecting these animals with the epithet '*anirdashāyāḥ*)

In as much as the word 'milk' is repeated in the second half of the verse, this implies that what are forbidden by the former half are the milk of the camel, of the one-hoofed animals, of the sheep, of the goat and of the cow within ten days of its calving,—along with all its preparations; while in the case of the 'irregular' cow and the cow 'deprived of its calf', it is the *milk* only that is forbidden. Such is the usage also.

That cow is called '*anirdashāha*,' 'not passed its ten days', in whose case ten days have not passed since her calving.

'*Irregular cow*';—the cow that is expected to give milk both morning and evening, but gives it only at one time; giving milk in the evening only if not milked in the morning; and on account of the suppiy of milk being scanty, she is milked once only.

Some people explain '*Sandhinī*' as standing for that cow which, on having lost her own calf, is made to yield milk by bringing to her the calf of another cow; and in this case the cow '*without her calf*' would be one whose calf is alive, but is separated from it, and is milked, independently of the calf, through presenting before her such special articles of food as the husks of barley, rice etc., so that the cow would be called 'without her calf' by the calf being held aside; just as people say—'bring the cow without her calf'.

The 'cow' having been already mentioned in the first half, the term is repeated in the second half, with a view to show that similar milk of the goat and the buffalo is not forbidden. The same does not hold good regarding the epithet '*anirdashāyāh*,' 'that has not passed its ten days;' so that in this connection the 'cow' in-

cludes the goat and the buffalo also. So says Gautama (17.22-23) —'The milk of the cow that has not passed its ten days, during the period of impurity; also of the goat and the buffalo.'

The term '*payaḥ*' 'milk,' has been added because it is not easy to construe the term '*goḥ*,' 'of the cow,' with the term '*kṣīram*,' 'milk' as contained in the compound '*sandhinīkṣīram*.'—(8)

## VERSE (9)

THAT OF ALL WILD ANIMALS, EXCEPT THE BUFFALO; THE MILK OF FEMALES (WOMEN) AND ALL SOURED SUBSTANCES SHOULD BE AVOIDED.—(9)

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Wild animals*'—cows, elephants, monkeys and so forth.

There can be no milk of males ; hence the masculine gender used in connection with the words '*sarveṣām mṛgāṇam*' is to be taken as standing for the genus, and the connection is with the female members of that genus : the term '*mṛgakṣīram*' thus being similar to '*kukkuṭāṇḍam*'. This has been made clear by the author of the *Mahābhāṣya* in connection with the rules relating to the change of the feminine form into the masculine, (when occurring within a compound).

'*Māhiṣam vinā*' ;—the neuter form has been used, in view of the neuter form '*payaḥ*' 'milk'.

'*Females*,'—human females, women. Though in such passages as '*strī gauḥ somakrayiṇī*', 'the female cow is the price of the *soma*',—the term '*strī*', 'female', is found to be used in connection with the *animal with the dewlap* also,—yet it is to be understood here in the sense of the 'woman', in as much as in the present context the term cannot apply to any other species of animals, and as it is better known as standing for the 'human female' only. In all such assertions as—'females desire sweets', 'females are the best jewels'—the word is understood as standing for the *woman.*

The term '*ēva*' in the text has been explained as indicating the prohibition of applying the woman's milk to the eye and such other uses of it; the meaning being that the milk of the woman is to be avoided, not only in eating, but also in all similar uses. The word can be taken as indicative of all this only on the strength of usage and other *Smṛti* texts; and it cannot be regarded as directly expressive of it.—(9).

## VERSE (10.)

AMONG SOURED SUBSTANCES, THE CURD IS FIT TO BE EATEN, AND ALL THAT IS PREPARED OUT OF IT; AS ALSO ALL THAT IS DISTILLED FROM PURE FLOWERS, ROOTS AND FRUITS;—(10)

### *Bhāṣya*

All 'soured substances' having been forbidden in the foregoing verse, the present text makes an exception in favour of a few of them.

'*Shukta*', 'soured substance', is the name of those substances which, being juicy in their constitution and having a distinct taste of their own, become *soured* either by the flux of time, or by the contact of some other substance. For instance, the *Āmrātaka*, which is sweet and full of juice, becomes 'soured' after the lapse of some time; cane-juice becomes 'soured' after sometime. Things that are sour by their very nature—*e. g.*, the Pomegranate, the Āmalaka, the Lemon &c.—are not called 'soured substances'; nor those that are still *unripe*. Because the term '*shukta*', 'soured', is not synonymous with 'sour'. What are directly forbidden here are only those soured substances that have become sour by fermentation; and those that turn sour by the contact of flowers and roots &c. are only indirectly indicated; according to what Gautama has said (17·14)—'All soured substances except Curd only'.

'*Distilled.*'—Distillation consists in allowing the thing to remain soaked in water over-night.

"In that case the sourness would be due to the length of time (so that all these would be included among 'Soured Substances')."

True; these also are 'soured substances'; and the Instrumental ending may signify either *instrumentality* or *association*. The meaning thus is —'what are *distilled*— *e.g.* made out of—flowers etc. along with water'.

Some people offer the following explanation:—"The roots of trees are directly productive of *sourness*. Such 'sour substances' as the Pomegranate, the *Āmalaka* and the rest are 'fit to be eaten', while those that are distilled from grapes and other sweet things are not eaten. 'Distillation' means *producing acidity*; hence '*distilled from flowers*' means soured by flowers and such things. Grapes and such other things however are not themselves productive of acidity; in their case it is *time* alone that is the acidulating agent."

This however i not right; simply because such is not the meaning of the term ('distillation'). When one says —'he is *distilling* Soma'—this is not understood to mean that he is *making it sour*; what is understood is as we have explained above.

'*Prepared out of curd*';—*e.g. Udashvit*, *Mastu* (whey), *Kilāṭa* (Coagulated milk), *Kūrchika* (Inspissated milk) and so forth.—(10)

## VERSE (11)

HE SHALL AVOID ALL CARNIVOROUS BIRDS, AND ALSO THOSE LIVING IN VILLAGES, THE ONE-HOOFED ANIMALS NOT SPECIFIED, AND ALSO THE ṬIṬṬIBHA. — (11)

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Carnivorous*';— those that eat raw flesh ; such as the Heron, the Vulture &c. What are meant are those that eat *raw flesh* only; and not those that eat both (raw and cooked flesh), such as the Peacock and the rest.

'*Living in villages*'—even though they be not carnivorous.

'*One-hoofed animals* ;'—*e.g.*, the Horse, the Mule, the Ass and so forth.

'*Not specified*';—*i.e.* those that have not been specified as *fit to be eaten* should not be eaten: those that have been so specified are fit to be eaten. For instance, it has been declared that 'one who desires to obtain offspring shall eat the meat of the camel, the horse, the bear and the white ass'. [and here the one-hoofed animals, horse and white ass, are specified as fit to be eaten].

"The eatability of these animals is known only from this *Shruti*-passage. And the presence of the term 'specified' in the verse would be understood to mean that the animals thus specified in the Vedic passage may be eaten even elsewhere (apart from Vedic sacrifices also); the meaning of the text being 'one shall avoid those *not specified*, but not *those specified*.' As a matter of fact however, nowhere in the *Smṛti* have any one-hoofed animals been *specified* as fit to be eaten, with reference to which the term 'not specified' (of the text) could be explained. Hence it comes to this that 'those not specified *in the Shruti* are unfit to be eaten'."

Our answer to the above is that such a sense of the Smṛti would be contrary to all usage. The term 'not specified' is a mere re-iterative reference.

'*Ṭiṭṭibha*'—is a bird which is always screaming 'ṭiṭ', 'ṭiṭ'. In most cases the names of birds are in imitation of their sounds: as says the *Nirukta*—'The name *Kāka* is in imitation of the sound; such is the case with most bird-names.'—(11).

## VERSE (12).

THE SPARROW, THE PLAVA, THE HAMSA, THE CHAKRAVĀKA, THE VILLAGE-COCK, THE CRANE, THE RAJJUDĀLA, THE DĀTYŪHA, THE PARROT AND THE STARLING.——(12).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Sparrow*', '*Kalabiṅka*', is the name of a village-bird described in the scriptures. Its prohibition being already got at by the general prohibition of all 'village-birds', the separate mention of

the sparrow implies the eatability of the *female* sparrow ;—the term '*kalabiṅka*' being a masculine just like the term 'bull.'

Others have explained that this name has been added for the purpose of excluding (from the prohibition) the *wild* sparrow, which retires to the forest during the rains. They are called 'village-birds' because of their living in the villages during the greater part of the year ; just as is the case with the 'wild buffalo.'

The prohibition of the '*plava*, the *hamsa*, and the *chakravaka*' being already got at from the general prohibition of all 'web-footed birds', the separate mention of these is for the purpose of emphasising the obligatory character of their exclusion, —the eating of the '*Āṭya*' and other 'web-footed' birds being regarded as *optional*.

'*Village-cock*'—the specification of the '*village*-cock' permits the eating of the wild cock.

"But why should there have been any suspicion regarding the non-eatability of the *wild* cock at all ?"

Because another *Smṛti* text says simply—'Among birds, *the cock*', which indicates that all kinds of cock are equally 'unfit to be eaten' ; it is for this reason that this general statement has been sought by the present text to be limited in its scope.

"But why cannot this be regarded as a case of option, since the present text permits the eating of the wild cock, which the other text forbids ?"

This cannot be a case of option: it is a case of option only when there are two contradictory texts of equal authority bearing upon the same subject ; in the present case however, there is no contradiction: there is no difference in the actual teaching of the two *Smṛti-texts* concerned: because it is quite reasonable to regard the general statement as restricted in its scope; specially as a third independent text has already been quoted above.

"If this be so, then the general prohibition regarding the web-footed birds may be taken as restricted in its scope to the *Hamsa* and other specified birds; so that the prohibition does not extend to all crows and web-footed birds."

This would have been the case if the Smṛti-treatises were not the work of a human author. In the case of works of non-human origin, if they proceed from different sources, there would be no useful purpose by making the general statement restricted to the particular case of the *Hamsa* and other birds; while in the case of the work of human authors, if they proceed from different persons, it is quite possible that the person who knows the truth in its general form is ignorant of it in the restricted form, or the person who know it in the limited form is ignorant of it in the wider form; so that when we come to consider the source of the two statements, we assume the existence (in the Veda) of a general statement as the source of one, and a particular statement as the source of the other; and these two Vedic statements occurring in two different recensional texts, the only reasonable course is to construe them together, unless there are distinct injunctions bearing upon the two statements. Specially as no such complaint can be raised against the Vedas as—'What is the use of the *general* statement if it is to be taken in its restricted sense?' There is no room for such a complaint, because there is no author in the case against whom such a complaint could be raised. Specially as in the case of a Vedic statement, the only idea that is obtained is from the actual words of the text, only that which can be derived from the words themselves; and there can be no justification for the assuming of any other meaning, for any purpose whatsoever.

What the '*Rajjudāla*' and other birds are is to be learnt from persons versed in the science of birds.—(12)

## VERSE (13)

THOSE BIRDS THAT FEED BY STRIKING WITH THEIR BEAKS, THOSE THAT ARE WEB-FOOTED, THE KOYASTI, THOSE THAT SCRATCH WITH THEIR NAILS, THOSE THAT DIVE AND EAT FISH, SLAUGHTER-HOUSE MEAT, AND DRIED MEAT.—(13)

### *Bhāṣya.*

Those that feed by 'striking'—piercing—'with their beaks.' Such is the nature of these birds. The *Shatapatra* and other birds belong to this class.

'Web-footed'.—The *Ati* and the rest. That there is an option in regard to this has already been pointed out above (*Bhāṣya* on 12.)

"Wherever there is an *option*, it depends upon the man's wish which of the two options he will adopt : and as a matter of fact, it is only an unforbidden course that can be so adopted. The act of *eating* is an ordinary temporal act, possible only when there is a desire on the part of the man (to do it); it is not a spiritual act, which would have to be done in any case. So that we do not see any useful purpose that could be secured by an optional prohibition."

Our answer to this is that this has already been answered.

"But what has been said may be all right in regard to cases where (as in the Veda) the comprehension of the meaning depends entirely upon the words of the text, and there is no intention (of any author) behind them (to indicate their true purport). The present treatise however is the work of a human author, having been composed by him with great care and labour, for the purpose of supplying in brief all the information that was contained in another voluminous work containing a hundred thousand verses; so that no needless word can be used in it. In fact it is for this reason (of his not using a single superfluous word) that the author comes to be regarded as a 'Teacher'. It is not that there is no prohibition of *all web-footed birds* in general, in which case alone the prohibition of a particular web-footed bird, the *Hamsa*, could be justified. Since the present verse also is a Smṛti-text (and it forbids all web-footed birds in general). Some people have held that the term '*jālapāda*' (web-footed bird) in the present verse is a wrong reading".

We have already explained that the intention of the Teacher is undertsood with the help of gestures, actions and the spinning out of long explanations; and in the present case particular details are also inferred. What was meant to be said was that 'one shall not eat web-footed birds in normal times'; but the author has propounded the prohibition

in the wider form, with a view to justifying both prohibitions (of *web-footed* birds in general, and of the *Hamsa* in particular).

'*Sūnā*' 'Slaughter house', is that place where animals are killed for the purpose of selling their flesh. Others explain it as 'meat-market'.

'*Dried meat*', '*Vallura*', is flesh dried and kept for several days.

'*Nakhaviṣkira*' are those birds that scratch with their nails;—*e.g.* the Peacock, the Cock &c.
These birds are partly 'fit to be eaten' also, in view of the assertion that these may be eaten 'in abnormal times;' specially in view of what another Smṛti-writer has said regarding 'the Cock among birds' (being eatable). But the present text of Manu cannot be regarded as referring to the Cock; as in that case the separate mention of the 'Cock' would be useless.—(13)

## VERSE (14)

THE BAKA, THE BALĀKĀ, THE KĀKOLA, THE KHAÑJARĪṬA, THE FISH-EATERS, AND VILLAGE PIGS ; AS ALSO FISH ALWAYS.—(14)

### *Bhāṣya*

The prohibition of the '*Baka, Balākā and Kākola*' being already included under that of 'fish-eaters', these have been mentioned separately in order to indicate that the eating of the other fish-eating birds is optional.

'*Fish-eaters*'.—Animals other than birds also, which eat fish, are to be regarded as 'unfit to be eaten"; such animals, for instance, as the alligator and the like; that this is what is meant is clear from the fact that the name '*fish-eater*' is to be applied in its literal sense.

*Kākola* is the same as the Kite, such being its name in foreign lands ; for instance, it is known by this name in the *Bāhlīka* country.

The prohibition of the '*village-pig*' implies the permission to eat the wild pig. The prohibition of those 'living in villages' in the preceding verse (11) should be taken, on the strength of the context, as referring to *birds* only. It is only thus that there would be any point in the mention of the 'village-pig' in the present verse. The pig that lives in villages is called '*viḍvarāha*', '*village-pig*.'

"If in verse 11, 'those living in villages' are to be taken, on the strength of the context, as *birds* only, then the term 'fish-eaters' in the present verse also should be taken as referring to *birds* only."

Not so; because the present context is not restricted to *birds* only; since it mentions also non-birds, such as the 'village pig' and 'fish.'

'*Sarvashaḥ*,'—always.

This is a general rule; its exceptions we shall explain later on.——(14).

## VERSE (15).

HE WHO EATS THE FLESH OF AN ANIMAL, IS CALLED THE 'EATER OF ITS FLESH'; HE WHO EATS FISH IS THE 'EATER OF ALL KINDS OF FLESH'; HENCE ONE SHALL AVOID FISH.—(15).

### *Bhāṣya.*

This is a commendatory supplement to the foregoing prohibition of fish.

When one eats the flesh of an animal, he comes to be described as connected with the act of eating that animal; *e.g.* the mungoose is called 'serpent-eater', the cat 'rat-eater' and so forth. He who eats fish eats all kinds of flesh; it would be right to speak of him as a 'beef-eater' also.

Hence, by reason of the possibility of this calumny, one should avoid fish.——(15).

## VERSE (16).

**The 'Pāṭhīna' and the 'Rohita' are fit to be eaten when used as offerings to Gods or Pitṛs; the 'Rājīva', the 'Simhatuṇḍa' and the 'Sashalka,' (one may eat) on all occasions—(16)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Pāṭhīna*' and '*Rohita*'—two particulars kinds of fish—having been mentioned as fit to be offered to Gods and to Pitṛs, the eating of these is permitted on the occasion of the performance of *Shrāddha* and other rites; and not in the course of ordinary daily food. As for the *Rājīva*, the '*Simhatuṇḍa*' and the '*Sashalka*' fish on the other hand, these are to be eaten '*on all occasions*'; *i.e.* they may be eaten also on occasions other than the offerings to Gods and to Pitṛs.

'*Rājīva*';—some people regard this as standing for lotus-coloured fish. Others explain it as standing for those fish that are marked by lines.

'*Simhatuṇḍa*,'—those having a lion-like face.

'*Sashalka*'—is the same as the fish called '*Shakalin*.'—(16).

## VERSE (17).

**He shall not eat solitary animals, nor unknown beasts and birds, even though indicated among those fit to be eaten; nor any five-nailed animals.—(17).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Solitary*'—those animals that move about singly (not in herds); such as serpents, owls and the like.

'*Unknown*'—as regards *name* and *kind*.

'*Beasts and birds*;'—neither beasts nor birds are fit to be taken.

'*Even though indicated among those fit to be eaten*'—Those that are not actually forbidden are, to that extent, regarded as fit to be eaten; and hence indirectly 'indicated' as such. In reality, there is no direct indication of those fit to be eaten. Those that are not specially recognised as to be avoided come to be regarded as fit to be eaten; and these are spoken of as '*indicated as fit to be eaten*'.

'*Five-nailed animals*:'—*e.g.* the Monkey, the Jackal and the like.

'*Any*'—has been added for filling up the metre.—(17)

## VERSE (18)

AMONG FIVE-NAILED ANIMALS THEY DECLARE THE PORCUPINE, THE HEDGE-HOG, THE ALLIGATOR, THE RHINOCEROS, THE TORTOISE AND THE HARE, AS FIT TO BE EATEN; AS ALSO ALL ANIMALS HAVING ONE LINE OF TEETH, EXCEPT THE CAMEL. —(18)

### *Bhāṣya.*

Among five-nailed animals, the Porcupine and the rest are fit to be eaten.

In another *Smṛti*, there is option regarding the Rhinoceros. Says Vashiṣṭha (14-47)—'They dispute about the rhinoceros.'

With the exception of the camel, all those animals are fit to be eaten which have only one line of teeth: for instance, the cow, the goat and the deer.

"In as much as the present verse specifies the porcupine &c. as alone fit to be eaten, among five-nailed animals,—it follows that all the other five-nailed animals are unfit to be eaten; so that the prohibition of 'all five-nailed animals' becomes entirely superfluous."

There is nothing wrong in this. When the prohibition is stated in so many words, our comprehension of it is *direct*; if on the other hand, we were to derive our knowledge of what should not be eaten from the specification of what should be eaten, our comprehension of the prohibition would be only inferential, indirect; and this would be a complicated process. —(18).

---

## SECTION (3).

## Penalty for eating Forbidden Food.

### VERSE (19.)

THE MUSHROOM, THE VILLAGE-PIG, GARLIC, THE VILLAGE-COCK, ONIONS AND LEEKS,—THE TWICE-BORN MAN EATING THESE INTENTIONALLY WOULD BECOME AN OUTCAST.—(19).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Chhatraka*' is the same as *kavaka*, the mushroom.

'*Viḍvarāha*' is the village-pig, which wanders about unchecked.

By eating these the man becomes an outcast. That is, he should perform the Expiatory Rites prescribed for outcasts. It will be asserted later on (11·56)—'The eating of forbidden food is like the drinking of wine.'—(19.)

### VERSE (20.)

HAVING EATEN THESE UNINTENTIONALLY, HE SHOULD PERFORM THE 'KṚCHCHHRA SĀNTAPANA', OR THE 'YATI-CHĀNDRĀYAṆA'; AND IN THE CASE OF THE REST ONE SHOULD FAST FOR A DAY.—(20)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Unintentionally*'—unwillingly,—'*having eaten these*'—any one of the six just mentioned;—that it is any *one* that is meant, and not *all together*, is indicated by the fact that the act of eating in this case is not what is actually *enjoined*.

'*In the case of the rest*'—*i.e.* in the case of eating the other things—'red exudations from trees' and other things forbidden above,—one should desist from eating '*for a day*';—the term 'day' is used as including the *night* also; *e. g.* in such passages as 'the day is dark, the day is bright'—(*Rgveda* 6. 9. 1.)

In connection with the eating of some of the things here forbidden, the text is going to prescribe in the section on Expiatory

Rites (Discourse 11) distinct expiatory rites :—*e. g.* in connection with 'carnivorous animals, pig etc.' (11·156) ; and in this case those are the Rites to be performed ; since they have been directly enjoined in so man words ; specially as the single 'day's fast' here prescribed will have its application only in cases other than those especially provided for.—(20)

## VERSE (21)

ONCE A YEAR THE BRĀHMAṆA SHALL PERFORM THE 'KṚCHCHHRA' PENANCE, IN ORDER TO ATONE FOR UNINTENTIONAL EATING ; BUT FOR INTENTIONAL EATING, SPECIAL ONES.—(21).

*Bhāṣya.*

This refers to the Brāhmaṇa who is in the habit of eating at the house of those *Shūdra* whose food he is permitted to eat.

It is possible that at the house of a *Shūdra*, there may be some articles of food that are not fit to be eaten by the Brāhmaṇa, which can not always be avoided ; if the Brāhmaṇa eats at the house of such a *Shūdra*, there is always a fear of his having partaken of some forbidden food ; hence for him it is laid down that he should perform the '*Prājāpatya Kṛchchhra*'. In all cases where the precise form of the '*kṛchchhra*' is not laid down, it should be understood to be the 'Prājāpatya' *kṛchchhra*, as we shall explain later on.

'*In order to atone for unintentional eating*' :—*i.e.* in the event of there being suspicion of his having unwillingly partaken of forbidden food ; that is, for the expiating of the sin incurred, in the event of his having eaten forbidden food.

"But the expiation for this is going to be prescribed later on, under 5·127."

What that means and refers to we shall explain in connection with that verse.

For the act committed intentionally, special rites should be performed ; *i.e.* that expiatory rite which has been prescribed in so many words in connection with a particular case—(21).

## SECTION (4)

## Killing of Animals for Food.

### VERSE (22).

THE COMMENDED BEASTS AND BIRDS MAY BE KILLED BY BRĀHMAṆAS FOR THE PURPOSE OF SACRIFICE, AND FOR THE PURPOSE FEEDING THEIR DEPENDENTS; AS AGASTYA DID THIS OF OLD.—(22).

*Bhāṣya*

In connection with food fit to be eaten, the Text proceeds to sanction the act of killing.

If one's dependents are very much pressed by hunger, and no other food can be found, then one may kill such birds and beasts as are fit to be eaten. The exact meaning of the term 'dependent' has been explained before (as standing for parents, wife etc.)

The mention of Agastya—that Agastya did the act—is only by way of recommendation.

The first half of the verse is purely commendatory; because the act of killing in connection with sarcifices is directly enjoined by the Vedic injunctions themselves (and as such does not stand in need of any sanction from the present text).

'*Commended*'—*i. e.* permitted as fit to be eaten.

This same thing is stated in the next verse in greater detail, as bearing upon the recommendation of certain acts.—(22).

### VERSE (23)

IN ANCIENT TIMES, AT SACRIFICES PERFORMED BY THE SAGES. AS ALSO AT SACRIFICES PERFORMED BY BRĀHMAṆAS AND KṢATTRIYAS, THE SACRIFICIAL CAKES WERE MADE OF EATABLE BEASTS AND BIRDS.—(23)

*Bhāṣya*

The killing of beasts and birds has been prescribed in connection with the sacrifice named '*Ṣadriṃṣhat-saṃvatsara*' (Twenty-

The answer to this is that there is still some ground for doubt; as (according to the explanation just suggested) there would be no point in the separate mention of the 'remnants of sacrificial offering', which are stale and *not mixed with oils* (the latter being implied by their being mentioned apart from 'food mixed with oils':' because there is no chance of these remnants being 'mixed with oils' and becoming 'stale'. Consequently the separate mention of these can have some sense only if in their case it were not considered necessary to mix oils at the time of eating. So that the separate mention of these becomes justified only if, in the case of these Remnants, it be not necessary to mix oils at the time of eating (*which is considered necessary in the case of the other articles of food.*)

But, even so, there need not be any doubt. For in that case, it would be only right to take the epithet 'mixed with oils' as part of the Predicate, for the purpose of justifying the separate mention of the 'Remnants of sacrificial offerings'. [So that thus also, the meaning would be quite clear, though different from what we had explained before.]

In answer to this it is argued that there is only this ground for doubt that in view of the fact that the direct construction of the words as they stand is always to be preferred to any other roundabout constructions,—would it be right to regard the mention of the 'sacrificial remnants' as merely reiterative (and not injunctive) [in which case it may well be left pointless] ? Or that, inorder to guard against the mention being pointless, the words should be construed to mean that whatever is stale should be mixed with oils at the time of eating ?

On this point there is no doubt; rather than allow the words of the text to be regarded as pointless, it is far more reasonable to have recourse to the indirect method of construction. The real decision however depends entirely upon usage.

'*Oils.*'—This term stands for butter, oil, fat and bone-marrow—(24).

## VERSE (25).

**All that is made of barley and wheat, as also all preparations of milk, may be eaten by twice-born men, without being mixed with oils, even though they may have been kept long—(25).**

*Bhāṣya*

'*Kept long*'—*i.e.* kept for two nights.

The term '*even though*' implies that those 'mixed with oils' are also meant to be included.

Even though unmixed with oils, such things as fried flour and cakes, etc. as are made of barley and wheat.

Also '*preparations of milk*,'—such as curd, skimmed milk and the like.—(25).

---

## SECTION (6)

## Lawful and Forbidden Meat.

### VERSE (26)

THUS HAS BEEN DESCRIBED IN FULL WHAT IS FIT AND WHAT UNFIT TO BE EATEN BY TWICE-BORN MEN. NEXT I AM GOING TO EXPLAIN THE RULE REGARDING THE EATING AND AVOIDING OF MEAT.—(26)

*Bhāṣya*

The first half of the verse cuts off the preceding section; and what is implied by this cutting off of the section is that the section that has gone before pertains to the twice-born castes only, not to *Shūdras*, while what follows applies to *Shūdras* also. It is for this reason that several methods of eating meat shall be described, and the reward resulting from the giving up of meat-eating shall accrue to the *Shūdra* also. If this were not so, then, in the matter of eating meat also, the *Shūdra* would be free to do what he likes; just as he is in regard to the eating of garlic and other things that has been forbidden for 'twice-born persons' only, in verses 5 *etc. etc.* above.

"If it is as you say, then there is the following difficulty:—In verse 32 below, the Text is going to declare the eatability of the meat left from the worship of the Gods:—*viz.* 'One does not become contaminated by sin if he eats meat after having worshipped the Gods and the Pitṛs';—now the 'worship of the gods' etc. can be done only with such meat as is sacred; and those beasts and birds that have been forbidden for twice-born people (in the next section) are not sacred; hence, the worshipping of Gods etc. with the meat of these beasts and birds being impossible,—and what does not form the 'remnant of worship' being unfit to be eaten,—these other beasts and birds also, mentioned in a different context, become forbidden for the twice born people; and the

prohibition of these could be made to apply to the *Shūdra* also by some such other method (of reasoning). So that there is no point in the dividing of the sections (simply for making the prohibitions of the next section applicable to *Shūdras* also). And as for the prohibition of garlic and such things (that have been forbidden specially for twice-born persons), it is not applicable to *Shūdras* at all."

There is this useful purpose served by the dividing of the two sections, that the prohibition of garlic and other things ceases to be applicable to the *Shūdra*. As regards meat also, in as much as the *Householder* only is entitled to do the worshipping of Gods, it is a matter purely optional for such *Shūdras* as are not 'householders'.

"As a matter of fact, *Shūdras* also are entitled to the performance of sacrifices with cooked food; the eating of food has also been prescribed for Householders; but no 'sacrifices with cooked food' are ever offered with garlic and such other things. So that these things may be eaten, or not, by *Shūdras*, entirely according to their option.—'Why'? What would be the harm?' In that case the mention of 'twiceborn persons' (in connection with the forbidding of garlic, etc.) would have no point at all.'

This has been already answered by the explanation that one who is not a Householder, or who is travelling away from home, may do what he likes. Nor is it necessary that the Householder shall not eat what has not been offered in oblations; the meaning of the declaration 'one shall live on remnants' being that 'he shall not eat until he has made the offering to the Vishēdēvas.' Now, that substance alone is 'sacred', and can be offered as oblation, which has been prescribed as to be offered at, and thus helping the fulfilment of, a sacrifice. Some people fetch food from somewhere, at the time of eating, and eat it in their own house; and in this case even though the food may not be the 'remnant of a sacrifice', it would not be forbidden. As regards *meat* however, we have the restriction directly imposed, that 'it shall never be eaten unless it has been offered to the Gods.'

"If this is applicable to all the four castes, then there is no point in what is going to be said (under 5.57) in connection with purifications."

The use of that we shall explain at that place.

"In view of the mention of *twice-born people* in the foregoing section, it follows that *dog's meat* and such things also are fit to be eaten by *Shūdras*."

Under Discourse XI we shall show that there are indications to the effect that 'the village-pig', the ass, the camel, and other animals mentioned in the three verses (157 ect.) are 'unfit to be eaten' for the *Shūdra* also.—(26).

## VERSE (27)

HE MAY EAT MEAT THAT HAS BEEN CONSECRATED ; ALSO AT THE WISH OF BRĀHMAṆAS ; AND WHEN INVITED ACCORDING TO LAW ; AND WHEN HIS LIFE IS IN DANGER.—(27)

### *Bhāṣya*

The remnant of the meat of the animal sacrificed at the *Agniṣṭoma* is figuratively called 'consecrated'.

"The term '*prokṣita*' literally means *sprinkled with water*, being derived from the root '*ukṣa*,' 'to sprinkle, ; and it is in this sense that the word has been used in all such expressions as 'bring the *prokṣaṇī* water-vessels,' ' butter is the *prokṣaṇa*, the sprinkling-material,' '*prokṣaṇībhiḥ udvejitāḥ*,' 'bothered by sprinklings,' and so forth. Thus then, if the word literally means 'what is done by sprinkling,' then why should such terms as are expressive of certain consecrations prescribed in the Veda, (such as *sprinkling with water* and the like), be taken as indirectly indicating the animal (sacrificed) and its meat ? Why should the direct signification of the word be abandoned in favour of an indirect indication ? For these reasons it is better to take the text to mean 'meat *sprinkled with water and such liquids*'."

What is urged would be quite true, if there were no other texts and commendatory passages bearing upon the matter; such as

we have in the shape of such texts as 'Unconsecrated meat etc.' (Verse), 'Animals not consecrated with sacred texts etc.' (36). A careful examination of all these texts leads to the conclusion that the meaning of the word is as we have explained it.

"If so, then what is said here being already mentioned in the texts quoted, what would be the use of the present text?"

Some people say that the present verse is purely re-iterative. It cannot be an injunction of eating meat when one wishes to do so. Because the man who is hungry and wishes to eat meat can take to it through his desire to relieve his hunger (and he does not need an injunction for that). That is called an 'Injunction' which points to such activity of the agent as would not be possible under the influence of any ordinary visible motive; such injunctions, for instance, as 'one shall perform the *Agnihotra* through out his life;' and on such a matter, the scripture is the sole source of knowledge (and authority) available. We need not seek for scriptural authority in the case of the acts in connection with which we have the positive and negative notions to the effect that—'if it is done, such and such a reward shall follow—,and if it is not done, such and such an evil shall befall us.' And it is only when there is no such source of knowledge available, and the matter is knowable by means of scriptures alone, that it becomes a case of 'Injunction.' As regards the case in question, even infants at the breast know, without being told, that eating brings strength and removes pain. [So that the present text cannot be regarded as an Injunction]. Nor again can it be taken as a Restrictive Injunction, for the simple reason that no such sense of restriction is recognised (as conveyed by the words). (a) For instance, if the *restriction* were in the form 'one must eat what has been consecrated,'—then, since no time is specified the due observance of this injunction would disturb the entire routine of food and rest, and the man may have to be eating constantly; so that an impossible act will have been enjoined in this case. It has been said that—'one who eats not at Shrāddhas etc.',—and again 'the day on which he is remiss etc.' Then again, the author of the *Mahābhāṣya* has declared

that a Restriction is always supplementary to an Injunction; so that when there is no Injunction, how can there be any Restriction? What has been 'consecrated' by one man cannot be obtained by another man ; so that every man will have to eat all the meat that he consecrates, and this would entail a great calamity. (b) If. on the other hand, the restriction be taken to be in the form of preclusion—'one shall eat *only what is consecrated*, and not what is not consecrated,'—on the ground of its fulfilling the condition of 'Preclusion', that hunger cannot be alleviated except by the eating of both consecrated and unconsecrated food, either simultaneously or one after the other;—even so this would be already implied by what has been said above regarding 'consecrated meat' (in verse 7). (So that in this case also there would be no point in taking the present text as an Injunction.)

Others however find the following fault in the above view :—If all unconsecrated meat were forbidden, birds would fall in the category of 'forbidden food'; specially as there is no authority for any such restricted view that those alone are forbidden in their unconsecrated form, in connection with which consecration has been enjoined (and no consecration has been enjoined regarding birds).

Some people regard this view as improper. Because even so, the text cannot but be regarded as implying (if not directly asserting) the prohibition of (unconsecrated) birds also.

For these reasons, in as much as every Restriction is subservient to some enjoined act, it appears better to regard the present text as purely re-iterative of the eatability of consecrated meat. Just as at sacrifices, one must eat the consecrated meat, and omitting to eat it involves disobedience of the scriptural Injunction, so would it be in connection with all other occasions (on which meat is consecrated). And when the text is purely reiterative, it may also imply a preclusion (as shown above). The rule that 'one shall not eat the unconsecrated meat of the cow, the sheep and the goat' would only be a reiteration of the uneatability of 'unconsecrated meat' (mentioned in verse 7);—this reiteration in the present verse serving the purpose of permitting the eating of

*unconsecrated* meat also, 'at the wish of Brāhmaṇas', and under certain other circumstances (specified in the present verse).

Others again have taken the following view.—Under 4·213 we have the mention of 'needlessly prepared meat,' and the present verse serves the purpose of explaining what the 'needlessly prepared meat' is ; as in the absence of this it could not be known what is 'needlessly prepared meat'.

Or, it may be that in one verse we have the rule for the eater (who does the consecration himself), while what the other means is that other persons, guests and others, shall not eat the meat belonging to (and offered by) a person who has not performed the worship of the Gods, etc. (and consecrated the meat at it). In the event of the householder being somehow not entitled to worship the Gods, his guests and other persons would be justified in doing that worship for him ; and if the meat has been consecrated at such a worship, then they may eat it. The second prohibition (of unconsecrated meat)—'one incurs no sin by eating meat after having worshipped the Gods and the Pitṛs' (Verse 32)—is meant for those persons who are capable of performing the worship at their own house and have not performed it. What is stated in verse 36—'animals not consecrated by sacred texts etc.'—is meant to be explanatory of what is meant by the term 'consecration.'

Thus we have shown that all the five prohibitive passages have five distinct meanings and serve distinctly useful purposes.

'*At the wish of the Brāhmaṇas*'—'*Brāhmaṇāñcha kāmyayā*'—'. '*kāmyā*' is *kāmanā*, '*wish*'; the form '*kāmyā*' being a Vedic anachronism.

"If this text permits the eating of unconscrated meat at the wish of the *Brāhmaṇas*, then what is the sense of this restriction? Does it mean that if one omits to eat at their wish, he incurs the sin of disobeying the scriptures? Or, does the present section set forth only a counter-exception? If it is a mere counter-exception, then such counter-exception, setting aside the force of the prohibition, would be available also in the shape of such assertions as 'meat may be eaten at marriages'."

The text does not mean that one *must* eat meat under the circumstances; all that is meant is that if the Brāhmaṇas are very superior persons, then the disobeying of their wish would not be right.

Others again construe the term 'of Brāhmaṇas' with verse 32 also, and take the present text as an Injunction for the eating of meat of the hare and other animals also; the sense being that—'at sacrifices and marriages, or at other large dinner-parties, if the Brāhmaṇas request one to eat meat, then the meat of such animals should not be regarded as forbidden, as they are, by their very nature, consecrated to the Gods'; and it is only under special circumstances that consecration and worship of the Gods etc. may be performed. In fact it is only those kinds of meat that have been forbidden under certain circumstances whose eating is sanctioned, at the wish of Brāhmaṇas; and the sanction does not apply to the eating of 'carnivorous birds' and the rest, or to the case of a man who has resolved to give up meat in view of 'ceasing to eat meat being conducive to highest results,'—irrespective of the fact of the meat being either 'consecrated' or 'unconsecrated,' or 'offered' or 'not offered.'

'*When invited according to law, and when his life is in danger.*'—When invited, at the *Madhuparka* offering, or at a *Shrāddha*, one may eat the meat even without consecration. This is what is meant by being '*invited according to law*'; the rules to be observed by inviters at *Shraddhas* have been described before (under 3·100); so that havig promised to dine at the *Shraddha*, no one can say 'I shall not eat such and such a thing,' barring of course anything that may be either unfit to be eaten, or unclean or unwholesome; specially as the food offered at *Shrāddhas* is generally such as is fit for offering to Gods, and also agreeable to the guests. (Thus then, there being no possibility of one refusing to eat the meat offered at the *Shrāddha.*) what is said here must pertain to the *Mdhuparka* offering only.

"But there is no *invitation* for the *Madhuparka* offering."

All that is meant by the present text is that the man who is entitled to receive the *Madhuparka* offering shall eat the unconsecrated meat that may be offered to him; and it does not contain an Injunction of offering the *Madhuparka*. The person meant here as the recipient of the *Madhuparka* is the Guest, and not the king and other honoured persons ; just as we find it laid down for the Householder that 'the guest shall not dwell in his house without eating.' From this it would follow that nothing shall be offered to the guest against his desire. As for the notion that one may do what he likes in the matter of receiving an honoured guest and in feeding him,—if this idea were acted up to, then those acts would not have been done 'for the sake of the guest.'

"But the position of the *guest* also is uncertain."

True ; but it has been found that the performance of the act brings spiritual merit by producing pleasure in the recipient's mind. Hence it is that by way of a rule it has been laid down for the giver, in accordance with the practice by which the calf is offered, that 'there can be no *Madhuparka* without meat.'

"What is herein laid down may be regarded as pertaining to the case of priests officiating at one's sacrifice."

In that case, this also, like the preceding clause, may be only reiterative of what pertains to the officiating priest and to *Shrāddhas*.

"But in connection with the work of the priests, the eating of the *Iḍā* and such other materials has been prescribed ; and the restrictions bearing upon that pertains to the *Sacrifice*, and not to the priests."

True ; but if the priests do not eat, they are censured, and also become beset with transcendental evil. Even if they eat, they do not become related to the result following from the act. Servants employed on wages (such as the priests are) perform the details prescribed in the scriptures ; and it has been prescribed that 'the priests along with the sacrificer as the fifth eat the *Iḍā* cake,;' so that it is incumbent upon those who have accepted the priestly office to do that eating. And in that case it is only right that this eating should be reiterated, There is however uothing 'scriptual'

in the eating done by persons eating at *Shrāddhas* or by the priests. So that the reiteration is of the eating done by the sacrificer.—It may be asked—"For what purpose is this reiteration?"—But reiteration does not always need a purpose. All that is done is that it reiterates what has been enjoined elsewhere. Similarly in the case in question also, if the owner of the cow has promised to honour the guest with the killing of the cow, then the guest must eat it; for he accepts the offering of *Madhuparka* as a favour to the offerer; so that it is necessary that he should accomplish the act preceding the offering. Otherwise, in the event of the *Madhuparka* not being accepted, the said favour would not be bestowed; consequently in the matter of the eating of forbidden meat, it is necessary for the man at the very outset to accept the *Madhuparka* and the duties of the priest;—similarly in the matter of feeding the Brāhmaṇas. As regards the Student, since certain strict observances have been prescribed for him, meat should be regarded as altogether 'unfit to be eaten.'

'*When his life is in danger*'.—From the context it follows that what is meant is that—'in the event of his not eating meat without worshipping the gods, and no other food being available, if there be a fear of his losing his life, either though disease or through hunger, one may eat the cow, the sheep and the goat.' This rule is based upon the Vedic declaration that 'one shall protect himself from everything.' So that under the circumstances, if one omits to eat meat, he becomes his own murderer; and suicide has been forbidden by such text as—(a) 'One shall proteet himself from everything'; (b) 'Hence the man, expecting to live to the fullest extent of human life, shall never kill himself with a desire to proceed to heaven; as such an act would make him unfit for heaven';—all which shows that by eating even forbidden meat to save his life, one does not incur sin. Says the Mantra also (Ishopaniṣad 3)—"Those who kill themselves go, after death, to those regions that are covered by blind darkness and are fit only for demons."

When there is danger to life, even the Student may eat meat; and for him his young age would necessitate the performance of the expiatory rite as prescribed in the text—'If the Student ever

eats meat and honey, etc.' (11·158). Vyāsa has declared that when there is fear of losing one's life through hunger, one may eat even forbidden meat ; and by the instance of the 'dog's thigh' (eaten by Vishvāmitra) it is indicated that such meat may be eaten, but once only.

From this it follows that in the case of serious developments of diseases, where one cannot be sure that the man will certainly recover by eating meat, one shall not eat forbidden meat, such as that of the village-cock and the like ; though it is permitted to eat such meat as has been consecrated or offered to the gods.

In the case of disease also one shall not eat meat for the purpose of recovering from a disease that may have just set in ; but in the case of men who have become enfeebled and emaciated through disease, the eating of meat is always permitted : as asserted in the verse—'Persons daily addicted to wine and women, consumptives, those emaciated through fatigue and disease, as also enfeebled patients, live upon the juices of meat.' It is necessary for these persons to worship the gods in the case of the meat of unconsecrated goat : there would however be no harm, if on some day this be not found possible.—(27).

## VERSE (28).

PRAJĀPATI CREATED ALL THIS AS FOOD FOR THE VITAL SPIRIT ; AND ALL THAT IS MOVABLE OR IMMOVABLE IS THE FOOD OF THE VITAL SPIRIT (28).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Vital spirit,*'—the breath within the body, the very seed of life. For the sustenance of this breath, as functioning in the five-fold form of '*Udāna*' and the rest,—and for its maintenance in the body,—'*Prajāpati created all this*'—world—as food.

Having indicated the world in a general way, by means of the pronoun '*this*', the author proceeds to specify it in details—

*all that is movable or immovable'*. All this, on account of what is said in the first half, is the '*food of the vital spirit*'. The second 'all' is not redundant, since it is added with a view to indicate the various kinds of beings,—beasts, birds, men, reptiles, etc.

Since Prajāpati has ordained all this to be 'food' in times of distress, all of it is the food of the vital spirit. This is also what we read in the dialogue of the Vital Breath contained in the Upaniṣads —' He asked—what shall be my food ?—Whatever exists, down to the dogs and down to the insects and worms'—(28).

## VERSE (29).

THE IMMOBILE IS THE FOOD OF THE MOBILE; THOSE DEVOID OF FANGS ARE THE FOOD OF THOSE ENDOWED WITH FANGS; THOSE WITHOUT HANDS ARE THE FOOD OF THOSE WITH HANDS; AND COWARDS ARE THE FOOD OF THE BRAVE.—(29).

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Mobile*',—those that are capable of walking and flying and are courageous and active; *e.g.* the kite, the mongoose and the rest.—Of those the '*immobile*'—lethargic animals, such as the pigeon, the serpent and the like—are '*the food.*'

Similarly '*of those endowed with fangs,*'—*i.e.* of the lion, the tiger, etc.,—'*those devoid of fangs*'—the *Ruru*, the *Pṛṣat* and the other kinds of deer—are the '*food.*'

'*Those without hands,*'—*i.e.*, serpents, fish and the like—are the food of '*those with hands,*'—of the mongoose and the fisherman, etc.

'*Of the brave*'—of those that are endowed with great courage—'*cowards*'—those who are over-fond of life—are the food.

The meaning is that those possessed of inferior strength are killed for food.—(29).

## VERSE (30).

**THE EATER INCURS NO SIN BY EATING, EVEN DAILY, SUCH ANIMALS AS ARE EATABLE; SINCE THE EATER AS WELL AS THE EATEN ANIMALS HAVE BEEN CREATED BY THE CREATOR HIMSELF—(30).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Eater*'—one who eats.

'*Eatable*'—which are capable of being eaten. He incurs no sin even by eating them daily.

By the '*Creator*'—Prajāpati—*himself*—have been created both the *eater* and the *eaten*.

For this reason when there is danger to life, meat must be eaten. This is the sense of the three verses, which are purely comemendstory—(30).

## VERSE (31)

**'THE EATING OF MEAT FOR SACRIFICES'—THIS IS DECLARED TO BE THE DIVINE LAW; BUT BEHAVIOUR CONTRARY TO THIS IS DESCRIBED AS 'DEMONIACAL PRACTICE'—(31).**

### *Bhāṣya*

'*The eating of meat*'—in the form of offerings and oblations—'*for sacrifices*.'

'*This is the divine law*';—this is what has been ordained by the Gods.

'*Behaviour contrary to this*,'—*i.e.* eating meat for the fattening of the body—is '*the demoniacal practice*'; it is only demons that eat meat in this fashion. This is said in deprecation of the practice.—(31)

## VERSE (32)

**HAVING BOUGHT IT, OR HAVING OBTAINED IT HIMSELF, OR HAVING IT PRESENTED BY OTHERS,—IF ONE EATS MEAT AFTER HAVING WORSHIPPED THE GODS AND THE PITRS, HE DOES NOT INCUR SIN—(32)**

### *Bhāṣya*

The law here laid down refers to the meat of deer and birds. The meaning is that there is no sin incurred in

eating the meat of the *Ruru*, the *Pṛṣat* and other kinds of deer, or the partridge and other birds, if it is done after having worshipped the Gods and the Pitṛs.

In the case of the offering to the Vishvēdēvas, when there is no preparation for it in the house, one may eat rice and other things, even without making the offering; but not so meat; it is with a view to emphasise this that the text repeats—'*having worshipped the Gods and the Pitṛs etc.*' If mere sanction to eat after worship were meant, this has already been accorded before.

What is meant by the 'worshipping of the Gods' here is the offering of the meat on a clean spot with the words 'this is for the Gods'; or that 'the worship of the Gods' should be done in such terms as—'this to Agni, to Vāyu, to Surya, to Jātavedas.' That this must be the meaning of the 'worship' is proved by the fact that 'offering of oblations into the fire' (which could be the other meaning 'worshipping the Gods') is not possible for persons other than Agnihotrins; nor can there be any offering made to the Gods without oblations having been poured into the fire; specially as it has been already shown that the two are distinct actions and involve distinct methods of procedure. This matter may rest here for the present.

Others have explained the 'worship of the Pitṛs' to mean *Shrāddha*; and in *Shrāddhas* we do find worshipping being done. It is the Pitṛs again that are spoken of as the 'deities' of the *Shrāddha*. Hence it is that in connection with the Pitṛs, all writers on *Smṛti* have prescribed the *Shrāddha* only, and no other act.

"How can the *buying* of meat be permissible? The meat obtained from the market becomes '*Sauna*', 'butcher's meat' (which has been forbidden); and as for the meat of animals dying of themselves, and not killed by the butcher, this is 'unfit for eating', on the ground of its causing disease."

Our answer to the above is that one can always 'buy' the meat brought by fowlers and bird-catchers; and these are

known as 'butchers'; and they wander about from house to house, carrying meat for sale, when it is possible to *buy* it; and it does not become 'butcher's meat.'

'*Having obtained it himself*,'—the Brahmana by begging it' and the *Kṣattriya* by hunting.—(32)

## VERSE (33)

In normal times the twice-born man conversant with the law shall not eat meat unlawfully; having eaten it unlawfully, he shall, after death, be devoured by them helplessly. (33)

### *Bhāṣya*

That is called '*unlawful*' which is done apart from the above-sanctioned occasions—of the worshipping of the Gods, the wish of the Brāhmaṇas and so forth; and in this 'unlawful' manner one shall not eat meat.

This is only a reiteration of what has been said before.

'*In normal times*'.—In abnormal times of distress, when one's life is in danger, he need not wait for the worship of the Gods etc.

"*Danger to life* has already been sanctioned as one of the occasions on which meat may be eaten; so that such eating would be quite *lawful*, not *unlawful*."

True; but what has been said on the previous occasion was in connection with the *consecrated* meat of the cow, the sheep and the goat; and in the present text the phrase '*in normal times*' has been added with a view to extend the sanction to the meat of the hare and other animals also.

It is not the mere *knower* of the law that is called '*conversant with the law*' but one who, in practice acts up to the law. In connection with ordinary worldly acts also the term 'know,' 'be conversant with,' is used in this sense;

when it is said of a man 'he knows this', what is meant is that 'he acts up to it'.

When the question arises regarding the effect of the act in question, the text says—'*Having eaten meat unlawfully*,'—*i-e.* in a manner not prescribed in the scriptures—'*he shall, on death, be devoured*', by those animals. All that ismeant—is that when a man eats meat in an unlawful manner, he suffers various kinds of pain. If these were not meant by the passage (and if it were taken in its literal sense),—then, in as much as it is the meat of the goat that is commonly eaten by people, and the goat is a not carnivorous animal [how could it 'devour' its eater?]

Or, the meaning may be that the eater, by virtue of the sin of that act, comes to be devoured by carnivorous animals; and as this would be the result of his having eaten the goat, he would be described as being devoured by the goat.—(33)

## VERSE (34)

THE SIN OF THE MAN WHO KILLS ANIMALS FOR GAIN IS NOT SO GREAT, AFTER DEATH, AS THAT OF THE MAN WHO EATS NEEDLESSLY-PREPARED MEAT.—(34)

### *Bhāṣya*

The meaning of this verse is well known—(34).

## VERSE (35)

BUT WHEN INVITED ACCORDING TO LAW, IF A MAN DOES NOT EAT MEAT, HE BECOMES, AFTER DEATH, A BEAST, DURING TWENTY-ONE BIRTHS.—(35)

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Sambhava*' stands for *janma*, *birth*.

Except when there is danger to life through hunger, if a man does not worship the Gods, and yet eats meat, he certainly incurs sin.—(35)

## VERSE (36)

THE BRĀHMAṆA SHALL NEVER EAT ANIMALS THAT HAVE NOT BEEN CONSECRATED WITH SACRED TEXTS; BUT THOSE THAT HAVE BEEN CONSECRATED WITH SACRED TEXTS, HE SHALL EAT, TAKING HIS STAND UPON THE ETERNAL LAW.—(36)

### *Bhāṣya*

In connection with animals-sacrifice, 'sprinkling with water' and other consecrations have been laid down as to be done with sacred texts; and one shall eat the meat of those animals for whom all these have been performed, and which (thus) are the 'remnants of sacrifices' prescribed in the Vedas. But in the case of the '*Sītā-yajña*' and other sacrifices that are performed solely on the strength of usage (and for which there is no injunction in the Veda),—even though the meat would be the 'remnant of sacrifice', yet, since there would be no 'consecration with sacred texts', it would be 'unfit for eating'.

'*Eternal*'—Vedic.

'*Taking his stand*'—dependent.—(36)

## VERSE (37)

IF THERE IS OCCASION, HE SHALL MAKE AN ANIMAL OF CLARIFIED BUTTER, OR AN ANIMAL OF FLOUR; BUT HE SHALL NEVER SEEK TO KILL AN ANIMAL NEEDLESSLY.—(37)

### *Bhāṣya*

People are likely to entertain such ideas as the following—"at the *Sītā-yajña* the *Khañjikā-yāga*, the *Chaṇḍikā-yāga* and the like, which are performed on the authority of usage only, it is right for the man desiring a certain result to kill animals; for it has been found that one obtains a rich harvest by offering sacrifices at which animals are killed."

With a view to set aside such notions the text says—'*If there is occasion*,'—if necessity arises for the offering of an animal in sacrifice,—'*he shall make an animal of*

*clarified butter'*; *i. e.* he shall make clarified butter the sacrificial animal: that is, it being necessary to offer an animal to the Gods, he shall offer, in its place, clarified butter: which is as good a 'sacrificial material'.

'*Or, he shall make an animal of flour*'; *i. e.* he shall make the figure of an animal with flour, and offer that figure to the Gods; or, it may be taken to mean that 'instead of the animal he shall offer cakes and other things made of flour'.

"Why is this called *needless animal-slaughter*, when it is sanctioned by the usage of cultured people?"

Since women, and *Shūdras* are ignorant of the Veda, such sacrifices as those mentioned cannot be assumed to have any sanction in the Veda: specially as people have reconrse to these sacrifices for the purpose of propitiating the Gods, and no Vedic act is done for the propitiating of Gods; for the simple reason that in connection with Vedic rites, Gods have been mentioned as subordinate factors. In fact, what they urge in support of the peformance of the sacrifices in question is the argument based upon negative and positive induction, from the experience that there is rich harvest when Gods are propitiated with the sacrifice of animals. For these reasons, these sacrifices cannot be regarded as having the sanction of the Veda. As for the positive and negative induction that also is entirely mistaken.

From all this it is clear that the present verse only reiterates what is already indicated as the right course by al kinds of reasons: and it has been put forward by the author through feelings of friendly kindliness.—(37)

## VERSE (38)

AS MANY HAIRS THERE ARE ON THE BODY OF THE ANIMAL, SO MANY TIMES AFTER DYING DOES ITS NEEDLESS KILLER SUFFER VIOLENT DEATH, BIRTH AFTER BIRTH.—(38.)

*Bhāṣya*

For so many lives does he suffer violent death.

'*Needless killer of the animal*',—one who kills the animal in a way not prescribed in the *Shruti* or the *Smṛti*: from the context it is clear that this refers to that animal-sacrifice which ordinary people perform on the Mahānavamī.

The term '*pashughna*' is a Vedic form formed with the affix '*ka*'.—(38).

## VERSE (39)

ANIMALS HAVE BEEN CREATED BY THE SELF-BORN GOD HIMSELF FOR THE PURPOSE OF SACRIFICE: SACRIFICE IS CONDUCIVE TO THE WELL-BEING OF ALL THIS WORLD; HENCE KILLING AT A SACRIFICE IS NO 'KILLING' AT ALL—(39).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The evil just described does not pertain to the killing of animals at the rites prescribed by *Shruti* and *Smṛti*.

That 'killing' which forms part of sacrifices,—for the due fulfilment of that were animals '*created*'—produced, brought into existence,—'*by the self-born God*'—Prajāpati '*himself*.'

This is a purely commendatory passage.

'*Sacrifice*'—in the form of the *Jyotiṣṭoma* and the rest—'*is conducive to the well-being*'—prosperity, development, advancement —'*of all this*'—world.

For this reason the killing that is done at a sacrifice should be regarded as no killing at all. What this means is that it does not involve the sin of 'killing' animals.—(39)

## VERSE (40)

HERBS, ANIMALS, TREES, BEASTS AND BIRDS, REACHING DEATH FOR THE SAKE OF SACRIFICES, ATTAIN ADVANCEMENTS.—(40)

### *Bhāṣya.*

"How is it known that killing at sacrifices involves no sin?"

The answer is as follows:—'killing' is the greatest injury that can befall the being killed; because it involves such great evil as the loss of life, involving separation from wife, children

and riches, and all the attendant evil consequences; and also because it carries the entities nearer to the fruition of their sins in the form of hell and the like. But when an animal is killed at a sacrifice, this killing becomes a great benefit conferred upon it, and it is not an injury; because it does not lead it to hell or any such undesirable conditions. That this is so follows from the fact that those '*reaching death*'—destruction—at a sacrifice—'*attain advance-ments*'—higher positions, in regard to caste and so forth; —being born as a God or a Gandharva, or as men born in better countries or continents—such as the Uttarakuru and the like.

The whole of this is a purely commendatory description. We do not find here any Injunction: the verb '*attain*' being in the simple Present tense. Nor is there any justification for deducing an Injunction from the commendatory description,—as is done in the case of the passage '*Pratitiṣṭhanti etc.*' (*vide*, *Mīmāmsā-Sūtra*, 4. 3. 17. *et seq*); because in the present case neither there is, nor is there any possibility of, any other Injunction (apart from those already set forth in the text).

The whole of this descriptive section is supplementary to the prohibition of the eating of unlawful meat; and the upshot of the prohibition contained in these verses is that 'one should never seek to kill animals needlessly.' (verse 37) As for the sanction (of killing) implied in the statement—'animals have been created for the purpose of sacrifices' (39),—all this is understood as involving the prohibition of *eating*, which is going to be distinctly emphasised below in verse 48.

Nor can any Injunction (such as 'desiring advancement, the animal shall die at a sacrifice') be deduced from the text. Because such an Injunction could not be intended for the animals; for the simple reason that they would not understand it. And those for whom the Injunction is not intended cannot be the agent; and unless one is an agent, he cannot obtain any reward declared in the scriptures. Specially as in the present case, the result spoken of does not proceed in any perceptible manner from the nature of the thing involved; as there is, for instance, in the

case of the poison, which produces its results even on ignorant persons who take it. There is no such thing in the case of things spoken of in the Veda.

Further, since the herbs and other things spoken of here are unconscious beings, the 'principle of the priests' cannot apply to their case. That is to say, it is found that in the case of sacrificial performances, results are spoken of as accruing to one person (the sacrificer) from the acts that are actually done by others,—*i. e.* the priests officiating for him; *e. g.* in the case of the passage—'he desires one to become worse etc.' In the case of such passages we admit of an Injunction, because what is there stated is not capable of being taken as supplementary to any other Injunction, and secondly because the indication of the Injunction is quite clear, and lastly, because the Injunction indicated is found to be one that pertains to human beings.

In the case of all scriptural statements, we are entitled to deduce just as much as may be reasonably deduced from the actual words of the text. For instance, it has been declared that the Brāhmaṇa joining in the sacrificial bath of other people should have to perform an expiatory rite [and we have to accept this, even though we fail to see any reason for it]. In the present case, however, there is no possibility of any Injunction being addressed to the beings concerned (all of which are inanimate).

'*Herbs*,'—grass and the like.

'*Animals*,'—the goat and other beasts (which are mentioned as fit for being offered at sacrifices).

'*Trees*,'—such as are objects of worship.

'*Beasts*,'—those which, though not ordinarily regarded as fit for sacrificing, happen to be mentioned, in some passages, as to be offered; *e. g.* 'one shall kill *partridges*.' Though at the *Vājapēya* and similar sacrifices, the calves are used only for the purpose of carrying loads, yet they are called 'beasts;' and even though these do not suffer actual *death*, yet the term 'death' in their case stands for all the sufferings that they undergo.

'*Birds*,'—the Kapiñjala and the rest; even though these are sometimes spoken of as 'animals', yet, as a rule, they are not known by that name: for in such passages as there are seven tame animals and seven wild animals', the animals meant are the cow and the rest, which are *not birds*; in fact the term '*pashu*', 'animals, denotes *quadrupeds*; or the difference between 'animals' and 'birds' may be regarded as similar to that between the '*go*' and the '*balivarda*' (the former term being wider than the latter) (40).

## VERSES (41—42.)

AT THE MADHUPARKA OFFERING, AT SACRIFICES, AND AT THE RITES IN HONOUR OF THE PITṚS,—AT THESE ALONE SHOULD ANIMALS BE KILLED, AND NOWHERE ELSE: THUS HAS MANU DECLARED —(14)

THE TWICE-BORN PERSON, KNOWING THE REAL IMPORT OF THE VEDA, KILLING ANIMALS ON THESE OCCASIONS, CARRIES HIMSELF AND THE ANIMAL TO THE MOST EXCELLENT STATE.—(42).

*Bhāṣya.*

The present text sums up in brief those occasions on which the killing of animals is sanctioned by the scriptures.

'*Madhuparka*'—has been already described. At this the killing of the calf has been enjoined.

'Sacrifice'—such as the Jyotiṣṭoma and the like; the eleventh stage of which consists of the animal-sacrifice; as also the *Pashubandha*, at which the sacrificing of the animal forms a sacrifice by itself.

'*Rites in honour of the Pitṛs*,'—*i.e.*, those of which the Pitṛs are the 'deities'; what are meant are the *Aṣṭakā* and other offerings of the kind, and not *Shrāddhas*; because these latter are laid down as to be performed with *cooked* meat, (for which the meat could be obtained otherwise than by actually killing the animal at the rite itself): and in connection with this the killing of animals has not been enjoined; nor will it be right to regard this (injunction regarding the offering of *cooked* meat)

as implying the killing of animals : because the original injunction of the *Shrāddha* does not lay down such *killing*. Further, the present verse also does not clearly enjoin it : specially as what is here mentioned is capable of being taken as pertaining to the *Aṣṭakā* offerings. If the present verse were an injunction, it would involve the necessity of seeking for its basis (in some Vedic text) : while, as we shall explain later on, it is capable of being construed as supplementary to another Injunction.

Some people explain the term '*pitṛdaivatakarma*' as standing for *the rites performed in honour of the gods and the Pitṛs* *i.e.*, the Great Sacrifices (daily).

Animals are to be killed by Brāhmaṇas for the 'support of their dependents,' and the killing of animals is also permitted at times of distress, when life may be in danger.—(41—42).

## VERSE (43).

LIVING IN HIS HOUSE, OR WITH HIS TEACHER, OR IN THE FOREST, THE SELF-CONTROLLED TWICE-BORN PERSON SHALL NOT, EVEN IN TIMES OF DISTRESS, DO THAT KILLING WHICH IS NOT SANCTIONED BY THE VEDA.—(43).

### *Bhāṣya.*

This verse forbids such killing as is not sanctioned by the Veda, it is not meant to sanction that which is already sanctioned by it.

As a matter of fact, no other killing (save what is sanctioned) is possible in the case of the Student 'living with his teacher,' or of the man performing austerities 'in the forest :' even though some sort of killing may be possible for the *incontinent* Student, yet for the Hermit in the forest it is not possible in any case. Even for the Student, an absolute indifference to life (and livelihood) is not considered desirable. Hence the present verse should be treated as the Injunction of killing at *Shrāddhas* ; and the men-

tion of the 'house' is a mere reiteration (Shrāddhas being performed only by the Householder).

Some people argue here as follows :—"If this were such an Injunction, what would be the meaning of the terms '*in the forest*' and '*in times of distress*'? For the Recluse in the forest, even though keeping up his Fire, there are no animal-sacrifices; as we shall show under 6·11."

Our Teacher however gives the following explanation:—What is urged may be true of the Student; as regards the Recluse, even 'self-abandonment' has been enjoined by such texts as 'having recourse to the Aparājitā, etc. etc.' So that for him there can be no killing for saving his life; all this we shall clearly explain under 6·31.

"The present verse puts forward the *prohibition* of killing even in *times of distress*; how then is it that you take it to mean the permission of it at such times?"

True; but otherwise (if the text were not taken as permitting killing as sanctioned by the Veda), it would be useless. It might be argued that it could serve the purposes of a commendatory text. But even for a commendatory text, some sort of basis (some injunctive text to which it is supplementary) will have to be sought out. Hence we conclude that the prohibition contained in the verse relates to normal times—other than those of distress; and there is nothing incongruous in its being sanctioned in connection with abnormal times of distress. Further, there are various degrees of 'distress'; and under the lesser forms of it, if one would take to 'killing' animals for food under the consideration that his food-supply was sufficient only for a month or a fortnight (after which he will have nothing to eat),—then such killing (even though at an abnormal time of distress) would be what is forbidden by the present text; on the other hand, if the man fears that he would die now if he did not kill for food,—or if a desperado with uplifted weapon were attacking him,—then the killing has to be done; and it is this killing in abnormal times of distress that is permitted by the text.

In this manner the Vedic text 'one should protect himself from all things' also becomes reconciled. (43).

---

## VERSE (44).

THAT KILLING WHICH IS SANCTIONED BY THE VEDA HAS BEEN ETERNAL IN THIS WORLD OF MOBILE AND IMMOBILE BEINGS: IT IS TO BE REGARDED AS NO KILLING AT ALL; SINCE IT WAS OUT OF THE VEDA THAT THE LAW SHONE FORTH.—(44).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The killing of creatures which has been prescribed in the Veda, '*has been eternal*'—without beginning—'*in this world of mobile and immobile beings*;' on the other hand, that which is laid down in the *Tantra* and other works is modern, and based upon mistaken induction. Hence it is only the former that is to be regarded as '*no killing at all*'; and this for the reason that it does not involve any sin in reference to the other world. When this killing is called 'no killing,' it is only in view of its effects, and not in view of its form (which of course is that of *killing*).

"Since both acts would be equally *killing*; how can there be any difference in their effects?"

The answer to this is—'*because it was out of the Veda that the Law shone forth*';—the promulgation of what is lawful (right) and what is unlawful (wrong) proceeded from the Veda; human authorities not being at all trustworthy. And as a matter of fact, the Veda is found to declare that in certain cases, killing is conducive to welfare. Nor is there an absolute identity of form (between the two kinds of killing); because firstly there is the difference that, while one is done for the sake of accomplishing a sacrifice, the other is done for entirely personal motives; and secondly there is difference in the intention also; that is, ordinary killing is done either by one who desires to eat meat, or by one who hates the creature (killed), while the Vedic killing is done because the man thinks that 'it is enjoined by the scriptures'.

*'Shone forth'*—Shone fully ; *i. e.*. became manifested.—(44).

## VERSE (45).

HE, WHO KILLS HARMLESS CREATURES FOR THE SAKE OF HIS OWN PLEASURE, NEVER ATTAINS HAPPINESS, LIVING OR DEAD—(45).

### *Bhāṣya*

A half-syllable—'a'—should be understood to be present (between '*yo*' and '*himsakam*'). The prohibition regarding 'harmless creatures' indicates that there is no prohibition regarding dangerous animals, such as serpents, tigers and the like.—(45).

## VERSE (46).

HE, WHO DOES NOT SEEK TO INFLICT SUFFERINGS OF CAPTURE AND DEATH ON LIVING BEINGS, IS THE WELL-WISHER OF ALL AND OBTAINS PERFECT HAPPINESS.—(46).

### *Bhāṣya*

"*Capture*" and '*death*' are the '*sufferings*' meant ; or '*sufferings*' may be taken separately, as standing for 'doing pecuniary harm' etc.

He who *seeks* to do all this,—*i.e.*, who not only desists from such acts, but who never has any desire to do it ;—such a person does not merely cease to do harm to others, he actually becomes their '*well-wisher*',—he is anxious to do good to them ; and '*he obtains perfect happiness.*'—(46).

## VERSE (47.)

HE WHO DOES NOT INJURE ANYTHING OBTAINS, WITHOUT EFFORT, WHAT HE THINKS OF, WHAT HE UNDERTAKES, AND WHAT HE FIXES HIS HEART UPON.—(47),

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*What he thinks of*',—in the shape of profit and honour, &c.

'*What he fixes his heart upon*',—whatever desirable thing he has longing for;—all this '*he obtains without effort.*'

'*What he undertakes*'— whatever act he does, the reward of that he obtains, without and difficulty, immediately after the accomplishment of that act.—(47)

## VERSE (48)

MEAT IS NEVER OBTAINED WITHOUT HAVING ENCOMPASSED THE KILLING OF ANIMALS; AND THE KILLING OF ANIMALS DOES NOT LEAD TO HEAVEN ; HENCE ONE SHOULD AVOID MEAT.—(48)

### *Bhāṣya*

This verse shows that all the verses forbidding the killing of animals are auxiliary to the prohibition of meat-eating.

As a matter of fact, until animals have been killed, meat cannot be obtained ; and killing is very painful. Hence one should avoid meat.

"Meat can be obtained from animals that die of themselves ; how is it then that it is said that it cannot be obtained *without encompassing the death of animals?* "

The verse is a purely commendatory exaggeration. Further, there can be no idea of any one eating the meat of animals dying of themselves, for the simple reason that such meat is the source of disease. Meat is never eaten without being offered, and what is a source of disease can never be offered as gift.

'*Utpadyatē*';—the meat is brought about by *killing* ; hence the nominative of *killing* and of *obtaining* may be regarded as one and the same ; so that there is nothing incongruous in the expression '*nākṛtvā utpadyatē*'. Or, '*utpadyatē*' may be construed along with '*does not lead to heaven.*', What is meant is, not only that it does not lead to heaven, but also that it leads to hell and other evils.—(48)

## VERSE (49)

**HAVING DULY PONDERED OVER THE ORIGIN OF MEAT, AND OVER THE FETTERING AND KILLING OF LIVING BEINGS, ONE SHOULD ABSTAIN FROM THE EATING OF ALL MEAT.—(49)**

### *Bhāṣya*

The fœtus grows in the womb, which is an unclean place: and it is produced from semen and ovule, both unclean things.

'*Fettering and killing*'—involved in the obtaining of meat.

'*Having duly pondered over*'—carefully considered with an alert mind;—'*all this,—one shall abstain from the eating of all meat*'—*i.e.* also of that which is not forbidden; what to say of what is actually forbidden ?

The present text is a commendatory exaggeration : it is not meant that meat should be always regarded as *unclean* ; the sentence does not mean to lay down that all meat is actually unclean.—(49)

## VERSE (50)

**HE WHO DOES NOT EAT MEAT LIKE A FIEND, DISREGARDING THE PROPER METHOD, BECOMES POPULAR AMONG MEN AND IS NOT AFFLICTED BY DISEASE.—(50.)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Proper method*'—*i.e.* of worshipping the Gods and so forth ; if one does not eat meat, regardless of this manner, but eats it only in the right manner,—'*he becomes popular*'—loved by the people : he becomes dear to all.

'*He is not afflicted by disease.*'—Diseases are produced if a man eats the flesh of lean and enfeebled animals. For this reason also one should eat meat only in the right manner ; and by eating it thus, he '*is not afflicted by disease.*' By eating meat in any other way, he is always afflicted by disease.

'*Like a fiend*'.—The term 'fiend' stands for a species of lower animals, which eat flesh always in the wrong manner; hence every one who eats it in the wrong manner becomes like a fiend;—this is the sense of the deprecatory simile.—(50).

---

## VERSE (51.)

HE WHO APPROVES, HE WHO CUTS, HE WHO KILLS, HE WHO BUYS AND SELLS, HE WHO COOKS, HE WHO SERVES AND HE WHO EATS IT ARE 'SLAYERS'.—(51).

*Bhasya.*

When some one is killing an animal, if another person should come, and for his own selfish purposes show his approbation, by such words as 'he is doing well in thus killing the animal,'—this latter man is called the '*approver*'.

'*He who cuts.*'—he who quarters the dead body.

'*He who serves*'—places it before persons eating.

'*He who eats it*'.

All these are '*slayers*'.

What is meant by attributing the character of the '*slayer*' to those who do not actually *slay*, but do the other acts of eating, preparing, selling, &c.,—is the deprecation of all these acts; all these persons do not actually become '*slayers*.' The ordinary act of 'slaying' is that which results in loss of life: so that it is only one who does this act that is the 'slayer.' In accordance with the rule that 'the nominative agent of an act is one who does it independently by himself,' that person alone is called the 'slayer' who deprives living beings of their life; those who do the acts of buying, selling, etc., are other than that person.

"But the statement that the approver and the rest also are *slayers* also emanates from the *Smṛti* (and as such must be accepted as true)."

The authority of this *Smṛti* does not extend to the subject of words and their denotations; it is confined to the subject of right and wrong,—what is lawful and what unlawful. More authoritative on the subject of words and their meanings is the revered Pāṇini. In fact Manu and otther writers on *Smṛti* only make use of words in accordance with ordinary usage, and they do not lay down rules bearing upon words and their meanings; they use the words, they do not regulate them.

"But as a matter of fact, we do find these writers making such assertions as 'such aud such a person is called a *Preceptor*' and so forth (which lay down the denotation of words)."

True; but in such cases there is no inconsistency between what the *Smṛti* says and what we learn from the treatises bearing upon the subject. Nor again is there any other useful purpose found to be served by those passages (that explain the meaning of the term 'preceptor' (for instance). In the present case, however the passage is capable of serving an auxiliary purpose by being taken as a commendatory statement; so that it is not possible, on the strength of the present text alone, to regard all these persons as 'slayers.'

Some people argue as follows:—"If there is no one to *eat*, there would be no one to kill; so that the *killing* is really prompted by the *eating*; and the prompter of an act also has been regarded as its *doer*; so that the *eater* is the *slayer*, even in the direct sense of this term; and it is only right that the *eater* should have to perform the same Expiatory Rite as the *slayer*."

This, we say, is not right; because as a matter of fact, a different expiatory rite has been prescribed, under Discourse xi for the *taster* of the meat of the animals killed (by others).

What has been stated above regarding the *prompter* being the *doer*, that also is not true. The *prompting agent* has been thus defined—'He who by means of direction and request, prompts the independent agent, is also an auxiliary agent, the other being the principal one.' And as a matter of fact when the *slayer* kills the animal, he is not ordered to do so by the eater;

he does it as a means of living, with the motive that he shall live by selling the flesh.

If *prompting* means *abetting*,—*i.e.* if it be held that when a man proceeds to do a certain act, if another person abets him and co-operates with him, the latter is to be regarded as the *prompter*—then, this definition also is not applicable to the present case. In the act of *killing*, the 'abetting' would consist in such acts as—(*a*) collecting the weapons, etc. (*b*) the sharpening of the blunted axe, (*c*) the bringing up of the sword, and so forth ; as without these the act of *killing* could not be accomplished, [and none of these acts is done by the *eater*].

If, however, the *prompter* be defined as 'that person for whose take the work is done,'—then, in the case of the 'teaching of the boy,' the boy would have to be regarded as the *prompting agent* in the act of 'teaching' ; and yet 'teaching' does not mean 'reading' (which is what the boy actually does).

Then again, when the slayer does the *killing*, he does not do so for the benefit of any particular person, by virtue of which the latter's action of *eating* could be regarded as sinful. In fact, all these persons undertake these acts for their own benefit ; and not one of them is troubled by the idea of benefitting any other person.

"Even when the man undertakes the killing for his own benefit, such action would be absolutely useless if there were no *eater* : it is only when there is an *eater*, that the man's action is fruitful ; and the *fruit* of an act is the motive, the prompting force ; and as this depends upon the eater, the eater also is an indirect prompter."

If this be so, then, when a person is murdered on account of enmity, since the enemy would be the prompter of the act of killing, the murdered man could become the murderer ! For without enmity, the act of murder would not be possible. Similarly when in the case of Brāhmaṇa-murder, the murderer (in course of the Expiatory Rite) gives away his entire property, the act of giving will have been prompted by the *murder* : and as

there could be no *recipient* without the giver, it is not only the re-chastity, but the giver also that would become tainted with the sin. Similarly a beautiful woman would incur sin by guarding her chastity against the lover who has his heart burning with the arrows of love and who has expressed his longing for her.

From all this it follows that what has been suggested cannot be the definition of the *prompter*.

As a matter of fact, both the *slayer* and the *eater* do their respective acts for their own special benefit ; but they become helpful to one another in the manner of two persons one of whom has lost his horse and another his cart ; and there can be no question of one being the *prompter* of the other.

This has been fully discussed under 8·104.—(51).

## VERSE (52).

IF A MAN, WITHOUT WORSHIPPING THE GODS AND PITṚS, SEEKS TO INCREASE HIS OWN FLESH BY THE FLESH OF OTHERS,—THERE IS NO SINNER GREATER THAN THAT PERSON.—(52).

### *Bhāṣya.*

This deprecates the man who eats meat for the purpose of fattening himself, and not one who does it for averting disease. That this is so is clear from the words of the text '*he who seeks to increase.*' In him also, only if he does it '*without worshipping the Gods and Pitṛs.*' But if the man is ill, and recovery is not possible without eating meat, then there would be no harm, even if the said worshipping were not done.—(52).

## VERSE (53.)

IF A MAN PERFORMS THE ASHVAMEDHA SACRIFICE EVERY YEAR, FOR A HUNDRED YEARS,—AND ANOTHER DOES NOT EAT MEAT,—THE MERIT AND REWARD OF BOTH THESE ARE THE SAME.—(53.)

### *Bhāṣya.*

The eating of the meat of the Hare and other animals,—in the form of remnants of the worship of Gods and Pitṛs—has been

sanctioned. If one abstains from this eating, he obtains the fruits of the *Ashvamēdha* sacrifice ; and the fruits of this sacrifice have been described in the words 'he obtains all desires, etc., etc.'

In this connection it would not be right to urge the following objection :—" How can mere abstaining from meat be equal to a sacrifice involving tremendous labour and much expense?"—Because the said abstention also is extremely difficult. Further, the principle enunciated in the Sūtra.—'The particular result would follow from development as in the ordinary world'—is operative here also. Hence there can be no objection against the asserting of results or fruits of actions.

Our answer however is as follows :—What is said in the text is a purely commendatory exaggeration ; specially because the statement of the sacrifice being performed 'every year for one hundred years' can be regarded only as such an exaggeration ; for it is not possible for the *Ashvamēdha* to be performed every year ; nor can it be performed ' for a hundred years,' as no performer would live so long,

' *Puṇyaphalam* ' is a copulative compound, it being impossible to take it as a Genitive *Tatpuruṣa*. —(53).

## VERSE (54).

By subsisting upon sacred fruits and roots, and by eating the food of hermits, one does not obtain that reward which he does by abstaining from meat—(54).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Sacred*'—fit for Gods.

'*Food of hermits*'—*i.e.*, such grains as are got without cultivation ; *e.g.*, the *Nivāra* and the like.

This verse also is a purely commendatory exaggeration—(54)

## VERSE (55).

'ME HE (MĀM-SA) WILL DEVOUR IN THE NEXT WORLD, WHOSE MEAT I EAT IN THIS'—THIS IS THE 'MEATNESS' (MĀMSATVA) OF THE 'MEAT' (MĀMSA), AS THE WISE ONES DECLARE.—(55).

*Bhāṣya.*

This explanation of the name is a commendatory description. '*Mām sa bhakṣayitā*',—'*He will eat me.*'—The general pronoun '*saḥ*,' 'he,' has its particular character pointed out by what follows—'*whose meat I eat here.*'—(55).

## VERSE (56.)

THERE IS NO SIN IN THE EATING OF MEAT, NOR IN WINE, NOR IN SEXUAL INTERCOURSE. SUCH IS THE NATURAL WAY OF LIVING BEINGS ; BUT ABSTENTION IS CONDUCIVE TO GREAT REWARDS.—(56).

*Bhāṣya.*

From verse 28 to this we have a series of purely commendatory texts ; there are only two or three verses that are injunctive in their character.

'*There is no sin in the eating of meat.*' This assertion stands on the same footing as verse 32 above. What we learn from the present verse (in addition to what we know already) is that '*abstention is conductive to great rewards.*' By various deprecatory texts the impression has been produced that 'no meat should be eaten.' But by way of providing a means of living for living beings it has been asserted that '*there is no sin in the eating of meat*' ; which means that there is no sin if one eats such meat as is the remnant of the worship of Gods, etc., or what is eaten at the wish of Brāhmaṇas, and under such similar circumstances specified above ; but this only if he wish to eat it.

'*Abstention*'—taking the resolve not to eat meat and then to abstain from it—this is '*conducive to great rewards*'. In the absence of the mention of any particular reward, *Heaven* is to be regarded as the reward. So say the *Mīmāṁsakas.*

Similarly in regard to 'wine', for the *Kṣattriyas*,—and to '*sexual intercourse*', for all castes; but apart from that which may be alone (a) 'during the day' or (b) 'with women in their courses', or 'on sacred days', (in connection with all of which sexual intercourse has been forbidden).

The three things mentioned here, in their very restricted forms, constitute the 'natural way of living beings', sanctioned by the scriptures with a view to the maintenance of the body. Says the author of the Science of Medicine (*Āyurveda*) —'Food, continence and sleep—these three, intoxicants and women, tend to prolong life.'

If, however, one can manage to live without these, for him '*abstention is conducive to great rewards*.' This is said merely by way of illustration : same being the case with all 'abstentions' from such things as are neither prescribed nor forbidden. Where however a certain act is definitely prescribed, there is nothing reprehensible in the man's doing it, even if it be done only for the sake of the pleasure that it affords him; in fact *abstention* from such an act would itself be reprehensible, as done with a view to 'great rewards'; e. g. the eating of honey, having a full meal, wearing a woolen garment and so forth. Such also is the practice of cultured people; the revered Vyāsa also says the same. Those acts, on the other hand, to which people have recourse only through desire,—even though these be neither permitted nor forbidden,—e.g. laughing, scratching of the body and so forth,—abstention from these would be conducive to great rewards.—(56)

## SECTION (7)

## Impurity due to Death.

### VERSE (57)

**I AM GOING TO DESCRIBE, IN DUE ORDER, PURIFICATION ON DEATH, AS ALSO PURIFICATION OF SUBSTANCES, AS PRESCRIBED FOR ALL THE FOUR CASTES.—(57)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*For all the four castes*'.—This is meant to imply that the duties of the *Shūdra*, generally laid down only in a vague form, could not be known without special effort.

'*Prētashuddhi*',—the purification of the living after the death of other persons. This compound is according to the general rule 'A noun with a declensional ending is compounded with anther noun with a declensional ending'.

Though the author announces that he is going to describe the *purification*, yet, in as much 'purification is dependent upon, and relative to, 'impurity', and as it is the function of the treatise to provide information regarding both, the author is going to describe first the occasions of 'Impurity'.—(57).

### VERSE (58)

**WHEN A CHILD DIES THAT HAS TEETHED, OR ONE YOUNGER THAN IT WHEN ITS TONSURE HAS BEEN PERFORMED, ALL ITS RELATIVES ARE 'IMPURE'. THE SAME IS DECLARED TO BE THE CASE WITH BIRTHS ALSO.—(58).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Anujāta*'—is taken to mean *younger than the child that has teethed.*

The present verse mentions the several stages only by way of illustration, and much emphasis is not meant to be laid on them; since the exact period of 'impurity' in regard to the various stages is going to be prescribed later on; *e.g.*, in another *Smṛti-text* we read—(*a*) 'Till the appearance of teeth etc.'—(b) 'When a child dies in a foreign country, etc., etc.' (5·77),—there is '*immediate impurity*';—where the term 'child' is to be understood as standing for *one that has not teethed.* Thus too it is that what the text (5·67) says regarding the 'one night's impurity' in connection with the death of 'persons whose tonsure has not been performed etc.' is taken to be applicable also to one who has teethed. It is in this way that the rules laid down by the two *Smṛti-texts* in connection with the 'child' become reconciled. In fact the 'one night's impurity' pertains only to children till the performance of the Tonsure; since in connection with those whose Tonsure has been performed, the period of impurity is going to be prescribed as to last for three days; and this applies to the case of boys before their Initiatory Ceremony; after which the period would be ten days and so forth, as laid down in the text—'The Brāhmaṇa is purified in ten days, etc.' (5·83).

Some people interpret the several alternative rules laid down in verses 5.59 *et seq*—'Impurity due to death lasts for ten days' etc., etc.,—as pertaining to the different ages (of the dying person), and construe them differently from their natural order—on the strength of usage and of other *Smṛti-texts*; by which (*a*) the impurity in connection with the Initiated child lasts for ten days, (*b*) in connection with the uninitiated for four days, (*c*) in connection with one whose Tonsure has been performed, three days, (*d*) in connection with one who has teethed, one day, and (*e*) in connection with younger children, it is to be only 'immediate'; and so forth. In this way there would be an option between 'three' and 'four' days, in connection with one whose Tonsure has been pesformed.

But in accordance with these views, there would be no notice taken of the rule that has been prescribed in another *Smṛti*-text,

in connection with the death of the boy 'who has completed his Vedic Study. All this we shall explain later on.

A person is called 'dead' when all his functions have ceased, and the root '*sthā*' with the preposition '*sam*,' denotes *cessation of functions*, [Hence '*samsthita*' means *dead*].

'*Relations*',—*i.e.*, *Sapiṇḍas* (sharers in the ball-offering) and *Samānodakas* ('Sharers in the water-offering').

'*Jātaka*' is the birth of a son, etc.

'*The same is declared to be the case*'; i. e., all relations are impure.

*Question*: "Whence is any notion of *age* obtained, by which the text is interpreted as applying to one whose Tonsure has been performed, and thus refering to a particular sacramental rite? In a later text, the connection of the Initiatory Rite has been directly mentioned. But we do not find it anywhere stated upto what age a child may be called 'tonsured."

Our answer to the above is as follows: By reason of its having been mentioned along with 'one who has teethed,' the term 'tonsure' is understood as indicating a definite age; and this age is to be taken as extending upto the third or the fourth year.

It has been argued that—"Since there is the option of performing the Tonsure during the first year, if one adopts this option, the present rule (which extends the 'impurity' in the case of the 'tonsured' child to one day) would be contrary to the rule that 'upto the period of teething, the impurity is only *immediate*.'"

This is not right. As a matter of fact, what is the extent of the 'tonsured' age we learn from the juxtaposition of the epithets 'tonsure' and 'initiated', which indicates that the new name becomes applicable only upon the performance of the next sacramental rite [so that the boy could be regarded as 'tonsured' only till the performance of the Initiatory Rite]. In this way, the

present text would become reconciled with such texts as 'Till teething, impurity is to be immediate.' Similarly in the *Smṛti*-text—'Till the ceremony of Initiation it is to be for three days'—the Initiatory ceremony is mentioned only as indicative of a particular age. It might be argued that—"there would, in this case be no age specified for the *Shūdra*, in the way in which it is for the *Brāhmaṇa*, the *Kṣattriya* and the *Vaishya*, in connection with whom, the Initiation has been more or less strictly prescribed, as being the eighth year and so forth."—But in this case also, the age would be understood as when the period of 'childhood' is passed; in accordance with the law that 'for all there is a full period of impurity.' Thus then, *after the eighth year*, in case of all the four castes, the period of impurity would be the 'full term', and this age is applicable to the case of the *Shūdra* also. In accordance with the view by which the 'Initiation' in the present context is taken as indicating the eleventh (and twelfth) year in the case of the Kṣattriya and the Vaishya,—there would be no age mentioned in connection with the *Shūdra*. Though in his case also the period of impurity extends to the full time, in the case of one who has passed his childhood; before which the period extends to three days only: and the passing of childhood has been defined in another *Smṛti*-text, which says—'Upto the eighth year one is called a *child*', while others declare that 'one is a *child* till his sixteenth year.' Those who hold that 'childhood' ceases after the sixteenth year,—according to those also *purification* takes place only after a month (the full term). It has also been declared that 'after six years, the purification of the Shūdra comes after a month'; and in another text—'one month in the case of the eight-year-old child'.

*Objection*—"The rules regarding the several ages are obtained from the verses that follow; why then should the 'teething', etc., have been specified in the present verse?"

*Answer*—True; but it has been answered here also for the purpose of making the rules more intelligible.

## VERSE [59].

**AMONG 'SAPINDAS', THE PERIOD OF IMPURITY DUE TO DEATH IS ORDAINED TO LAST FOR TEN DAYS ; OR TILL THE COLLECTING OF THE BONES, OR FOR THREE DAYS, OR FOR ONE DAY ONLY—(59).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The qualifications of the '*Sapiṇḍa*' shall be described later on.

'*Till the collecting of the bones*' ;—this is meant to indicate the period of *four days* ;—since there is the text—'The bone-collecting of one who has set up the fire shall be done on the fourth day'.

The alternatives here laid down are in consideration of the man's character and Vedic learning, or of his character only ; as says another *Smṛti*-text,—'The Brāhmaṇa who is equipped with the Veda only, in three days, and he who has no qualifications ,in ten days.' The period of 'one day' is meant for the man who knows *three Vedas* and has set up the Fire ; that of 'three days' far one who knows *one Veda* only ; and that of ten days for one who has no such qualifications.

Gautama (14·44) has spoken of 'immediate purity.' But this is for a special purpose ; all that is meant it that Vedic Study shall not cease. During the period of Impurity, several acts are discontinued,—e. g. for ten days, the food of the two families is not eaten ; the making of gifts, the receiving of them, the offering af oblations and Vedic Study are discontinued ; so that ordinarily all these acts would cease during the period ; but so far as the Student of several Vedas is concerned, if he were not to repeat them regularly, he would forget them ; hence in his case Vedic Study shall not cease.

Similarly it is only right that an alternative should be provided, in consideration of the mourner's livelihood. For instance, for the man who lives by the 'six acts' (of giving and receiving gifts, of sacrificing and officiating at sacrifices, and Reading and Teaching), the impurity lasts for ten days ; for him who lives by the

'three acts' (of receiving gifts, officiating at Sacrifices and Teaching), it lasts for four days, and for him who lives by 'two acts,' it lasts for three days. If, for all these, the Impurity were to last for ten days, then, as the man would not be entitled to receive gifts and officiate at sacrifices, his living would become extremely difficult for him.

Some people hold that—"there are four age-stages, and four periods of Impurity; so that each of the latter is to be taken along with each of the former."

But according to this view, there would be ten days' impurity in the case of the child that has teethed; while in the case of the death of the initiated boy, it would be for a single day only; and this would be contrary to usage and other Smṛti-texts.

In order to avoid this incongruity, the connection may be made in the reverse order; *i.e.*, the death of the *initiated* boy entailing *ten* days, and that of the *tonsured* child four days, the *teething* child three days, and a still younger child only one day.

Even so in view of the incompatibility (of this view) with the Smṛti-text, that—'in the case of the *tonsured* child, the impurity lasts for three days',—it would be necessary to regard the two (three and four days) as optional alternatives; specially as the term '*sva*' refers to 'three days,' and the period of 'four days' would apply to the particular livelihood of the mourner, or to the particular day on which the bones are collected. In this manner all this becomes reconciled with the other Smṛti-texts, which speaks of 'one day, &c.' If, on the other hand, the option were explained as based upon the diversity of age,—then, with what would Manu's declaration regarding 'conduct' and 'study' be taken as optional?

From all this it follows that on the strength of Gautama's assertion, there is to be 'immediate purification,' only so far as Vedic Study is concerned—for the man who, like the person possessing a 'granary', has other means of living than the receiving of gifts, and who is very much learned in the Vedas. In the case of the other alternatives, of 'three days' and the rest, the purification is meant simply to qualify the man for the receiving of gifts

for purposes of a living. This is according to the view of Gautama. If this were not his meaning, then, he would have said simply—' for the Brāhmaṇa learning the Veda,'—and not 'for the purpose of avoiding discontinuance of study.'

Thus, though purification has been laid down in a general way, as to be accomplished in a single day,—yet it should be understood as pertaining to certain special acts only. So that the ordinary period for the Brāhmaṇa being ' ten days ' (according to 5·83), there is no need for saying anything else ; from which it is clear that the option should be admitted in the manner described above. In the case however of ' purity ' being immediate, in the case of new born infants, and the period of impurity lasting for ' three days ' in the case of tonsured children,—sinece there is no option, the purity must pertain to all acts.—(59).

---

## SECTION (8)

## Sapiṇḍa—relationship as bearing on 'Impurity'.

### VERSE (60.)

THE 'SAPIṆḌA-RELATIONSHIP' CEASES WITH THE PERSON IN THE SEVENTH-DEGREE AND THE 'SAMĀNODAKA-RELATIONSHIP,' WHEN THE ORIGIN AND THE NAME BECOME UNRECOGNISABLE—.(60).

*Bhāṣya.*

Inasmuch as the present context is meant to provide information regarding the exact signification of the term '*anvaya*', 'family',—and as the term '*bāndhava*', 'relation' (of the preceeding verses) is meant to be construed with the present text also,—the meaning of the present verse is that persons born of the same family are called '*Sapiṇḍas*' upto the person in the seventh grade. In view of the assertion—'the son shall make offerings to those to whom his fathers make them',—which lays down offerings to be made also by a person whose father is living, six persons become recognised as '*Sapiṇḍas*' (the seventh being the offerer himself).

Further, according to the statement—'offerings are made to forefathers, counting one's own self as the seventh'—the grandfather, the great-grand-father and other ancestors are called '*Sapiṇḍas*'; and yet, while the six ancestors are called '*Sapiṇḍas*,' the six descendants, beginning with the son, are also called '*Sapiṇḍas*.' Because the 'offering of the ball' is a single act, upon which, and in connection with which, the title '*Sapiṇḍa*' becomes applicable,—the 'son' and other descendants also become associated with this 'act as performed by the grandson, and other descendants respectiveiy; consequently the person to whom one makes the offering, and along with whom he becomes the recipient of the offering—all these come to be called '*Sapiṇḍa*;' and the reason for this lies in the fact that the 'ball-offering' is the only indicative in the present case; just as in the case of the

assertion 'you should come at conch-time (gun-time)' the 'conch' is the only indicative of the time that is meant. Thus it comes to this that all descendants upto the seventh grade of the great-grandfather of one's great-grandfather are his '*Sapiṇḍas*'; and similarly the descending line of one's descendants, and the descendants of his father, grand-father and the rest. The degrees are to be counted from that person from whom the two lines bifurcate. For instance, among persons who have a common grandfather, the seven degrees should be counted from that grandfather, and persons falling within those seven degrees would be the '*Sapiṇḍa*'. Similarly in all cases.

In dealing with the question of '*Sapiṇḍa*', all that the text speaks of is 'person born of the same family,' and no mention of the caste is made; consequently persons belonging to the *Kṣattriya* and other castes also become 'Sapiṇḍa' of the Brāhmaṇa. It is for this reoson that on the birth of such persons also the Brāhmaṇa remains 'impure' for ten days; while in their own case the period lasts for twelve days (for the *Kṣattriya*), thirteen for the *Vaishya* and so forth. Thus then, in the case of the birth or death of the person of a different caste, or in that of the *Sapiṇḍa* of a different caste, the purification is governed by the period prescribed for the caste of the person concerned.

In the case of the Kṣattriya and other castes, their 'Sapiṇḍa'-relationship to the Brāhmaṇa extends to three degrees only; as says Shankha—"If of one person there are born several persons, of different mothers and diverse castes, these are 'Sapiṇḍas', with varying periods of purification; but the ball-offering extends over three degrees only." In this passage the term 'of different mothers' means '*born of mothers of different castes*'; the term 'of diverse castes' has also been added in view of the fact that persons born of mothers of the *same* caste also are 'born of different mothers'.—These are '*Ekapiṇḍa*', *i.e.*, *Sapiṇḍa*; but 'with varying periods of purification'; *i.e.*, the purification of each person is in accordance with his own caste; for instance. for the Brāhmaṇa in the case of the birth, etc,, of his *Sapiṇḍa* of the *Kṣattriya* and

other castes, the purification takes *ten* days; while for the *Kṣattriya*, in the case of the birth, &c. of his *Brāhmaṇa Sapiṇḍa*, it takes twelve days;—there is the further peculiarity in this case that 'the ball-offering extends over three degrees only'; *i. e.*, it is offered to persons within three degrees only.

Within the pale of their own castes however, for the *Kṣattriya* and other castes also the 'Sapiṇḍa-relationship' extends over seven degrees, exactly as for Brāhmaṇas; specially as in the words of Shaṅkha justed quoted, we find the qualifying terms '*born* of *one person from different mothers*'—it is only in relation to other castes that their 'Sapiṇḍa-relstionship can be understood to extend over three degrees only. This same fact is still more clearly stated in the following *Smṛti*—text—'In the case of impurity due to the death of those relations of the Brāhmaṇa who are descendants from the *Kṣattriya*, the *Vaishya* and the *Shūdra*, the purification of the Brāhmaṇa comes after ten days, upto six, three and one stage respectively.'

In the case of the wives of different castes, if the husband is alive, the purification is determined by the time laid down for the husband. To this end it is said—'In the case of birth and death among slaves, and among one's wives of lower castes, the purification would be similar to that of the master or husband, but if the husband is not living, it shall be similar to that of their fathers.'

In place of the fist quarter of the text (instead of the words '*sūtē mṛtē tu dāsānām*'—'in the case of birth and death among slaves') some people read '*asavarṇāsutānām*' ('of sons born of other castes'). If such be the reading, then such Shūdra-sons as live in the house of the Brāhmaṇa-father would be controlled entirely by the ways of the father, and hence their time of purification would be *ten days* in consideration of their father's caste.

The term '*dāsa*,' 'slave', in the text just quoted are meant to be those that have been hired; because for born slaves we have another rule,—viz:—'Artisans, mechanics, female and male slaves, and king's officers have been declared to be capable of immediate

purification'. But this 'purification' should be understood to consist only in their touchability, and not as entitling them to the acts of offering gifts, feeding Brāhmaṇas and so forth; and the reason for this lies in the fact that all the names here mentioned are such as are based upon *professions*; which gives rise to the following questions—(a) Is the purification here laid down subversive of all the rules that have been laid down before?—Or (b) does it entitle the man to all acts?—Or (c) does it entitle him to a few of these only? And the conclusion that suggests itself is that the man is entitled to just those acts that may be necessary for the proper carrying out of the King's business. Such also is the usage.

*Objection.*—"In the present context we do not find any prohibition of touching [how then can the text just quoted be taken as pertaining to *touchability* alone]?"

But in another *Smṛti-text* we read—'The touching of the body is permitted after the bones have been collected;' and also elsewhere—'The Brāhmaṇas become touchable in three or four days; while at birth or death, purification comes in eleven days; in the case of the *Kṣattriya* there is touchability on the sixth or seventh day, ond their food becomes pure in twelve days; in the case of the *Vaishya*, touchability comes on the eighth or ninth day, but their food is pure in a fortnight; the *Shūdra* becomes touchable on the eleventh or twelfth day and the purification of his food comes about in a month.' So says *Hārīta*; and yet another text also—'The touchability of the different castes comes about in three, four, five and six days respectively; the food of the Brāhmaṇa becomes eatable in ten days, and that of the other castes two, three and six days later'.

The several alternatives mentioned in the above texts are to be taken as based upon the exigencies of individual cases, as also upon the higher or lower qualifications of the persons concerned; e. g. the hired slaves of the Brāhmaṇa remain untouchable for three or four days, while their born slaves become touchable immediately. Similarly. in the case of the other castes also.

Wherever 'immediate purification' is mentioned, there should be bathing with all the clothes on.

As regards the purification of material substances,—all details are going to be explained later on.

Among girls also, the '*Sapiṇḍa-relationship*' extends to three degrees. As says Vashiṣṭha—'For women who have got sons it is known to extend to three degrees.' This limited '*sapiṇḍa*-relationship' in the case of women however refers only to Impurity; as regards *marriage* what its extent should be has been already indicated before.

The final conclusion thus is that the seventh degree is the limit, and the persons up to and including the sixth degree are '*Sapiṇḍas*'. This is what is meant by the words—'*it ceases with the person in the seventh deree.*'

'*The Samānodaka*' *relationship—i.e. the name* '*Samānodaka*'—'*when the origin and the name become unrecognisable.*'—'Origin'—'such a person is born in my own family';—'*name*'—'he is descended from the father named so and so, and the grandfather named so & so';—when both these are '*unrecognisable.*' That is, when either of these happens to be unknown, then also, the name in question is not applicable.

In the case of persons within the limits of 'Samānodaka-relationship,' all that people should do is to enter a river or some other water-reservoir, till the water reaches up to the navel,—they should face the south and, having offered water with the right hand upward, without looking back, should return home.—(60)

## VERSE (61.)

**THUS ALSO SHOULD IT BE AT A BIRTH; BUT THE PARTURIENT DISABILITY ATTACHES TO THE PARENTS ONLY; OR, THE PARTURIENT DISABILITY WOULD ATTACH TO THE MOTHER ALONE, AND THE FATHER WOULD BECOME PURIFIED BY BATHING.—(61.)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The same rule holds good regarding '*birth*' among *Sapiṇḍas*. Just as in connection with death several alternative periods of

impurity have been laid down, in consideration of one's livelihood depending upon the six acts (of giving and receiving gifts and so forth), and also upon the vastness or purity of one's Vedic learning,—exactly the same holds good regarding cases of birth also; all that is meant to be applicable to the case of birth is *impurity* pure and simple, without any qualification of time; so that no specifications being found to be indicated here, the case of birth, through its own inherent aptitude, becomes connected with all that has been said (in the way of qualifications and limitations) in connection with *death.* On the other hand, if the words of the text were taken to indicate the application, to the case of birth, of impurity as specially limited by a particular period of time, then it would be connected only with the period of ten days, which is the principal alternative laid down; and in that case this same period would apply to the case of Vedic Study &c. also. Or, by the closer proximity of the mention of the alternative of the single-day-period, the case of birth would become connected with this latter period only; and thus having its wants supplied by this, it would have no connection with the other alternative periods of 'three days' and the rest. And in that case, even in the face of the limitations and restrictions due to livelihood and study, the present text would lay down the same single alternative in connection with both death and birth, and would, irrespective of all qualifications of the persons concerned, become conditioned by their caste only, and thus become incongruous and opposed to usage.

"Under this explanation, the alternative periods of *three days* and the rest would become applicable also to the women that have been delivered; and this would be contrary to all usage."

The answer to this is as follows:—This would be the case only if what is laid down in the present verse (regarding the delivered woman) were an optional alternative. As a matter of fact however, the rule laid down is absolutely fixed. It is only thus that the use of the term *tu* "*but*" becomes justified.

Then again, the term '*sūtaka*' used in the text does not directly denote *impurity*; it could only indirectly *indicate* the *impu-*

*rity as related to parturition* (which is what is directly expressed by the word). But through indirect indication it would be far more reasonable to make it express *untouchability*, which is more nearly related to parturition. If all kinds of impurity were meant, then the author would have used the word '*āshoucha*' 'impurity', itself; and the line would have read '*āshaucham mātureva syāt.*' From all this it follows that another *Smṛti-text* having laid down three days (for both parents), and the present text making no mention of any such period, what is here said regarding the 'parturient disabiliy' attaching 'to the mother only' is an optional alternative. So that between the father and the mother the option applies to the father only.

The father becomes pure after having bathed. This is only by way of a prefatory statement ; from what follows in the next verse the father also remains untouchable for *three days*. (61).

## SECTION—(9)

### Other forms of Impurity.

### VERSE (62)

THE MAN, HAVING EMITTED SEMEN BECOMES PURE BY BATHING; HENCE, ON ACCOUNT OF SEMINAL FILIATION HE SHOULD OBSERVE IMPURITY FOR THREE DAYS.—(62)

*Bhāṣhya.*

While laying down purification after three days, the author permits the purification by bathing, which has been spoken of above. If it be asked—"why should this be stated?"—the answer is that it is stated in the form an injunction; by way of a commendatory assertion, and not a regular injunction, just as in the case of the Vedic passage '*jartilayavāgvā va juhuyāt.*'

'*Having thrown out semen*',—after emission during the act of sexual intercourse,—the man becomes pure by bathing.

'*Hence, on account of seminal filiation*';—'*Seminal*' means *pertaining to the semen*;—*fitiliation* means *begetting of the child*; and in the event of this, why should he not '*observe*'—keep up—'*the impurity for three days.*' The impurity due to child-birth is not of the same kind as that which attaches to the man who has emitted semen and has not taken a bath; in fact it lasts for three days. The period of 'three days' mentioned here is a reiteration of the same as occurring in the preceding verse. For this same reason

the '*upasprshya*' in the present verse is taken to mean *bathing* and not merely *water-sipping*; specially in view of the assertion that '*snāna*, 'bathing,' has been enjoined for the man who has had *sexual* intercourse.

Some people hold that when a son is born to a man, he becomes touchable on that same day. As says Shaṅkha—At the birth of a boy, before the placenta has been severed, there is nothing wrong in the man receiving, on that same day, the gift of sugar, sesamum, gold, cloth, clothes, cows and grain,—so say some'; and again—'for this reason that day is sacred, enhancing as it does the pleasure of the forefathers: and because it reminds one of his ancestors, there is no impurity attaching to that day.' In fact some people even go to the length of performing *shrāddhas* on that day. From this it follows that in such cases there is no impurity attaching to the father at all.

In fact the two *Smṛti*-texts just quoted are to be taken as providing optional alternatives, in consideration of the man having, or not having, means of living (other than the receiving of gifts).—(62).

## VERSE (63).

THOSE WHO TOUCH THE CORPSE BECOME PURE AFTER ONE DAY AND ONE DAY ALONG WITH THREE THREE-DAY PERIODS; THOSE WHO OFFER WATER, AFTER THREE DAYS.—(63).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Three three-day periods*'— i. e. nine days;—along with one day and one night,—make up *ten days*. The period has been mentioned in this fashion in view of metrical exigencies.

'*Those who touch the corpse*'— i. e. those who wash and adorn the dead body. Mere bathing is going to be laid down later on, for the other persons touching the body, as also for those who carry it; as will be made clear from the next verse.

All this refers to the *Samānodaka* relations as also to those who carry the body for wages received. In regard to the carrying of the dead of helpless and forlorn persons, we have another *Smṛti*—text, which says—'For such persons who do the excellent

deed (of carrying the dead body of a helpless man), there is nothing wrong, nor is there any impurity involved, for them it has been ordained that they are immediately purified by bathing in water.'

As regards the assertion of the text under 5. 100— 'He who carries the dead body of a Brāhmaṇa, who is not his Sapiṇḍa-relation, becomes purified in three days'—what this means we shall explain under that verse.

*'Those who offer water'*— i. e. the *'Samānodaka'* relations. In connection with these, 'immediate purification' also is going to be laid down under verse 77. Hence the two should be regarded as optional alternatives.

What is said here is in connection with 'sapiṇḍa' relations and refers to persons not engaged in Vedic study.—(63)

## VERSE (64)

THE PUPIL PERFORMING THE 'PITṚMĒDHA FOR HIS DEAD TEACHER BECOMES PURIFIED IN TEN DAYS; JUST AS THOSE WHO CARRY THE DEAD BODY.—(64)

*Bhāṣya.*

*'Pitṛmēdha'*—i. e. the final sacrificial offering; others hold that the term stands for the entire procedure (of the Shrāddha);—performing this, the pupil *becomes purified in ten days.* This same rule applies to the Student also.

*'Just as those who carry the dead body'*;—for those who take out the dead body, the period is ten days; and so it is for the pupil also.—(64).

## VERSE (65).

IN THE CASE OF MISCARRIAGE, THE WOMAN BECOMES PURE IN SO MANY DAYS AS THERE HAVE BEEN MONTHS; AND THE WOMAN IN HER COURSES BECOMES FIT BY BATHING AFTER THE CEASING OF THE MENSTRUAL FLOW.—(65)

*Bhāṣya.*

In the case of miscarriage, the purification, that comes after as many days as the months of pregnancy, can pertain only to

the woman: as it is the *woman* that is directly spoken of in the verse. The rule for the purification, in this case, of her Sapiṇḍa-relation has to be sought from other *Smṛtis* and from usage. Vashiṣṭha (4. 34) however has laid down the period of *three days* for all Sapiṇḍas—'In the case of the death of a child less than two years old, and also in the case of miscarriage, the impurity lasts for three days.'

It is regarded as a case of 'miscarriage,' when it happens after three months and before the tenth month; others hold that it is to be so regarded when it happens before the ninth month. What is called '*srāva*' (*lit. flowing out*) here is *discharge before the right time*, and not necessarily the *flowing out* of a liquid substance.

In connection with miscarriage, Gautama also has declared that 'the period lasts for as many days as there have been months' (14-15).

As a matter of fact, children born in the seventh month live; hence if miscarriage takes place in the seventh month, the period of impurity is full (ten days). But this is so only if the child is born alive; otherwise it is to be as many days as there have been months.

For the woman in her courses it has been ordained that she is purified by bathing after the flow has ceased; while another Smṛti text says that she becomes pure in *three days*. On this point the final conclusion is as follows: 'Before three days, even though the flow may cease, she is not pure; while after three days she becomes pure even though the flow may not have ceased.' In the text however, though the term used first is 'becomes pure', we find word '*fit*' (*sādhvi*) used in connection with the menstruating woman; and this means that so long as the flow has not ceased, she is not *fit* for participating in the Vedic rites; and it does not mean that she is *untouchable*; as it has been declared that 'the first four days have been condemned.' The construction thus is—'The woman in her courses, on the ceasing of the flow, by bathing, becomes fit'—i. e., fit for participating in religious rites.

The term 'woman' has been used with a view to include women of all castes; the foregoing verses having been explained as applying to the Brāhmaṇa. The text has used the term 'woman' in this verse with a view to guard against the idea that what is here laid down also applies to the Brāhmaṇa only. In the following verses also, where there is nothing to indicate the restriction of a rule to any particular caste, it is to be understood as applying to all castes; as for instance, the next verse which speaks of 'persons whose tonsure has not been performed.'—(65).

## VERSE (66).

IN THE CASE OF PERSONS WHOSE TONSURE HAS NOT BEEN PERFORMED PURIFICATION HAS BEEN DECLARED TO COME AFTER A NIGHT; BUT IN THE CASE OF THOSE WHOSE TONSURE HAS BEEN PERFORMED, PURIFICATION IS HELD TO COME AFTER THREE DAYS.—(66).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The genetive endings in this verse some people explain as having the sense of the Nominative, according to Pāṇini's *Sūtra* 2,3, 65; and in that case the meaning would be—'the person whose tonsure has not been performed is purified in one day;' and it has already been explained that some options in this connection are also based upon the age and condition of the person observing the impurity; and the present verse lays down specific rules in accordance with the general principle there enunciated.

Others, however, explain the genetive ending as denoting relationship; and in this case they have to supply some words; the meaning being—'the Sapiṇḍa relation of persons whose tonsure has not been performed etc., etc.'

This latter view is what is in keeping with usage.

Another Smṛti text has declared immediate purification; and the same text has laid down the exact scope of that rule—'Till the appearance of teeth, it is immediate; till the performance of the Tonsure, it comes after one day; and in the case of those whose Tonsure has been performed, it lasts for three days.'—(66)

## VERSE (67)

**The child that dies while less than two years old, the relations should, after having decked it, place outside, under the ground that is clean and not defiled by heaps of bones.—(67)**

### *Bhāṣya*

The child whose sacramental rites have not been performed, and since whose birth less than two years have elapsed, is called '*less than two years old*'. Such a child, when it dies, '*the relations should place outside*'—the village—'*under the ground*,' that has been dug out.

Another *Smṛti*-text contains the word '*nikhanet*', should bury'.

'*Having decked*'—with ornaments befitting the dead. The '*decking*', mentioned here in connection with the child '*less than two years old*', should be understood, on the strength of usage, to apply to those also whose sacramental rites have been performed.

'*Clean*'—where there are no bones. That is, the ground that is clean by reason of the absence of heaps of bones,—under such a ground should the child be placed. As a rule, the crematorium abounds in heaps of bones; hence what the present text means is that the child should be buried in a place other than the crematorium; and it does not mean that in this case the rite of 'bone-collecting' shall not be performed: because this later fact is already implied by the absence of burning in the case.—(67)

## VERSE (68)

**For this child no sanctification by fire shall be performed; nor shall water-offering be made to it; having left it like a log of wood, in the forest, one shall keep aloof for three days.—(68)**

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Like a log of wood*;'—this signifies absence of attachment, indifference.

The meaning is that in this case no *Shrāddha*, nor any water, is to be offered ; the prohibition of 'water-offering' implying that of the *Shrāddha* also, through the relation of whole and part. It is thus that we have to get at the omission of *Shrāddha*, which is in accordance with usage.

Others explain this to mean the prohibition of burial laid down in other *Smṛti*-texts. And in this case there would be option.

'*Keep aloof*'—abstain from all religious acts prescribed in the scriptures.—(68)

## VERSE (69)

FOR THE CHILD UP TO THREE YEARS OF AGE, THE RELATIONS SHALL NOT MAKE WATER-OFFERINGS ; BUT FOR ONE WHOSE TEETH HAD APPEARED, OR WHOSE NAMING HAD BEEN DONE, IT MAY BE DONE OPTIONALLY.—(69)

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Upto three years of age*';—this prohibition applies till the end of the third year ; and not from the fourth year upwards. It is in this sense that some people read an '*ādi*', the line being read as—'*trivarṣādēva kartavyā*'. Such also is the ordinary usage.

'*For one whose teeth had appeared it may be done optionally.*'—By association with the 'water-offering', *burning by fire* also becomes permitted.

Objection—"When there is *option*, one may do what he likes; under the circumstances, who would ever have recourse to that alternative which involves much effort and expenditure of wealth? Thus then, the laying down of such a course of action is absolutely useless."

The answer to this is as follows :—What is mentioned here is for the parents, as distinguished from all other persons ; the offerings that are made are for the benefit of the deceased ; and being of the nature of an 'occasional duty,' it is one that must be done, as we have explained before. So that the option mentioned

in the present verse is clearly understood as containing, on the one hand, the prohibition of a necessary duty; while, on the other, it permits its performance on the ground of its being beneficial to the deceased. So that if one omits the act, it does not involve the transgression of an injunction: while by performing it, one confers a benefit upon the deceased; so that there is no incompatibility between the Injunction and the Prohibition.—(69)

## VERSE (70)

ON THE DEATH OF A FELLOW-STUDENT, THE IMPURITY HAS BEEN DECLARED TO LAST FOR ONE DAY. IN THE CASE OF A BIRTH, THE PURITY OF THE 'SAMĀNODAKA' RELATIONS IS HELD TO COME AFTER THREE DAYS.—(70)

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Fellow-student*'—professing the same Vedic Rescension.

'*Samānodaka relations*;'—those meant here are to be counted from the point where the 'Sapiṇḍa-relationship' ceases. Among these, when there is a birth, the impurity lasts for three days.

The option of 'immediate purity' is also laid down in another Smṛti-text, for '*Samānodaka*' relations.—(70)

## VERSE (71).

IN THE CASE OF WOMEN WHOSE SACRAMENTARY RITE HAS NOT BEEN PERFORMED, THE MARITAL RELATIONS BECOME PURE AFTER THREE DAYS; AND THEIR PATERNAL RELATIONS ALSO BECOME PURE ACCORDING TO THE RULE PRESCRIBED BEFORE—(71).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Whose sacramentary rite has been performed;*'—*i.e.*, those who have been accepted verbally, but have not been actually married; at the death of such women, their '*marital relations*'—on her husband's side, &c., &c.

'*Their paternal relations*'—on the father's side—are purified '*according to the rule prescribed before*'—in verse 66; *i.e.*, in

three days ; this rule being laid down with reference to a particular caste.

Others have explained the second half as referring to the rule that 'uterine brothers and sisters are purified in ten days' (the word '*sanābhi*' being taken to mean 'uterine'). The view of these persons is as follows :—It has been laid down that a girl should be given away in her eighth year : so that one who has been given away is not spoken of as 'one whose tonsure has been performed',—just as the 'initiated boy' is not so spoken of; and in as much as no other rule has been laid down, the only right course to adopt is to observe the impurity for *ten days*.

Others again have read (the second half) as—'*ahastradattakanyāsu bālāsu cha vishodhanam*' ; and people have explained this to mean that, even in the case of a girl that remains unmarried till she is nearly fifteen years old, the impurity shall last for one day only ; and this on the ground that there is no justification for rejecting the direct injunction and observing a longer period of impurity.

Our answer to this is as follows :—What is the use of the expression '*bālāsu cha*', when it has been already asserted that 'upto the appearance of teeth, the purity is immediate' ? It is not right to have this assertion set aside by the present later declaration : because the present declaration is a general one, while the former is more specialised. Hence the 'one day' rule, even though laid down, can only be taken as referring to children till the performonce of their Tonsure : specially as a general statement is always dependent upon (and controlled by) particular ones. For these reasons the suggested reading of the second half of the verse must be rejected as not emanating from the sage. But it may be taken as refering to *touchability*. There is untouchability due to the birth or death of a child, exactly as in the case of grown up men ; and it is only with reference to this that there could be the assertion that—'there is purity (*i.e.*, touchability) after one day in the case of unmarried girls and young children, (*i.e.*, these become touchable in one day)'; and it is in this sense that the Locative ending (in '*bālāsu*' and '*kanyāsu*') be-

comes justified as being the correct one; since it is a regular case-ending. If the words were taken in any other sense (*e.g.*, as meaning 'at the death of girls and boys, &c.'), it would be necessary to have elliptical construction and to take the Locative ending in the 'absolute' sense:—'girls and boys having died, the purity of those living comes about after one day'; and we could not get at the sense that the impurity spoken of results from the touching of the dead; specially as the former (the sense obtained by construing the line as Locative Absolute) has its sphere of application elsewhere, in the case of burial under-ground; and no *touching* is possible in the case of the body being placed under the ground.

"Since the assertion is a general one, wherefore is it restricted to a particular case.'"?.

As a matter of fact, we find a rule regarding the *sipping of water* in the same connection; and in connection with this, it is only the said kind of *touch* that is possible. It is for this reason that people do not consider it desirable to touch the child that has touched a menstruating woman; and this may be regarded as the qualifying factor in the present case; as has been declared by Gautama in his Smṛti; it is only right for such a person to set up the fire; hence it is only right that it should be taken as pointing to the time of setting up the fire.—(71).

## VERSE (72.)

FOR THREE DAYS THEY SHOULD EAT FOOD FREE FROM SALINES AND SALTS, SHOULD BATHE, SHOULD NOT EAT MEAT-FOOD AND SHOULD SLEEP APART ON THE GROUND.—(72).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Salines and salts.*'—The term '*salines*' stands for nitrate of potash and such substances, and '*salts*' for rock-salt and other salts. These they should not eat.

Or, the term '*saline*', '*kṣāra*', may be taken as qualifying '*lavaṇa*', 'salt.' In that case the prohibition (applying to only *saline salts*) would not apply to rock-salt.

The 'bathing' laid down is to be done in a river or a tank or such other reservoirs of water as are not regarded as specially 'sacred'; and it is to be done without scrubbing the body.

'*Meat-food*'—is prohibited during the period of impurity, on the basis of other *Smṛti* texts; where we read—'They shall not have recourse to women, they shall not scrub their body and they shall not eat meat.' The *Gṛhyasūtra* however says—'For three days they shall remain without food, or still live upon food obtained by purchase.'

"*Should sleep*'—upon the bare platform, without company.

Another Smṛti-text has prescribed abstention from sexual intercourse during impurity due to *births* also.—(72).

## VERSE (73).

THIS RULE REGARDING IMPURITY DUE TO DEATH HAS BEEN DESCRIBED IN REFERENCE TO CASES WHERE THE PARTIES ARE NEAR ONE ANOTHER. IN REFERENCE TO CASES WHERE THEY ARE NOT NEAR, KINSMEN AND RELATIONS SHOULD OBSERVE THE FOLLOWING RULE.—(73).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Near*'—*i.e.*, when the relations are close by the place where their kinsman has died.

Others have explained the text to mean that the rule applies to those who were near the man at the time of his death.

'*Kinsmen*'—*i e.*, *Samānodakas* :—'*bāndhara*'—*Sapiṇḍas*.

Others have explained this 'non-nearness' to stand for men who may be living in another village or town.

In the case of these, we have the following rules :—(73).

## VERSE (74).

**HE WHO HEARS, WITHIN TEN DAYS, OF A RELATION RESIDENT IN A FOREIGN LAND HAVING DIED, SHALL REMAIN IMPURE FOR THE REMAINDER OF THE PERIOD OF TEN DAYS.—(74).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Foreign country*'—means *another village*, &c., as before.

'*Vigatam*'—dead.

'*Within ten days*'.—This is only by way of illustration: what is meant is the period of impurity that has been prescribed in each case;—the remainder of that period would be the period to be observed in the special case mentioned. The repeated mention of '*ten days*' is for the purpose of filling up the metre.

The period of impurity due to birth and death is determined by their origin; so that the periods of 'ten days' and the rest are to be counted from the day on which the birth or the death may have taken place, and not from the day on which it may become known to the relations. As a result of this, if the guest happen to know of the birth, &c., having occurred in the house, he should not take his food in that house, even though the master of that house himself may still be ignorant of it. Thus in both cases (of death and birth) the counting is to be done from the day of origination.

Thus those who are subject to impurity for 'ten days' shall remain impure for the remainder of that period; and for those who are subject to a period of 'three days', purification is obtained immediately, by bathing along with all the clothing that may be on them.—(74).

## VERSE (75).

**IF THE PERIOD OF TEN DAYS HAS ELAPSED, HE SHALL REMAIN IMPURE FOR THREE DAYS; BUT WHEN A YEAR HAS ELAPSED, HE BECOMES PURE BY MERELY TOUCHING WATER.—(75).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

In cases where the period of impurity ordained lasts for ten days or more,—if this period has elapsed, the impurity shall last for

three days. But in cases where the period ordained lasts for three days, or one day, or less,—if this period has elapsed, one has simply to bathe along with his clothes; as is going to be laid down later—(Verse 77.)

'*When a year has elapsed*'—one becomes pure '*by touching water*',—i.e., by bathing. From what has been said elsewhere regarding 'touching water with the hands and feet &c., &c.', it is clear that the whole body is to touch water: and this is what constitutes 'bathing'.—(75).

## VERSE (76).

**Hearing of the death of a kinsman, or of the birth of a son, after the ten days have elapsed, the man becomes pure by plunging into water with his clothes—(76).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

This rule refers to *Samānodaka* relations; and also to *Sapiṇḍa* ones, but only when the option of three or one day is accepted.

'*With clothes*'—along with his garments.

'*Plunging into water*'—bathing.—(76),

## VERSE (77).

**In the event of a child, resident in a foreign country, who is a non-sapiṇḍa relation, dying,—one becomes pure immediately, by plunging into water wth his clothes on.—(77).**

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Child*'—i.e. a son that has not yet teethed;—'*resident in a foreign country*'—'*who is a non-sapiṇḍa relation*'—'*dying*',—all these terms are in apposition.

'*Non-Sapiṇḍa*'—*i.e. Samānodaka.*

When such a person dies while residing in a foreign country, the purification is 'immediate.'

When such a person dies near at hand, then the purification comes after 'three days'—as declared in verse 63 above—(77).

## VERSE (78).

IF, WITHIN TEN DAYS, ANOTHER BIRTH OR DEATH HAPPEN TO BEFALL, THE BRĀHMAṆA SHALL REMAIN IMPURE UNTIL THAT PERIOD OF TEN DAYS SHALL HAVE ELAPSED.—(78).

*Bhāṣya*

Here also the mention of 'ten days' is meant to stand for the period of impurity ordained in each individual case. The meaning thus is that—'before the expiry of the period of impurity ordained for a particular case, if another cause of impurity should come about, then purification comes with the lapse of the remainder of that period; and the second period of impurity is not to be counted from the day on which the cause shall have arisen.' Says Gautama (14·5)—'If an impurity should occur again during the interval, the purification comes with the remainder of the former.'

'Birth and Death' being mentioned in a compound,—and it being not easy to find out in which order of sequence these are to be taken,—and intervention being possible by unlike causes of impurity also,—it is to be understood, on the authority of usage, that what is meant is intervention by a *like* cause of impurity (*i.e.* of impurity due to death by another due to death and so forth). It is in this sense that the use of the term 'another' becomes more justifiably significant.

The term '*Brāhmaṇa*' also is meant to stand for *persons observing the impurity.*

In another *Smṛti-text* it has been laid down that—'if it happens at the close of the night, then it is in two days; and if it happens at dawn, then three days'; and having begun with the statement—'when the Brāhmaṇa dies, the impurity lasts for ten days',—it goes on to say—'if no one dies or is born

in the interval, he becomes pure after the remaining days.' And this takes no account of any distinction between like and unlike sources of impurity.—(78).

## VERSE (79).

ON THE DEATH OF THE TEACHER, THEY DECLARE THE IMPURITY TO LAST FOR THREE DAYS; ON THE DEATH OF HIS SON OR WIFE, IT LASTS FOR ONE DAY AND NIGHT: SUCH IS THE LAW.—(79).

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Teacher*', '*Āchārya*', here stands for the *Initiator*:—on his death—the impurity of the pupil lasts for three days.

On the death of the Teacher's son or wife,—it lasts for one day and night.—(79).

## VERSE (80).

IN THE CASE OF A LEARNED COMPANION, ONE SHALL REMAIN IMPURE FOR THREE DAYS; IN THE CASE OF A MATERNAL UNCLE, A PUPIL, AN OFFICIATING PRIEST AND RELATION, FOR A NIGHT ALONG WITH THE TWO DAYS (PRECEDING AND FOLLOWING IT).—(80).

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Learned*'—Who has studied the Vedic text.

'*Companion*'—who, through friendship, has been living with one. Or '*upasampanna*' may mean *endowed with good character*.

What has been said before (Verse 70) regarding the case of 'fellow-students' pertains to those who have not yet got up the entire Veda.

In lexicons the term '*upasampanna*' appears as a synonym for 'dead'; but in view of the long period of impurity laid down (which would not be compatible with the case of a *stranger*), the former explanation is the better of the two.

Others construe the text otherwise—explaining it to mean that 'the impurity lasts for three days in the case of the *learned maternal uncle*' and 'for a night along with the two days in the case of the pupil, etc.'

The term '*relation*' stands for the wife's brother, the son of the maternal aunt and so forth.

When we connect the 'maternal uncle' with 'the night along with the two days',—then, since this period would be already applicable to the case of the maternal uncle by reason of his being a '*relation*', the separate mention of him should be taken as making the rule compulsory in his case; and this would mean that in the case of other *relations*, it would be discretionary.—(80)

## VERSE (81).

On the death of the King in whose realm he lives, it lasts till the light; in the case of a non-learned teacher, for the whole day; as also in the case of the (ordinary) teacher.—(81).

### *Bhasya.*

The name '*rājan*' is really applied indirectly to the man of a particular caste as endowed with the qualifications of *anointment* and the rest; that it is so is clear from the clause '*in whose realm he lives.*' In fact when the word signifies the lord of a country belonging to a particular caste, it does so only by indirect indication, and not by direct denotation.

'*Till the light*'—*i.e.*, it continues along with the light. That is, if the death occurs during the day, the impurity lasts during the day only, and it does not go on into the night; similarly if the death occurs at night, it lasts during the night only, and does not extend to the day. The fact that the text has used this peculiar expression—'*sajyotiḥ*', '*till the light*'—in the present context (when *only* day, and *only* night are meant),—is indicative of the fact that whenever the term 'day' or 'night' is used, it

means *both day and night*; *e.g.*, in verses 5·66 and 5·59. In 5·64 also, where the term 'night' is used in addition to the term 'day', it is added only for the purpose of filling up the metre.

At night, the 'light' is that of fire, as we read in the Brāhmaṇa-text bearing upon the *Agnihotra*—'The night becomes resplendent with the light of fire, not with the light of the Sun.'

In the case of the '*non-learned*'—who does not study the Veda—'*teacher*'—it lasts during the whole day; it does not extend to the night, even when the cause of impurity happens during the night.

"How can a 'non-learned' man be a 'teacher'? In fact it is only one who has learnt the Veda along with its subsidiary sciences that is entitled to do the work of *teaching*."

True; but a mere *expounder* is also called a 'teacher.' Hence what is meant is that 'in the case of the person who has, somehow, learnt the subsidiary sciences (without learning the Veda) and expounds them, the impurity lasts during the day.' That this must be the meaning is indicated by the fact that there is a distinct rule in reference to the Teacher who is properly qualified, or to the Initiating Preceptor, who is the principal object of reverence.

Some people connect the negative prefix in '*non-learned*' with the term 'teacher'; and explain the rule laid down as referring to 'the learned man who is the teacher of other persons, and bears no relation to the person concerned'. —(81).

## VERSE (82).

THE BRĀHMAṆA BECOMES PURE IN TEN DAYS, THE KṢATTRIYA IN TWELVE DAYS, THE VAISHYA IN FIFTEEN DAYS AND THE SHŪDRA IN A MONTH.—(82).

### *Bhāṣya*

The alternative rules—limiting the period of impurity to 'three days', 'four days' &c.,—have been laid down above, in consideration of the character and learning of the persons concerned;

and the present verse is added with a view to preclude those alternatives from the *Kṣatiriya* and other castes. The mention of 'ten days' in regard to the *Brāhmaṇa* however is a mere reiteration.

In this connection the following question is likely to arise— "What is the text that restricts the period of impurity for the *Kṣattriya* to *twelve days* (or of the *Vaishya* to fifteen days, and so forth) compulsorily, on the strength whereof the present verse is taken as precluding the other alternatives from them?"

This present text itself serves to indicate the time mentioned as applying to those castes. And in the face of this text, the other periods of 'ten' days and so forth, wherever mentioned, are understood to be merely indicative of the period specified for each caste. As a matter of fact, however, even in the presence of the present verse, the mention of 'ten days' need not be taken to be indicative (as just stated). For even though the section as a whole may pertain to all four castes, yet the alternatives mentioned can pertain only to that caste for whom the period of 'ten days' has been laid down. In another Smṛti-text it is with special reference to the *Brāhmaṇa* that it has been asserted that—'the *Brāhmaṇa* may resume Vedic study after one day'; and it is to this that all the other alternatives mentioned in other Smṛti texts have to be taken as optional. In any case, on the eleventh day there is no impurity at all.

The author of the *Vivaraṇa* says that in the present verse special significance is meant to be attached to the use of the term 'day' (and it is the *day* that is meant, as distinguished from the *night*); so that there is no impurity on the tenth *night*; and hence it is only right and proper that invitations to the *shrāddha* on the eleventh day should be issued on the previous day. When a person is going to set up the Fire, the impurity shall be wiped off by the vigil kept during the previous night.

This however is not right. If the term 'day' meant the *day* only, then on the other days also there would be no impurity during the *nights*. It might be argued that those intervening *nights*

would fall within the period of impurity by virtue of the general rule that 'impurity due to death *lasts for ten days*' (5·59). But what is the authority for denying a similar significance to the term 'day' in this context also ?

Is is for these reasons that we have explained that throughout this context the word 'day' stands for the *day and night.* It is for this reason that in the preceding verse, where the day only is meant, we have the epithet '*whole*', '*kṛtsnam*' added to it.—(82).

## VERSE (83).

ONE SHOULD NOT PROLONG THE DAYS OF IMPURITY ; NOR SHOULD HE INTERRUPT THE RITES PERFORMED IN THE FIRES ; BECAUSE HE WHO PERFORMS THOSE RITES, EVEN IF HE BE A SAPIṆḌA, WOULD NEVER BE IMPURE.—(83.)

### *Bhāṣya.*

Some people may entertain the following notion :—"The various alternatives that have been laid down regarding the period of impurity extending to three days, &c., all stand on an equal footing with the alternative of 'ten days,'. and their adoption is not regulated by considerations of character and study, etc.; so that the observing of the longer period being open to me, why should I have recourse to the alternative of 'one day', which would entail the trouble of resuming my studies sooner ? I shall have recourse to the alternative of 'ten days', and shall enjoy the pleasure of having nothing to do for a longer period."

It is for the benefit of such a person that the author, moved by sympathy, makes it clear that the optional alternatives are regulated by other considerations ; and that they do not all stand on the same footing. In what way they are regulated has been already shown by us.

If this be not the meaning of the present advice, and if it mean something else,—what possibility would there be of any

prolongation of the period that has been specifically fixed for each individual? And it is only with such a possibility that there could be room for the advice contained in the present verse. What harm could there be in the author making still clearer what he has already said before (regarding the regulation of the optional alternatives)?

Some people hold that—even after the prescribed number of days have elapsed, purification is not accomplished until bathing and other rites have been performed; as it is going to be asserted that 'the *Brāhmaṇa* becomes pure after touching water, etc.' (Verse 98); and some one may think that so long as he remains impure he would not incur any sin by the omission of religious duties, and hence he may not proceed to take the bath or other rites;—and it is in view of such cases that we have the injunction that '*one should not prolong the days of impurity*,'—the meaning being that the stipulated days having elapsed, one should not delay the external purifications.

As regards the assertion that—"the use of the term *day* implies that there is no impurity on the *night* of the tenth day,"—it has already been pointed out that this view is not correct. Says Gautama (14·6)—'If during one impurity another source of impurity should arise, there is purification after the remainder of the former'; and having said this, he thought that people might be led to think that if the second impurity should arise about the end of the last night, there would be purification after that night, and in order to guard against this he has added—'if it happens about the end of the night, then after two nights' (14·7) [From which it is clear that the last *night* also falls within the period of impurity].

'*Nor should he interrupt the rites performed in the fires.*'—This is said in view of the fact by reason of impurity all the rites prescribed in the *Shruti* and the *Smṛti* become precluded. The meaning is that the rites that are performed in the fires,—such as the Evening-libation and the rest—should not be *interrupted*,—*i.e.*, shall not be omitted. '*Interruption*' means *omission, non-performance*.

But this does not mean that the impure man should himself perform the rites; since it is added—'*he who performs the rites, even if he be a Sapiṇḍa, would never be impure*'; which means that 'even a Sapiṇḍa-relation would not be impure, to say nothing of other persons'; says the *Gṛhyasūtra* also—'They should perform in the house-fire the obligatory rites, with the exception of the *Vaitāna*-rite'; and then—'others would perform these.' This does not refer to the mere offering of libations that is done in connection with the setting up of the fires, but to the performance of the rite in all its details; since it is only for these that the employment of other agents is possible, since the principal libation itself, which consists in offering certain substances, can be offered by the householder himself. Hence the rites that are precluded (during impurity) are those of the *Vaishvadeva-offering* and the *Darsha-Pūrṇamāsa* and other sacrifices. Of other acts, such as the telling of beads, the saying of Twilight Prayers and so forth,—the preclusion of these has nowhere been indicated; and all these are obligatory. Hence what the present taxt does is to permit the performance of other acts; specially as another *Smṛti* text has prohibited such acts as 'the offering of libations and Vedic study.' Thus then, the distinction (as to what acts are precluded and what not) is based upon the obligatory or voluntary character of the acts themselves; specially as the voluntary act tending to the accomplishment of desired ends should never be done, since impurity deprives the man of the title to perform all such acts.

"But the impure man cannot be entitled to the performance of the obligatory acts either."

As a matter of fact, *purity* does not constitute an essential factor in the rites; and though an obligatory act may be done even in a slightly deficient form (due to the lack of *purity*, for instance), such is not permissible in the case of voluntary acts done with a view to definite ends. It might be argued that they also might be performed, on the strength of the present text itself. But this would not be right; for all that the present text permits is getting certain rites performed by proxy; and as this in itself would be a

deficiency, it would be admissible in the case of the obligatory rites only, and not in that of voluntary ones.

With regard to the *Vaishvadeva* offering however, there is a difference of opinion. Some people quote the following *Smṛti*-text—' At a birth or a death, one shall not pour libations into fire, even with dry grains or fruits, nor should he perform any sacrificial rites. '

From all this it follows that one should offer the following :—the Twilight-libations, the *Dārsha-Pūrṇamāsa* sacrifices, the Annual *Shrāddha*, the *Shrāddha* offered in the month of Āshvina and so forth. As for the Upākarma, its performance depends upon the lunar asterism and it need not be done on the full-moon-day.—(83.)

## VERSE (84).

**AFTER HAVING TOUCHED THE CHĀṆḌĀLA, THE MENSTRUATING WOMAN, THE OUTCAST, THE WOMAN IN CHILD-BED, THE DEAD BODY, OR TOUCHER THEREOF—ONE BECOMES PURE BY BATHING.—(84).**

*Bhāṣya.*

The '*divākīrti*' is the *chāṇḍāla* ; that it is so is clear from the fact that he is mentioned along with the worst untouchables, and also from the use of the name in the *Mahābhārata*, in course of a conversation between the Cat and the Mouse—'at that time the *Divākīrti* became oppressed with fear ' (where it is the *chāṇḍāla* that is clearly meant). It cannot stand for the *barber* here; for the barber is among the touchables, and also because he is one whose food may be eaten (by the *Brāhmaṇa*). As for the rule laying down the necessity of bathing after a shave, this cannot be put forward in the present context, as the bathing in this case is necessitated by the consideration that, while one is shaving hairs are bound to fall on the body, and as, on falling from the body, they are unclean, it is necessary that one should bathe.

'*Tatspṛṣṭinam*', '*the toucher thereof.*'—This compound is to be expounded as—'*tasya spṛṣṭam, tadasyāsti*'. The men who touch those mentioned above have also got to bathe.

Some people argue that, as the persons mentioned are not all in equal proximity to the term '*tatspṛṣṭinam*,' '*the toucher thereof*,' this refers to the '*dead body*' only, and not to the '*Chaṇḍāla*' and the rest. But others hold that since all are mentioned in the same sentence, and since the term occurs at the end of all the other persons mentioned, all these are present before the mind, and hence referred to by the pronoun '*thereof*'; so that the construction intended is that all the terms up to '*sharam*', '*the dead body*', form one copulative compound, and then compounded with '*spṛṣṭinam*', '*toucher*'; and hence when the term '*the toucher thereof*' comes up, all the things spoken of by all the members of the copulative compound come to the mind. There is, on the other hand, nothing to indicate that the term '*toucher*' is to be connected with the '*dead body*' only ; for the simple reason that it is equally connected with the 'outcast' and the rest also. In fact, all that is clearly indicated is that the term '*toucher*' is connected with some other term that has gone before ; in a copulative compound however, each term is regarded as denoting all the things spoken of ; and hence all these latter are equally closely related to the term '*toucher*'. Another construction that might be suggested is to construe the term 'toucher thereof' with the term 'dead body', and then with the other terms. But in this case, there would be nothing to justify the connection of the term 'toucher' with the 'outcast' and the rest.

From all this it follows that it is only on the strength of usage that a right conclusion can be arrived at.—(84)

## VERSE (85).

ON SEEING UNCLEAN THINGS, THE MAN, AFTER HAVING SIPPED WATER, SHALL ALWAYS ATTENTIVELY RECITE THE SOLAR MANTRAS ACCORDING TO HIS INCLINATION, AS ALSO THE PĀVAMĀNĪ VERSES, ACCORDING TO HIS CAPACITY.—(85).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Unclean things*'.—Those just mentioned are to be understood as meant here, because of their proximity.

Those *mantras* that are addressed to the Sun are called '*Solar*' and the mantras meant are '*udutyam jātavēdasam, &c. &c.*'

The *Pāvamānī verses*.—The verses '*svādiṣṭayē, &c. &c.*' occurring in the ninth *maṇḍala* of the Ṛgveda.

'*According to his inclination*' and '*according to his capacity*' mean the same thing ; two words have been used for the purposes of metre.

In as much as the 'mantras' and 'verses' are mentioned in the plural, at least three verses should be recited ; and as regards more, they may be recited only if other and more important duties do not suffer thereby. Then again, since the text speaks of '*mantras*,' and the term '*Pāvamānī*' also refers to *verses*, purification is brought about as soon as one has gone beyond three verses, even though the hymn may not be completed.

The *dog* also has to be included among the '*unclean things*'; as it also is *unclean*. In the present context Gautama has declared—'Of the dog also; whatever it might pollute, say some' (14·29—30).

'*Attentively*';—without allowing his mind to wander about ; he should fix it upon contemplating the deity. Or, '*Prayataḥ*' may mean that 'at a time when one is busy with worshipping deities, if he should happen to touch an unclean thing, he should do what is here laid down,—and not otherwise'.—(85).

## VERSE (86).

HAVING TOUCHED A FATTY HUMAN BONE, THE BRĀHMAṆA BECOMES PURE BY BATHING, BUT IF IT BE FREE FROM FAT, THEN BY SIPPING WATER AND TOUCHING A COW, OR LOOKING AT THE SUN—(86).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Nāra*,' '*human*,'—belonging to man.

'*Fatty*'—*i.e.* Besmeared with flesh, marrow &c.
'*Ālabhya*' means *touching*.

The *touching of the cow* and *looking at the sun* are meant to be optional alternatives.—(86).

## VERSE (87).

**THE PERSON UNDER INSTRUCTION SHALL NOT MAKE WATER-OFFERINGS TILL THE COMPLETION OF HIS PUPILAGE ; AT ITS COMPLETION, HE BECOMES PURE IN THREE DAYS, AFTER HAVING MADE THE WATER-OFFERINGS.**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Ādiṣṭa*' means '*ādesha*', 'instruction'; and the term '*person under instruction*' denotes the *Student*, by reason of his connection with the instruction that he receives regarding his observances. The present text prohibits the making of water-offerings by one who is still in the state of the Student, to such *Sapiṇḍa* relations as may happen to die *during that period.* As for those that have died before, the offering of water to the forefathers and Gods has already been prescribed for the Student also.

'*Till the completion of his pupilage* ;—*i.e.* till the performance of the '*Samāvartana*' ceremony; and it does not mean any forced completion of the stage in the interval.

On returning after having finished his observances,he shall make a water-offering to each of the dead relations on one day; and he should observe 'impurity' for three days.

As regards the making of water-offering to his mother, this is necessary for the Student also ; and such an offering does not interfere with the proper fulfilment of his observances. In support of this they quote another *Smṛti*-text—*viz.* 'The person undergoing instruction does not commit a wrong in making a water-offering.'—(87).

## VERSE (88).

**THE WATER-OFFERING IS WITHDRAWN FROM THOSE BORN IN VAIN AND FROM INTERMIXTURE, FROM THOSE WHO ARE ADDCITED TO ASCETICISM AND FROM THOSE WHO HAVE ABANDONED THEMSELVES.—(88)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The term 'born' is to be construed separetely with each of the two terms with which it is compounded. He is said to be

'*born in vain*' who does not worship Gods, Pitṛs or Men ; *i. e.* he who does not lead the life proper for any of the four stages of life, even though he is capable of doing so ; one who is excluded from all offerings and invitations. Having referred to the man 'who for one year does not lead the life proper for any stage,' the scriptures speak of a great sin attaching to persons doing this for any length of time. This is so because with the exception of the Student and the Renunciate, all the others have to cook food for other people ; and it is only cooking for one's own self alone that has been prohibited.

'*Born of intermixture;*'—*i. e.* the *Āyogava*' and other persons born of an improper and inverse mixture of the several castes ; that the issue of improper mixtures is meant is indicated by its association with those 'born in vain,' which implies lowness of birth. As regards the issue of legal mixtures, even though these also are 'born of intermixtures,' yet these are not meant here, because they belong definitely to their mother's caste and are entitled to all that pertains thereto. Further, in ordinary usage children of legal mixtures are not spoken of as being of 'mixed origin'; *e.g.* in 10.25, where the issues of 'mixed origin' are described. The term also includes (*a*) the children of such widows as have not been 'permitted' to beget children, born of the intercourse of several men, and (*b*) the children of prostitutes; the children of women begotten by a person other than their husbands are not included in this category, if there has not been intercourse with several men.

Some people hold that this prohibition refers to *Sapiṇḍa* relations who are as described, and not to their sons ; while in the case of those who have '*abandoned themselves,*' it applies to their sons also.

This however is not right ; as the text makes no distinction among those mentioned.

*Asceticisms* ; *i. e.*, of heretics, such as the '*Bhagala,*' the '*Raktapaṭa*' and the rest. That these are meant is indicated by the plural number and by the fact that it is the heterodox heretic alone

that is excluded. These are regarded as 'heterodox' by reason of their observances &c., being different from those of the orthodox ascetics.

'*Those who have abandoned themselves*;'—*i. e.* those who, even before their life's span has been run out, give up their bodies (by committing suicide). [It is only such suicide that is reprehensible]. It is considered quite desirable in the case of old men suffering from incurable diseases given up by the physicians; as has been thus declared :—' If an old man,—incapable of purification and memory, who has passed beyond the reach of the physician's art,—kills himself by falling down from a precipice, or entering into fire, or by fasting, or by drowning in water,—in his case there is impurity for three days; his bones being collected on the second day, on the third day the water offering-should be made, and on the fourth day the *Shrāddha* should be performed'. Suicide is regarded as desirable also in the case of persons suffering from leprosy and such other diseases; as has been said in connection with men who, though still in the Householder's state, have lost all energy,—'Bent upon entering the Great Path, they do not wish to live on uselessly.' That man is called 'devoid of energy' who is incapable of doing purificatory acts, as also saying the Twilight Prayers &c. Then again, in texts deprecating suicide, the words used are—' if one whose body has not been emaciated, or who has not lost all energy, should kill himself &c. &c.'; which implies that it is permitted for those who are not such as here described.

Other Smṛti-texts prohibit the water-offering for other persons also. It has been thus declared—' Those killed by kings, those killed by horned or fanged animals, or by serpents, and those who have abandoned themselves,—to these no *Shrāddha* is to be offered; and water, ball-offerings and other offerings that are made to the dead, all this does not reach them, it becomes lost in the intervening regions. Through fear of popular blame, one should make the *Nārāyaṇa* offering; and for the sake of these also food-grains, along with the additional fee, shall be given.'

Elsewhere again—

'Sinful men meet death from the *Chāṇḍāla*, from water, from serpents, from Brāhmaṇas, from lightning and from fanged animals.'

It is also laid down that—

'For incendiaries, for keepers of baths and makers of ornaments and for professional mourners, there is purification after the performance of two *Taptakṛchchhra* penances. Hence for these no after-death rites shall be performed by others ; even the name of such persons, or of their family, should not be pronounced. For truly fearful is the uttering of the name of such a great sinner, who has gone to the worst hells.'

It is in connection with the acts mentioned here that Samvarta has prescribed the '*Sāntapana*' penance; and Parāshara has laid down the '*Taptakṛchchhra*'; and Vashiṣṭha has prescribed the '*Chāndrāyaṇa*' along with the '*Taptakṛchchhra*'. But these differences may be ignored.

With reference to what has been said above regarding 'the death of sinners' resulting from 'the Chāṇḍāla, from water &c. &c.,' there arises the following question—"Does this rule, regarding the non-performance of the *Shrāddha* and the performance of penance, pertain to the Chāṇḍāla who kills himself intentionally ?—or to one who is killed through carelessness, without intention ? "

Why should this question arise ?

(A) Well, Gautama (14-12) has said—'In the case of those dying from hunger, by a weapon, by fire, by poison, in water, in prison, or from a precipice,—it is only when it is unintentional.' While in the verse just quoted it is said simply, without any qualification 'Those dying at the hands of the *Chāṇḍāla* &c.' And on account of the necessity of reconciling this with what has been said in the other *Smṛti* text regarding the case of 'dying in water' &c., it must be '*intentional* death' that is meant. And the idea

arises that by reason of 'association,' the same should be the case with the others also.

(B) On the other hand, the verse quoted uses the term 'sinful'; and all sinful act has been prohibited; he who does what is prohibited is called 'sinful'. And a man becomes the 'doer' of an act through his own initiative, as also through the urging of another person. Now, death 'from lightning, and the fanged and horned animals' could never belong to the former category (*i.e.* *this could never be intentional*); and no one is ever urged by others to such death; nor are these means of dying employed by suicides, as holes, water and sword etc., are, and it is only if these were so, and the man were to kill himself by having recourse to these, that he could be the 'self-sufficient agent,' of the act of 'dying.' The truth therefore is that the man who comes by such death is understood to have been sinful in his previous life,—as is learnt from the scriptures; just as the possession of 'black teeth' and the rest. If it be asked—'what is the use of this fact of the man's having been sinful in the past being indicated?' But in the case of persons with deficient limbs etc., their previous connection with sin is clearly indicated; and the expiatory rite to be performed in the case has been laid down by Vashiṣṭha, as consisting, in the case of some men, of the performance of two *Kṛchchhras*, and in that of others, of something more.

(C) In reality however, the suicide having died, can have nothing to do with the performance of any rites. Or, if he be regarded as having commited a grievous sin, then, any person who may have entered into any kind of relationship with him—marital, or friendly, or sacrificial,—would also have to be regarded as *sinful*. But such is not the usage of cultured men. For

as a matter of fact, people having relationship with suicides are not looked down upon in any way; nor do they perform any expiatory rites.

From this it follows that what is meant is *intentional* death.

(D) Some people, having read, in another *Smṛti text*, the words—'those killed by cows and Brāhmaṇas etc.' —read the words 'those who have abandoned themselves' apart by themselves, and seem to take up an entirely different position.

From all this (A, B, C and D) there arises the above-mentioned doubt—as to what is the right view.

The right view is that *intentional suicides* are what are meant;—why?—because of their being spoken of as 'sinful.' The man who intentionally proceeds to set into activity the causes leading to his own death, wilfully disobeys the law that 'no man shall by his own desire, cut off his life-span;' and it is only right that such a transgressor should be spoken of as 'sinful.'

"But it has been said and pointed out above that the causes of death spoken of do not resemble the sword and other things used by suicides; so that the intentional killing of oneself could not be meant."

Our answer to this is as follows:—If a man does not guard himself against a danger, he is regarded to be as good as having brought it upon himself. So that if a man wanders about alone in a forest infested with *chāṇḍālas* and robbers,—even though he may not have the wish that they should kill him, *yet*—there is disobedience of scriptures on his part, since he acts in a way that invites danger, and he does nothing to avert that danger. Similarly with the man who goes to swim in the river, or enters a boat of doubtful capacity rowed by incompetent boatsmen. Under such circumstances, if by the loss of vigour, or by the turning over of the boat, the man should happen to die, it would be only right to regard him as having committed a sin.

On the contrary, if persons were to bathe in water, whose depth they have duly ascertained by means of sticks etc., and of the presence wherein of alligators and other animals they are ignorant,—and were to be carried away by any such animals, no blame would attach to them. Similarly if one gets into a boat, which is well-fastened, and rowed by capable rowers, and proceeds to cross a swift stream,—if, on the sudden rising of a strong wind, the boat happen to be tossed on a whril-pool and capsize, and the man become drowned,—he would not have transgressed the scriptures at all. Similarly again, if one did not carefully avoid places known to be infested with snakes, and being bitten by a snake were to die, he would have acted sinfully; not otherwise. Similarly if one does not run to a safe distance, on seeing a sharp-horned cow or an elephant, and become killed, he is rightly regarded as sinful. Similarly again if, when it is raining heavily and lightning is flashing, if one wanders about in desolate places and does not take shelter in a village or town,—his action is reprehensible. While if the lightning should, by chance, happen to fall upon a man who is in the village, there would be nothing sinful on the part of the man. For these reasons it is always right and proper that the man should do all that has been laid down (for his safety).

The prohibiting of 'water-offerings' should be taken as applicable to all kinds of after-death rites; for such is the view propounded in another *Smṛti*-text.-(88)

## VERSE (89).

ALSO FROM WOMEN, WHO HAVE JOINED A HERETIC, WHO BEHAVE TOO FREELY, WHO HAVE INJURED A CHILD IN THEIR WOMB OR THEIR HUSBAND, AND THOSE WHO DRINK WINE—(89).

### *Bhaṣya.*

One who has renounced the scriptures and has taken to wearing such things[1] as the human skull, red garments and so forth, on the basis of hetorodox theories of life and morals, is a '*heretic*.' Those women who have '*joined*', such a person,—*i.e.*

who have adopted his distinguishing marks and are under his control.

'*Those who behave too freely.*'—When a woman renounces the customs and usages of her family, and allowing free scope to her desires, has recourse to one as well as several men,—her behaviour is called 'free.'

The 'injury' to the husband consists in giving him poison etc. ; and that to the child in the womb consists in abortion.

'*Those who drink wine;*'—*i.e.* those who drink what is prohibited.

On this subject some one makes the following observations :—

" The prohibition of wine-drinking is found in the words '*brāhmaṇo na pibet surām*', ('the Brāhmaṇa shall not drink wine') ; and though the words apply to all members of the caste, yet the particular gender used is indicative of the fact that the prohibition applies to males only, and not to females. Though both the male and the female belong to the same caste, yet there is a distinct difference between the masculine and feminine genders. So that when the text uses the masculine form '*brāhmaṇaḥ*', what possibility is there of the prohibition applying to the female, who is not mentioned at all ? For instance, when it is said that 'for the sake of a son one should make the *Brāhmaṇī* drink' a certain substance, it is not understood to mean that the *male* Brāhmaṇa should be made to drink it. In the same manner when a text makes use of the masculine form, what it asserts cannot be predicated of females. It is true that in some cases, significance is not meant to be attached to the particular gender used ;—*e.g.*, in the text 'the Brāhmaṇa should not be killed', where the prohibition is understood to apply to the killing of the *female* Brāhmaṇa also. But what happens in this latter case is that the direct signification of the Accusative case-ending marks out the '*Brāhmaṇa*' to be the predominant factor by reason of his being what is most intended to be 'got at' by the preadicate; and as a rule in the case of the predominant factor no

significance is attached to the gender, or the number or any other factor, except what is expressed by the basic noun itself. *E.g.* the injunction 'wash the cup' is not taken to mean the washing of only *one* cup. In the case under discussion, however, the prohibitive text is in the form '*Brāhmaṇēna surā na pēyā*' ('wine shall not be drunk *by the Brāhmaṇa*'),) where the '*Brāhmaṇa* appears as the Nominative, and as such, an accessory in the fulfilment of the act denoted ; so that in the case of the prohibition in the form—'The Brāhmaṇa shall not drink wine'—also, the nominative being denoted by the verb (with its conjugational ending), is expressed by the basic noun ('*brāhmaṇa*') and comes to be taken as something conducive to the fulfilment of the act denoted by the verb ; so that the nominative ending in this text is to be construed on the same lines as the Instrumental in the proceding text ; and it has to be taken as a subordinate factor. And in connection with a subordinate factor, all that is expressed by the word has to be taken as significant ; for instance, in the case of the text '*pashunā yajēta*', ('sacrifice with an animal'), it is the *male* animal that is always sacrificed (and this on account of the Instrumental ending marking out the *animal* as the subordinate factor)."

Our answer to the above is as follows :—In such cases as the one under consideration whether a certain thing form the predominant or the subordinate factor is not determined by the Accusative or Instrumental case-ending, but upon its being or not being already known. That is to say, what is not already known, that alone can form the subject of the Injunction, and this is to which due significance is meant to be attached ; and this for the simple reason that it is denoted by a word which can have no other denotation ; while what is already known from other sources, and is mentioned for the sake of the Injunction, has to be taken as subserving the purposes of the Injunction in exactly the same form in which it has been denoted by the previous word. In the sentence 'the Brāhmaṇa should not be killed', all that the Injunction directly signifies is the *prohibition* of the act of killing, and everything else (mentioned in the sentence) is such as is already

known from other sources. Even so however, due significance has to be attached to what is expressed by the basic nouns (in the sentence), as otherwise, their very use would come to be meaningless. But the gender, the number and other elements, which are denoted by the case-endings,—it is just possible that these are used simply because they are invariable concomitants of basic nouns (which cannot be used by themselves without a case-ending); and hence sometimes these latter are meant to be significant, sometimes not. As regards the killing of the Brahmaṇa, no man requires to be urged to do it by an Injunction; as he is urged to it by his own hatred of the man he kills; and all men are, by their very nature, prone to do this act. But as regards the *prohibition* of it, unless it were directly enjoined, it could not be got at by any means; specially as it could not be obtained from any other source. So that, since it is not in any way conducive to the fulfilment of an act, nor is it the qualification of anything so conducive, hence, even though it were to be included under the nature of man, it could not be connected with the context. Consequently, for the purpose of connecting it with the context it is necessary to attribute to it the character of the *topic*; and when the prohibition in question has been made the topic of the Injunction, it is no longer necessary to make the denotation of the verb the topic. Thus then, the topical character having been wrested by the Prohibition, what is denoted by the verb naturally loses that character. The performance of the act (denoted by the verb) is such that its performance is secured through ordinary tendencies (of men); so that for its own accomplishment it does not stand in need of being embraced by any Injunction; and all that it needs is the capacity (and desire) of the man to do the act; and this, act of *killing*, being got at by other means of knowledge, establishes the man's capacity for doing the act; so that it is through a qualification of the man that it becomes correlated with the sentence. Thus it is quite in keeping with the theory of words denoting only correlated entities. The act, along with its qualification, thus not forming the topic of this Injunction, man's tendency to it has to be explained as being due to ordinary wordly

causes. As a matter of fact, in the case of killing, such tendency and motive power is present, in the form of the man's passion ; and certainly no restrictions of gender or number pertain to passion ; or the activity might be due to the man's hatred.

From all this it follows that the word, whose denotation does not form the topic of the Injunction, on the ground that it is already known, renounces its denotative power and indicates a sense that is determined by other means of knowledge. And in as much as gender and number are not, even by import, signified by the word, how can any significance be attached to them ? It being necessary to speak of what is denoted by the basic noun, it has to be spoken of with the help of some number and it cannot be used entirly by itself ; and it is for this reason that gender and number are added.

On the point at issue thus the conclusion is as follows :

The man, who has determined to take upon himself the character of the agent of the act of killing, is urged (by the prohibition) to what is signified by the negative word. So that in a prohibitive sentence, no significance need attach to the use of the Accusative ending, which therefore may be ignored. Even sentences where we find the Instrumental Ending, or even the Nominative—*e.g.*, 'wine shall not be drunk by the Brāhmaṇa', or 'the Brāhmaṇa shall not drink wine',—what is denoted by them being already got at from other sources, they do not form topics of the Injunction ; and hence they are taken as spoken of only by way of reference. In the case where the Accusative comes in as a qualification of the motive, the Nominative and the Instrumental endings are always taken along with the Accusative. Even when the Accusative is directly used, that which is not already known from other sources forms part of the enjoined (predicate), and, as such, is regarded as duly significant ; for example in the case of such texts as '*bhāryām upagachchhēt*' ('one should have recourse to his wife'), '*apatayam utpādayēt*' ('one should beget a child') [where due significance attaches to the

singular number in 'wife' and 'child']. The 'wife' is not a a thing acquired in the ordinary worldly manner; as she can be acquired only by means of the marriage-rites. Nor is it a thing that has been definitively described in an Injunction, which would strictly restrict it to what is enjoined therein ; as there is in the case of such texts as—'*āshvinam gṛhṇāti*' ('holds the cup dedicated to the Ashvins'), '*maitrāvaruṇam gṛhṇāti* ('holds the cup dedicated to Mitra-Varuṇa'), and '*dashaitānadhvaryur-gṛhṇāti*' ('the Adhvaryu holds these then') [where the exact character of the cups has been prescribed by the texts laying down the dedication], and the cups taken up are of the precise number mentioned in the texts ; consequently, their number being known, they become connected with the injunction of the *washing*, in sequential accordance with that number. Now in this case, there being no other sentence, and the sentence in question itself being the originative injunction, there are no grounds for rejecting the directly expressed *number* ; so that any rejection of what is expressed by the self-sufficient denotative power of words could proceed only from the mind of man. Similarly in the case of the text '*pashunā yajeta*' ('one should sacrifice with an animal'), the Injunction pertains to the *sacrifice*, which is of the nature of something to be accomplished ; so that when we proceed to seek for the means by which it could be accomplished, all that is mentioned in the injunctive text, qualification and all, comes to be regarded as the object of the Injunction ; specially because the function of the Injunction cannot be regarded as having been fully fulfilled only by the laying down of what is signified by the root '*yaji*', 'to sacrifice' ; why, then, should not the words be taken in the sense that is indicated by their own denotation as helped by the denotation of other words connected with them ?

Persons versed in the science of "Pramāṇas" however regard the text as a self-sufficient Injunction ; and in this they only repeat what has been said by other people. What we have said is easily understandable ; and it does not demand any very keen acumen to grasp it. It is the very essence of things. The

science is useful only so far as the Injunction is concerned; anything more than that is a mere show of learning, a purely exaggerated description. Such description is of use only in a case where the Injunction does not supply all the information needed; as for instance, in the case of the injunction regarding the "laying of pebbles', there being several articles such as butter, oil, salt and the like, that are helpful towards wetting,—it being doubtful as to which of these is to be used in the wetting of the 'pebbles', it is the description (of Butter as 'longevity itself') which leads to the conclusion that Butter should be used. Or again, in the case of the '*Ratri-sattra*', the performance of sacrificial rites during the night being unheard of anywhere else, the subsequent description of the 'men obtaining honour' helps to indicate the propriety of such performance by one who is desirous of acquiring honour or fame. In the case in question however the sentence (which in Adh. 11, verses 92 *etc.* prohibit wine for the Brāhmaṇa) is complete in all respects, at the mention of '*Brāhmaṇas*'; so that all needs having been fulfilled, the only purpose served by the description is 'commendation.' It might be argued that what is said under 11·96 is treated on the same footing as the assertion that 'the sinful man comes by accomplished happiness',—so that the prohibition of wine-drinking comes to have a footing, though a partial one, as referring to the *male* only. But there would be no force in this; because *females* also are entitled to partake of the butter and other substances, which have been left after the offerings to the Gods have been made; and they are permitted to recite Vedic texts also at the Darsha-pūrṇamāsa and other sacrifices; such texts, for instance, as '*vidēyakarmāsi*, &c., &c.' Even such Injunctions as 'one should make the performer of *Shrāddhas* drink wine' indicate that wine is permitted for women.

Nor is any such distinction (between *male* and *female*) made in the case of 'Brāhmaṇa-killing.' So that upon the question here raised, the final conclusion is that the prohibition of wine-drinking pertains to the whole caste—(89).

## VERSE (90).

THE STUDENT, CARRYING HIS OWN DEAD TEACHER, OR TUTOR, OR FATHER, OR MOTHER, OR MONITOR,—DOES NOT SUFFER IN HIS OBSERVANCES.—(90).

### *Bhāṣya.*

Some people think that the term '*his own*' qualifies the 'Teacher' only; and it serves to exclude the Teacher's Teacher, would be thought of as deserving the same treatment, according to what has been said above under 2.205.

Others again explain 'his own' as standing for one's *relations.*

But in this latter case, it would seem unnecessary to mention the 'father' and the 'mother.' But it may be explained as emphasising the obligatory character of the rule as regards these particular *relations.*

'*Monitor*', '*Guru*',—is one who has been described in 2·149.

There is no harm done to his observances by carrying the dead body of these persons; and what the text means by this specification is that there is interference in the observances by the carrying of the dead bodies of persons other than these—(90).

## VERSE (91).

ONE SHOULD CARRY THE DEAD SHŪDRA BY THE SOUTHERN GATE OF THE CITY; BUT THE TWICE-BORN PERSONS BY THE WESTERN, NORTHERN AND EASTERN GATES RESPECTIVELY—(91).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The term '*City*' stands for the village &c. also.

This rule applies to those places where there are several gates; the advice pertaining to such persons as may be capable of following it.

The *Shūdra* has been mentioned first, because it is an inauspicious subject. And this reversal of the order indicates that the term '*respectively*' indicates that the *Vaishya* should be

carried by the western, the *Kṣattriya* by the northern and the *Brāhmaṇa* by the Eastern gate.—(91)

## VERSE (92).

**THE TAINT OF UNCLEANLINESS DOES NOT ATTACH TO KINGS, OR TO THOSE KEEPING A VOW, OR TO THE PERFORMERS OF SACRIFICIAL SESSIONS ; BECAUSE THEY OCCUPY THE POSITION OF SOVEREIGNS AND ARE EVER OF THE NATURE OF BRAHMAN. - (92).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

Though the term '*rājan*', 'king', is denotative of the *Kṣattriya-caste*, yet, on account of the reason being stated in the words that 'they occupy the position of sovereigns', it follows that it indicates the ruler of countries. This we shall explain fully under the next verse.

'*Those who are keeping a vow;*'—*i.e.*, those who are observing a vow, and undergoing such penances as those of the '*Chāndrāyaṇa*' and the like.

*Performers of sacrificial sessions ;*'—*i.e.* those who are performing the '*Gavāmayana*' sacrifice, or those who have been initiated for the other sacrifies also. Says Gautama (14·1)—' For sacrificial priests, for one who has been initiated and for the Student.'

In support of this we have the laudatory statement (in the second line). '*Position of Sovereigns ;*'—*i.e.*, the kings—'*occupy*,'—maintain,—the '*position*'—place—' *of sovereigns*'—of rulers of men ; and the other two—the keepers of vows and performers of sacrificial sessions—have attained the character of Brahman.

' *Taint of uncleanliness* '—*i.e.* impurity.

Others have explained the term ' *Sattriṇaḥ* ' to mean persons who are constantly making gifts. But in its primary denotation, the term refers to a particular form of sacrifice.—(92).

## VERSE (93).

**IMMEDIATE PURIFICATION HAS BEEN ORDAINED FOR THE KING ON THE MAJESTIC THRONE ; AND THE REASON FOR THIS LIES IN HIS OCCUPYING THAT POSITION FOR THE PROTECTION OF THE PEOPLE.—(93).**

### *Bhaṣya.*

'*Majestic*'—*i.e.* that seat whose character is grand, glorious ; this 'majesty' consists in the fact that it is seated upon this throne that the man is enable to carry on the work of protecting the people ; and herein lies his sovereignty over men. This is what is meant by the clause—'*and the reason for this lies in his occupying that position*' ; and what this means is that mere caste does not entitle the man to the consideration that the rule implies ; what entitles him to it is his work of protecting the people. The term '*āsana*', '*position*,' also does not mean here a *seat* or a *couch* ; it stands for the duties incumbent upon one who takes his seat upon it. It is for this reason that the older writers have explained the present rule to mean that there is no impurity in the case of any person who is capable of protecting the people, even if he be a *non-Kṣattriya* by caste.

'*For the purpose of protecting the people.*'—The meaning of this is that all the observances relating to impurity are not to cease, but only those that would be incompatible with the proper fulfilment of his duty of protecting the people ; for example, the giving of food-grains out of his granary during times of scarcity, and so forth, the performance of rites for the allaying of celestial, atmospheric and terrestrial portents. Further, it becomes incumbent upon the king to attend to such business as may be brought up suddenly by gentlemen ; or, when it becomes necessary for him to speak out for the purpose of settling disputes and religious doubts that may arise among twice-born persons in the higher stages of life.—(93).

## VERSE (94.)

**ALSO IN THE CASE OF THOSE KILLED IN A RIOT OR BATTLE OR BY LIGHTNING OR BY THE KING ; AND OF THOSE WHO HAVE DIED FOR THE SAKE OF COWS AND BRĀHMAṆAS ; AS ALSO FOR THE PERSON FOR WHOM THE KING DESIRES IT.—(94).**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Ḍimba*', '*Riot*', is fighting done by many people, without weapons ; '*Āhava*' is battle.

In the case of persons killed in these, there is immediate purification.

'*Lightning*'—This has been already explained.

'*Pārthiva*'—the lord of the Earth, who may belong to any of the four castes.

Also in the case of one who, even apart from battle, has been killed in water, or by tusked animals,—for the sake of cows and *Brāhmaṇas.*

'*Also for the person for whom the King desires it* ;'—*i.e.* the person who has been deputed by him to do a definite work.

*Question* :—"Why should this be so ? In the case of the king himself, immediate purification has been ordained only in reference to his work of protecting the people ; how then could the impurity of any and every person, without any restriction, cease merely by the king's desire ?"

[The answer to this is supplied by the next two verses]. —(94).

## VERSE (95).

**THE KING HOLDS IN HIMSELF THE BODY OF THE EIGHT GUARDIAN DEITIES OF THE WORLD, OF THE MOON, THE FIRE, THE SUN, THE WIND, INDRA, THE LORD OF WEALTH, THE LORD OF WATER, AND OF YAMA.—(95).**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Body*' here stands for a portion of their effulgence.

'*Lord of Wealth*'—Vaishravaṇa, Kubēra.

'*Lord of Water*'—Varuṇa.

To the same end we have also a second laudatory declaration in the next verse.—(95).

## VERSE (96).

THE KING IS POSSESSED BY THE LORDS OF THE WORLD; NO IMPURITY, THEREFORE, HAS BEEN ORDAINED FOR HIM; FOR THE PURITY AND IMPURITY AFFECT MORTALS AND HAVE THEIR ORIGIN AND END IN THE WORLDLY REGIONS.—(96).

*Bhāṣya.*

The king is possessed by the said Lords of the World; for him there is no purity or impurity; because the effect of these is only upon mortals; and their origin and end proceed from the world; hence they affect mortals, and not the Lords of the World.—(96).

## VERSE (97).

FOR ONE WHO IS KILLED IN BATTLE WITH BRANDISHED WEAPONS, IN THE MANNER BEFITTING THE KṢATTRIYA, SACRIFICIAL PERFORMANCES BECOME INSTANTLY COMPLETED; AND SO ALSO IS THE IMPURITY; SUCH IS THE ESTABLISHED LAW—(97).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Shastra*', '*weapon*', is that by which people are slain, killed; hence by the present rule, also for the man who is killed by pieces of stone or a club or such other things, sacrificial performances become completed.

'*Āhava*', 'Battle', is so called because in this men are *challenged* (*āhūyantē*) to fight, through mutual rivalry.

'*Manner befitting the Kṣattriya*;—*i.e.* never turning his back,—fighting in the defence of his people, or under orders from his master.

'*Sacrificial performances*'—such as the *Jyotiṣṭoma* and the rest ;—'*become instantly completed*'—finished. That is, the man becomes endowed with the merit proceeding from the due performance of the sacrifices.

Impurity also in their case is the same ; *i.e.* it ceases immediately.

Some people construe the term '*sadyaḥ*', '*instantly*', with the word '*killed*' ; and according to this what is said here would apply to the case of only that man who actually dies on this battle-field, and not to one who is moved away from there and dies on some other day.

This point however is open to question.—(97).

## SECTION. (10)

## Means of Purification.

### VERSE (98).

THE BRĀHMAṆA BECOMES PURIFIED BY TOUCHING WATER; THE KṢATTRIYA BY TOUCHING HIS CONVEYANCE AND WEAPONS; THE VAISHYA BY TOUCHING EITHER THE GOAD OR THE LEADING-STRINGS; AND THE SHŪDRA BY TOUCHING THE STICK,—AFTER HE HAS PERFORMED THE RITE—(98).

*Bhāṣya.*

After the completion of the prescribed period of impurity—of ten days, &c.—there is something more that has got to be done.

'*Touching Water*' stands for *bathing*, as we have already explained before.

'*After he has performed the rite.*'—This goes with the *Kṣattriya* and the other two that follow; and the 'rite' meant is only *bathing*, noue other being found to have been prescribed. The meaning thus is that, 'having bathed, they should touch the conveyance and other things.'

Others however explain the term '*rite*' as standing for the *Shrāddha ceremonies*; the meaning being that all become pure after having performed the *Shrāddha-ceremonies*, but the *Brāhmaṇa* after he has 'touched water', and the *Kṣattriya* and the rest after touching the conveyance and other things.—(98).

## SECTION. (11)

## Impurity in the case of persons beyond the pale of Sapinda relationship.

### VERSE (99).

O BEST OF BRĀHMAṆAS, THUS HAS BEEN DESCRIBED TO YOU THE PURIFICATION NECESSSARY IN THE CASE OF 'SAPIṆḌA-RELATIONS.'—(99).

*Bhāṣya.*

The two halves of this verse are meant to serve respectively the purpose of recapitulating what has gone before and introducing what is to come.—(99).

### VERSE (100.)

A BRĀHMAṆA, HAVING CARRIED, LIKE A RELATION, A DEAD BRĀHMAṆA WHO IS NOT HIS 'SAPIṆḌA' RELATION,—OR THE NEAR RELATIVES OF HIS MOTHER,—BECOMES PURE IH THREE DAYS.—(100).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Like a relative*',—i.e., from a religious motive, and not on payment of wages.

'*Near relatives of his mother*':—the term 'near' is meant to include such close relations as the maternal uncle and the like. From this it appears that the term '*non-sapiṇḍa*' here stands for those who are not '*samānodaka*',—and not only for all except *sapiṇḍa*-relations.—(100).

### VERSE (101).

BUT IF HE EATS THEIR FOOD, HE BECOMES PURE IN TEN DAYS; IF HOWEVER HE DOES NOT EAT THEIR FOOD, HE IS PURIFIED IN ONE DAY, IF HE DOES NOT DWELL IN THAT HOUSE.—(101).

*Bhāṣya.*

If he does not eat food, but dwells in the house, then the impurity lasts for three days, as already laid down before. But if

he does not eat food, nor dwells in the house, then it lasts for one day only ; while if he eats the food, as well as lives in the house, then it lasts for ten days.—(101).

## VERSE (102).

**HAVING VOLUNTARILY FOLLOWED A DEAD PERSON, WHETHER HE BE A RELATION OR NOT, HE BECOMES PURE BY BATHING WITH HIS CLOTHES ON, TOUCHING FIRE AND EATING CLARIFIED BUTTER.—(102).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Following*'—going after, intentionally. If he happen to follow it by chance, then he need not bathe with clothes on.

*Bathing*, *Touching of fire* and *Eating of clarified butter*,—all these *collectively* are the means of purification.—(102).

## VERSE (103).

**ONE SHOULD NOT HAVE A DEAD BRĀHMAṆA CARRIED BY A SHŪDRA, WHILE HIS OWN PEOPLE ARE THERE. FOR IT WOULD BE AN OBLATION INTO FIRE, DEFILED BY THE TOUCH OF THE SHŪDRA, AND AS SUCH NOT CONDUCIVE TO HEAVEN.—(103).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Have carried*'—have taken out.

'*While his own people are there*'—i.e., men of the same caste.

The use of the term '*oblation into fire*' implies that the body should not also be burnt by the *Shūdra*.

The specification of the 'Brāhmaṇa' is not emphasised ; for the *Kṣattriya* and the *Vaishya* also the Shūdra's touch is defiling ; hence what the supplementary statement indicates is that the prohibition applies to the case of these two also.—(103).

## SECTION. (12)

## Means of Purification for Corporeal Beings.

### VERSE (104).

WISDOM, AUSTERITY, FIRE, FOOD, CLAY, MIND, WATER, SMEARING, WIND, ACTION, THE SUN AND TIME ARE MEANS OF PURIFICATION FOR CORPOREAL BEINGS.—(104).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Wisdom*' and the rest are mentioned only by way of illustrating the purification by lapse of time; the sense being—'just as these are the means of purification within their own spheres, so is *Time* also, and the efficacy of this latter should not be doubted.'

Of the several things mentioned here, what is efficatious under what circumstances shall be explained in the present context itself; and the efficacy of other things shall be described in particular places.

'*Wisdom*—spiritual knowledge; such as is taught by the *Sāṅkhya-Yoga*. This serves to set aside Ignorance, and removes attachment and other impediments, whereupon wisdom becomes free from all defects. This is what is going to be described under 108, where it is said—'Intellect becomes purified by wisdom.'

'*Austerity*;'—the *Kṛhchhra*, the *Chāndrāyaṇa* and the rest. This serves to remove the taint of major and minor sins.

'*Fire*'—is the means of purification of earthen-ware vessels and such other things as have been mentioned as being 'purified by re-baking' (121).

'*Food*;'—i.e., the eating of such pure things as milk and roots. This also serves to purify in the same manner as Austerity.

The fact of '*clay*' and '*water*' being the means of purification is well-known. That of the '*mind*' is going to be described under 108.

'*Smearing*;'—i. e. cleaning and whitewashing with such things as cowdung, lime and the like.

'*Wind*'—purifies pieces of grass and wood lying on the roads, which happen to be touched by the *chāṇḍāla* and such others.

'*Actions*;'—e. g., the saying of Twilight Prayers and such other rites. It has been decleared under 2-102 that 'one should stand saying the morning prayers, thus he removes the sin committed during the night';—what this means we have explained under Discourse II.

Though 'Austerity' also is an 'action', it has been mentioned separately for the purpose of emphasising its importance. In fact, in the srciptures 'Austerity' is generally mentioned separately; e. g. in Yājñavalkya, Āchāra 221—'*Karmaniṣṭhāstaponiṣṭhāḥ*' —(104)

## VERSE (105)

**AMONG ALL MODES OF PURIFICATION, PURITY IN REGARD TO WEALTH HAS BEEN ORDAINED TO BE THE MOST IMPORTANT; FOR HE WHO IS PURE IN REGARD TO WEALTH IS REALLY PURE, AND HE IS NOT PURE WHO IS MERELY PURIFIED BY CLAY AND WATER.—(105).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

"What is the connection of this in the present context?"

What is meant is that—'just as one who, after having paid the calls of nature, immediately betakes to purifying himself by clay and water,—so whenever, through carelessness and mistake, one happens to steal what belongs to others, or to do any such act,—he should immediately betake to the necessary expiatory rites, for the purpose of purifying himself';—as is going to be explained under Discourse 11.—(105).

## VERSE (106).

**LEARNED MEN BECOME PURE BY TOLERANCE ; BY LIBERALITY THOSE WHO HAVE DONE WHAT SHOULD NOT BE DONE ; SECRET SINNERS BY THE REPEATING OF SACRED TEXTS; AND BY AUSTERITY THOSE WHO ARE WELL-VERSED IN THE VEDA.—(106).**

*Bhāṣya.*

Those who are learned are purified by tolerance ; they are never affected by hatred, jealousy or ill-will ; hence even when sin is rampant, they remain ever pure. 'Tolerance' is the property of the Mind which consists in having the same consideration for all.

Of 'liberality' also the efficacy in removing the sin of doing what sought not to be done has been described under 11.139, where it is declared that 'murder is wiped off by charity'.

In the section dealing with 'secret sins' also it has been declared that for the expiation of secret sins, one should repeat the sacred texts.

For persons well-versed in the Veda, '*austerity*'; which, in their case, consists in repeating the Vedic texts and also cultivating knowledge; as it has been declared that—'for the Brāhmaṇa, learning is the real austerity' (11·235). As regards the '*kṛchchhra*' and other penances, they are means of purification for all men, not only for those versed in the Veda.—(106).

## VERSE (107).

**WHAT NEEDS PURIFICATION IS PURIFIED BY CLAY AND WATER ; THE RIVER IS PURIFIED BY ITS CURRENT ; THE WOMAN OF UNCLEAN MIND BY MENSTRUATION ; AND BRĀHMAṆAS BY RENUNCIATION.—(107).**

*Bhāṣya.*

When the banks of a river with water shallowed down becomes defiled by unclean things, its water becomes purified by the current of the same river, when it has regained its current strong

enough to demolish its sides. The banks of rivers are not purified in the manner in which other ground is purified "by means of five things" (Verse 123).

Or, it may be that the text has declared that 'the river is purified by its current' in view of the idea that people may have in regard to the river having become defiled on account of unclean things flowing along its current ; and the meaning is that it should not be thought that, inasmuch as the river has become contaminated by the flowing along of unclean things coming from all sides, it can never become pure.

The woman who has not been found to have had carnal intercourse with any man, but continues to think of the beauty and good qualities of other men, is regarded as '*of unclean mind*', and such a woman becomes purified by '*menstruation*' ; i.e., by the flow of blood during her courses.

'*Renunciation*' shall be described in Discourse VI, and by this are Brāhmaṇas purified. And no mere mental process removes the sin that they, in their ignorance, may have committed in the shape of having entertained thoughts for the killing of small insects and so forth.—(107).

## VERSE (108).

THE LIMBS ARE PURIFIED BY WATER ; THE MIND IS PURIFIED BY TRUTHFULNESS ; THE SOUL PROPER BY LEARNING AND AUSTERITY ; AND COGNITION IS PURIFIED BY KNOWLEDGE.—(108).

### *Bhasya.*

The 'personality' entitled to the performance of acts consists of the following factors—(1) The person himself, i.e, the Inner Soul, (2) the Internal Organ, i.e., the mind, (3) the Intellect and (4) the Body, the receptacle of experiences. The Sense-Organs being material, do not constitute a separate factor. Of these factors some are purified by one thing, and some by other ; the statement that 'Time purifies everything' being purely valedictory.

'*Limbs*,' standing for the parts, indicate the *whole*, the *body*; the sense being that 'by water'—i.e., by bathing—'the body becomes purified.'

The 'mind'—described (in Discourse I) as consisting of 'the existent and the non-existent'—becomes contaminated by evil intentions; and it becomes pure by '*truthfulness*'—i.e., by good intentions. In a previous verse (104) the mind has been spoken of as a 'means of purification'; but that has to be taken in an indirect sense; and the present text can not mean that 'words' (truthful) are the means of purifying the mind; and the Shruti also speaks of 'the *word* being prompted by the Mind, whence the word uttered by one who is absent-minded becomes fit for demons and not for the gods.'

'*Learning*'—produced by the proper study of the Sāṅkhya and the Vedānta;—and '*austerity*'—in the form of the *Kṛchchhra* and the rest;—when endowed by these the 'soul proper' becomes purified. The term—'*bhūta*' (in the compound '*bhūtātmā*)' means *proper*, *real*; i.e., that which is really the soul, the object of the notion of the 'ego' as free from the notion of 'I', and not the material entity consisting of the *body*.

'*Buddhi*' is '*cognition*'—which is regarded as contaminated when it appears in the form of a thing that is non-existent, or when it does not take any account of the distinction between the real form of the thing cognised and the apparent form in which it is cognised when, during dreams and such conditions, it is obsessed by wrong notions of things;—or '*Buddhi*' may stand for that faculty of the personality which is the product of the unexpiated portions of his past misdeeds, and which may, by virtue of each single sin committed in the past, beset that personality in the form of Ignorance, appearing in the shape of the notion of diversity, or in the shape of the non-discrimination between the Soul and the material attributes, which operates in the form of attachment to children, wealth and such things, and becomes the source of extreme longings.—This '*Buddhi*' becomes pure by '*knowledge*;'—i.e., proper understanding of the means of cognition as

indicating the self-luminous character of all cognitions. *Cognition* is distinct from the *Object cognised*, by reason of the latter having a shape, and it being impossible for the former to become modified into that shape ; and hence it becomes purified by the conviction that it is, by its very nature, unmodifiable.

The term ' learning ' in the previous clause stands for the *knowledge of what is taught by the Veda* ; and its capacity for purification is of the same kind as described under 11.246—'as the fire, in one moment, etc.'

Being purified in the above manner, the person reaches the regions of Brahman. Such is the four-fold purification. And what is intended to be expressed is eulogy of such purification as leading to the fulfilment of the highest ends of man in the matter of his births and other ciruumstances.—(108).

———

## SECTION—13.

## Purification of Substances.

### VERSE (109).

THUS HAS BEEN EXPLAINEED TO YOU THE RULE REGARDING BODILY PURIFICATION ; LISTEN NOW TO THE RULE REGARDING THE PURIFICATION OF VARIOUS SUBSTANCES.—(109.)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Of various things* ;'—i.e., of substances that are used by man, in the form of products that are igneous, earthy, liquid, solid, isolated, compact.

This verse points out the difference of what is going to be described from the purification described above. In the foregoing Section the most important purification was shown to be that of the Soul, that of substances deserving attention only because of their being used by the personality ; while in the present section the reverse is the case.

'*Listen to the rule*'. This verse is meant to avoid the two sections being comfounded.—(109).

### VERSE (110)

OF IGNEOUS SUBSTANCES, OF GEMS AND OF EVERYTHING MADE OF STONE,—THE PURIFICATION HAS BEEN ORDAINED TO BE ACCOMPLISHED BY MEANS OF ASH, BY WATER AND BY CLAY.—(110)

*Bhāṣya.*

The name '*Igneous substances*' is applied to all those substances that melt at the contact of fire ; e. g. silver, gold, copper, iron, lead, zinc and so forth.

'*Gems*'—things of the nature of the rock-crystal.

'*Ashma*' is *stone* ; and what is made of it is called '*ashmamaya*'.

'*Sarvasya*,' '*of everything*.'—This has been added for filling up the metre; the justification for it being found in there being two kinds of stone—that quarried from mountains and that obtained from river-beds.

'*By ash*';—since both *ash* and *clay* serve the same purpose, they are to be regarded as optional alternatives; while 'water' is meant to be used along with each of these two.

"What is the use of these?"

The removing of stains and smells. It has been declared that—'the purification of the unclean thing consists in the removal of its stains and smell';—and again 'so long as from the object besmeared with an unclean substance, the odour and stain do not pass off &c. &c.'

Both ash and clay are, by their very nature, non-greasy; hence purification is brought about by these in the case of oily effects.

The 'purification' of the 'impure' thing consists in making it fit for use by removing its defects.

"If this is so, then it should be necessary to describe in detail the impurity attaching to things—in some such form as 'such and such a substance becomes *impure* when in contact with such and such a substance'.—'But these are worldly things; and all this would be known from ordinary usage.'—Not so; because from ordinary usage, the thing is known only in a vague general form. Further' in ordinary usage what is called 'impure' is only what has become disgusting by being contaminated by urine, ordure and blood; while what is meant by 'impure' in the present context is that which is *unfit for touching* &c.; and it is only from the scriptures that it could be learnt whence this unfitness arises. Then again, a man is called *pure* when he does not fall into a mistake in regard to what belongs to others. From all this it is clear that no useful purpose can be served from what is thus known, from ordinary usage, regarding the signification of the term in question. Though it is generally known that what has been contaminated is *impure*, yet it cannot be known by what particular thing a certain thing becomes contaminated.—' But

how can the exact signification of a term be ascertained from scriptures, when, 'as a matter of fact, what the scriptures provide is the knowledge of *what should be done*, and not the meaning of a certain word, which latter is what is done by the work of Pāṇini; that this is so follows from the fact that the *Smṛtis* of Manu and others are based upon the Veda (which deals only with the Duties of Man)'.—Our answer to this is as follows :—In the case in question, we do infer an injunction in the form—'one should not make use of a substance that has become contaminated by such and such a substance' ; and there would be nothing incongruous in the notion that the substance by whose contact the thing becomes unfit for use is the cause of contamination. Similarly as regards *purification* also, we can recognise its basis in some such injunction as—'when a thing has become contaminated, it may be used after it has gone through the prescribed process of washing &c.' ; and yet such an injunction would not mean that 'purification should be done'. For if it did this, then, he who would not do it would incur sin. What happens is that in the case of ordinary secular acts, it being possible for the man in need to make use of any kind of vessels, pure or otherwise,—the Scripture lays down the restriction that 'if need arises, one should make use of such vessels, and not of others'.—'If it is to be treated as a *restriction*, then it would be incumbent upon only one who seeks prosperity ; and every other man would be free to do as he chose ; just as in connection with the question of the correct forms of words, though the correct and incorrect forms are both equally expressive, yet there is the restriction which indicates that the use of the correct form brings merit, while that of the incorrect form is sinful [and this means that only people seeking merit need use the correct form].'—This would be true only if there were no text prohibiting the use of *unclean* vessels. But when there is such a prohibition, how could anyone make use of the vessel that has not been purified ? As for the rules regarding purification, these only represent exceptions (to the prohibition of unclean vessels, the meaning being that if the unclean vessel has been purified, it may be used). How then could there be any

prosperity arising from what is a mere *exception*? Since all that it means is that if one acts according to the exception, he does not incur the sin of transgressing the prohibition.

" Or again, the Smṛti may be taken as dealing with the explanation of the meanings of words,—resembling the Smṛti that deals with the correct and incorrect forms of words. As for the notion that 'the works of Manu and others have their basis in such Vedic texts as deal with the subject of what *ought to be done*', we ask—who has said that this is so? As a matter of fact, our presumption of the basis for the assertions of Manu and others depends upon the merit of each individual case. For instance, in the case of the *Aṣṭakā*, which is of the nature of a *rite*, we presume its basis in the form of a Vedic text enjoining what *ought to be done*; but in a case where the assertion deals with things as they really exist, the corresponding basic text also must be of the same kind, dealing with an accomplished entity. As regards the subject of the exact meanings of words, the idea regarding the priority of a particular denotation may always be derived from usage; as in this matter there is no question of anything *to be done*. In the case in question however (where there *is* a question of something *to be done*), it is not possible to derive any knowledge from mere usage. Specially because *purification* being something that can be brought about only by means of Vedic texts, how could it ever be made dependent upon usage? If it were, then all injunctions on the subject would be absolutely futile.—' But we have such injunctions as that of Pāṇini, to the effect that one should make use of correct, and not incorrect, forms of words' (where also there is no act to be done, nothing to be brought into existence).'—This is not Pāṇini's injunction at all; all that his rule says is 'this is correct, not that'; though it is true there is a rule like what has been quoted in the works of the authors of the *Dharmasūtras* all this may be learnt in detail from the *Abhidhānāsara*).—' In this Smrti itself we find such injunctions as that—(1) claimants to property shall divide it in such and such a manner, or that (2) the eldest brother shall take four shares (9·153), or that (3) the eldest brother shall take &c.

&c. (9·105). The proper denotation of the injunction has been declared to extend to *directing* and other factors also. In fact the denotations of the words are in the form of *injunctions* and *direction*, and other factors are only supplementary to the injunctions ; for in all these cases the notion derived from the words is in the form of *urging to activity* (towards a certain end).'—But what sort of *urging* could there be in the case (1) of causes and effects, or (2) of the pronouncing of blessings, or (3) of *opportunity* (all which are sometimes expressed by the injunctive affix) ? Nor could the *taking* (of the four shares, mentioned in the texts just quoted) form the object of an injunction ; since it is what is liable to be done by reason of the eldest brother being desirous of taking all he can.—' But the desire of the eldest brother would lead him to take his own as well as the other brothers' shares, and hence the said injunction serves to restrict what should be taken by each.'—As a matter of fact however, there being no possibility perceptible of any one demanding more than his prescribed share, there is no room for any restrictive injunction.—' Well, on account of the prohibition, the text may be taken as a preclusive injunction.—This would be all right ; but in that case, if at the time of division itself, any of the brothers were to take something in excess of his prescribed share, with the acquiescence of his brothers, he would be incurring sin, even though the permission of the brothers would be there. Nor could the text be taken as indicating the man's ownership over a certain share of the thing concerned ; because the coming into existence of ownership has been already mentioned in the injunction of *receiving* one's share ; and what the prohibition does is to point out that over everything else, apart from the prescribed share, the man has no rights of ownership. But even so, if one were to transgress this prohibition and take possession of an excessive share, his ownership would certainly come into existence. It is for these same reasons that ownership has been held to be produced even by *stealing* and such acts. And for the time, apart from possession, no such idea is entertained as that this man has no ownership over the thing.

"Thus then, it being found that the text in question cannot be taken either as an Injunction, or a Restriction, or a Preclusion, all that the *dividing* means is the apportionment of the shares —'so much is the share of this person and so much of that.' Consequently the injunctive in '*vibhajeran*', 'should divide', must indicate *opportunity*; and that the term 'should take' only refers to what actually happens in ordinary worldly practice; just as in the injunction 'the hungry man should eat', or 'for the sake of the acquisition and safe-guarding of his property one shall seek the help of the king.' Gautama has distinctly enumerated (in 10·39) the sources of ownership as—'Inheritance, purchase, &c., &c.'

"Thus then, since we have such direct Smṛti-injunctions as those of the *Aṣṭakā* and the like (which are something *to be done* and hence fit subjects for injunction), what is said in them regarding Impurity and Purity can only be taken as laying down something that is entirely of a sanctificatory character; and since this also has its basis in a (Vedic) Injunction, it may be regarded as prescribed by that injunction itself. So that it is only from the scriptures that it can be determined what is *impurity* and what is *purity*. For this reason it is necessary that the nature of impurity also should be fully explained."

Our answer to the above is as follows:—This has been explained under 135 below, where 'fat, semen, &c.,' of men have been mentioned as constituting 'impurities'; and the specifying of 'men' is only illustrative, as is clear from other *Smṛti*-texts, of all such animals as the dog, the cat, the ass, the camel, the monkey, the crow, the village-hog, the village-cock, the rat, the jackal and other carnivorous animals and birds, also nailed animals and the mungoose; and 'fat' and the other things include also the *flesh* and the *hair*.

What is meant by the declaration of 'purification' (in the present verse) is that whenever the substances mentioned become contaminated by urine and such things they have to be sanctified in the manner laid down; and this need not be done when they are to be used in their natural condition. Because gold and other

things are not *impure* by their nature,—when alone they could need purification whenever they would be used.

Or, the verse may be taken as laying down the purification in connection with a visible act, but with a view to an invisible (trancendental) result: just like the laying down of the rule that 'one should eat facing the East.'

In this latter case however, the mention of 'purification' would be incongruous.

As for the ordinary clearing and washing of vessels before eating, those are done on account of usage, and not by virtue of the Smṛti-rule regarding purification (which pertains to only such articles as have become defiled by the touch of the unclean thing).

As regards the other things that are 'untouchable' by man—such, for instance, as the *Chāṇḍāla* and the like—or garlic, onion, wine, meat and so forth,—these also are sources of defilement of substances.

What particular form of purification shall be used in the case of the contamination by what unclean thing,—for this it is necessary to look out for usage and other Smṛti-texts. Details on this point have been supplied by Hārīta, Āpastamba, Parāshara and other sages; but all these passages we have not quoted here, for fear of having to write too much, in the manner of the philosophical writer Chandragomin.—(110).

## VERSE (111).

A GOLDEN VESSEL, FREE FROM STAINS, BECOMES PURE BY WATER ALONE; SO ALSO WHAT IS PRODUCED IN WATER, WHAT IS MADE OF STONE AND WHAT IS MADE OF SILVER, IF IT IS NOT ENCHASED (OR VERY MUCH DEFILED).—(111).

### *Bhāṣya.*

This rule applies to two particular metals, gold and silver, when they are free from stains; as for other metals, copper and the rest, their cleansing is to be done with washing with powdered

bricks and such things, just as in the case of their being defiled by leavings of food. There is no stain in a vessel in which milk or water has been drunk. As regards the case where parts of the vessel become stained by the leavings of meat, butter, milk and such things, the author is going to lay down distinct means of cleansing—'By that from which they sprang &c.' (113). Then again, since the text has spoken of the removal of 'smells and stains', we should make use of such cleansing substances as may be capable of removing a particular stain ; and it is not necessary to make use of ash and water in all cases. Hārita mentions several such cleansing substances, as 'powdered wheat, rice, peas, barley, kidney-bean and lentil' ; and he proceeds to say—'even when gold and silver vessels are not stained, if they have been touched by a Chāṇḍāla, or by a menstruating woman, they should be cleaned with ash twenty-one times.'

Shaṅkha however has declared thus—'Of metal vessels defiled by a dead body or blood or semen or urine or ordure, there should be either alteration or scrubbing or washing twenty-one times with ash'. There should be 'alteration' in the case of vessels long immersed in urine &c. ; 'alteration' means the destruction of the original name and form and the bringing about of another shape and name ;—'scrubbing' means scratching with a sharp weapon or with stone.

Another Smṛti-text has prescribed '(1) melting, (2) heating and (3) hammering.'—When the vessel has been put into the melting-pot by the goldsmith, it becomes pure ;—'burning', i.e., being put into fire by goldsmiths ;—'hammering', i.e., heating and then placing on the anvil and hammering, in the melting-pot ;—it being declared that 'all mines are pure.'

'*What is produced out of water*'—the conch-shell, the rock-crystal and the like. For the *stained* conch-shell there is purification by the paste of white mustard, or by cow's-urine and water, or by milk. We read in another *Smṛti*—'The conch-shell is purified by water ; if it is defiled and oily, then by milk and water, and by the paste of white mustard.'

'*Anupaskṛtam*' '*enchased*', i.e., the chasings in which are not filled (with unclean things), not very much defiled. This goes with every one of the things mentioned ; hence in the case of every one of these being defiled with the touch of dry unclean things or of the chaṇḍāla and the like,—even though there be no stain,—the purification is to be as described before, in accordance with other Smṛti-texts.—(111).

## VERSE (112.)

**GOLD AND SILVER SPRANG OUT OF THE UNION OF WATER AND FIRE ; FOR THESE REASONS THE PURIFICATION OF THESE TWO IS BEST DONE BY MEANS OF THEIR SOURCE.—(112.)**

### *Bhāṣya..*

This is a purely commendatory description.

In the series of commendatory passages beginning with the words '*agnirvai varuṇam*' and ending with '*abhyākāmyata*', the origin of gold and silver has been described ; the meaning of which is that—'Agni approached Varuṇa, i. e., water, in the manner of a male approaching a female, and had sexual intercourse with it, and out of this sprang gold and silver.'

For this reason the purification of these is done by means of their 'source' ; i. e., by fire when there is much defilement, and also by water.

Another reading is '*Sayonyā*' ; in which case the meaning is 'by that which has the same source as themselves', i.e., by ash. And in accordance with this view cleansing by means of clay is also sometimes permitted.

The '*purification is best done*'.—(112).

## VERSE (113).

**OF COPPER, IRON, BRASS, PEWTER AND TIN, THE PURIFICATION SHOULD BE DONE, ACCORDING TO SUITABILITY, BY MEANS OF ALKALINE SUBSTANCES, OF LIQUID ACIDS AND OF WATER.—(113).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*According to suitability*'.—According to what may be suitable

to a particular thing; i.e., that substance should be used for cleaning which is best fitted to remove the dirt from the object to be cleaned. It is for this reason that in another *Smṛti* we find it stated that—'things made of tin and lead are to be cleansed by means of cow-dung and chaff.' Similarly—'Brass-articles smelt by the cow, or defiled by the food-leavings of the Shūdra, or defiled by dogs and cows become cleansed by means of alkaline substances.' It is with a view to this that we have the various varieties of alkalines, such as those prepared out of gruel, or of pomegranates and so forth.—(113).

## VERSE (114).

FOR ALL LIQUIDS, PURIFICATION HAS BEEN DECLARED TO CONSIST IN THROWING OUT A LITTLE; FOR SOLIDS, IN SPRINKLING; AND FOR WOODEN ARTICLES, IN SCRAPING.—(114).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Liquids.*'—Substances that have the tendency to *flow*; e. g., clarified butter, oil, gruel and so forth; when small quantities of these,—not more than a seer—are defiled by the cow and other things,—their purification is done by means of '*utpavana*',—i.e., the removal or throwing away, of a portion of the original contents. In another *Smṛti*-text it has been declared as follows:—'Utpavana is done by means of two blades of Kusha, with the hymn—'*pavamānaḥsuvarjanaḥ*, &c.'

Others have explained '*utpavana*' to mean 'make to overflow'; the meaning being that another similar substance is to be poured into the defiled liquid till the vessel becomes filled to overflowing and a portion of the liquid flows out.

What is here prescribed is to be done in the case of direct contamination.

In the case of small quantities, the liquid has to be thrown away.

When, on the other hand, it is the vessel that is contaminated—and there is no direct defilement of the liquid itself—it should be removed into another vessel. In the case of liquids becoming

contaminated by the contact of food-leavings, it has been declared 'clarified butter should be placed in water and Vedic mantras recited'; and it is clear that the things have to be poured into another vessel, which latter is to be placed in water; for if the oil itself were placed in water, it would not remain fit for use. Similarly in the case of clarified butter also.

The said '*utpavana*' is meant for *liquids*. But when liquids come into contact with urine and other unclean things, to this extent that their own odour and colour cease to be perceptible,—they have to be thrown away.

As regards such liquids as have been boiled, Shaṅkha has prescribed *re-boiling* also.

This same purification pertains to even urine and other unclean liquids, when they are to be used by the Shūdra and others. But in this case '*utpavana*' would mean only 'overflowing'. As Vashiṣṭha has said—'for things on the ground it is like water'.

'*Solids*'—hard substances; such as cooled clarified butter, curds, sugar-candy, cakes and the like. In the case of these, if the portion that is defiled is thrown away, the remainder becomes purified. Shaṅkha has declared—'In the case of dry substances, by the removal of contamination'.

Or, the term '*saṁhatāḥ*' may stand for things composed of several components; such as, couch, seat, bed and the like, which are composites, composed of homogeneous as well as heterogeneous constituents.

But in all cases, purification is obtained by the removal of contamination.

In the case of contact with a dead body, or with unclean things that have dried up, that part which has come into direct contact with such things is to be washed and the rest of the thing is to be sprinkled with water.

In the case of *wooden articles*—i. e., things made of wood

only, such as a seat, a board and the like made of wood—if these are contaminated by the touch of a dead body, or a *chāṇḍāla* or Shūdra,—there should be *scraping*.

Others hold that scraping is to be done only when the thing touches *Ordure*; in which case, the stain and the smell have got to be removed by scraping, and the rest of the thing is to be washed and sponged with clay and water.

On contamination by a dog and such things, there should be washing, as in the case of *ordure*.

In the case of the wooden bed and such things made up of wood and ropes &c. and not of wood *only*), purification is secured as in the case of 'solids' or 'composites'.— 114).

## VERSES (115—116.)

DURING SACRIFICIAL PERFORMANCE THERE SHOULD BE CLEANING OF THE SACRIFICIAL VESSELS; THE PURIFICATION OF SPOONS AND CUPS IS ACCOMPLISHED BY WASHING;—(115)

THE PURIFICATION OF THE 'CHARU', THE 'SRUK' AND THE 'SRUVA' IS DONE BY MEANS OF HOT WATER; AS ALSO OF THE 'SPHYA', THE WINNOWING BASKET, THE CART, THE PESTLE AND THE MORTAR.—(116).

### *Bhāṣya.*

These two verses are to be taken as citing examples in illustration of what has been laid down in the *Shruti*.

When the cups, the spoons and other sacrificial vessels have been used in one performance, they become smeared with clarified butter and other offering-materials employed at that performance; and with a view to avoid the contamination of the fresh performance by such stains and smearings, these have to be removed by means of hot water; and this cleansing has to be done in the manner prescribed for each case: sometimes by hand, sometimes by kusha-grass, sometimes by the threads at the end of one's garment, and so on.

The purification here mentioned is in connection with sacrificial performances; in the event of the vessels becoming defiled

with food-leavings etc., the cleaning is to be done in the same manner as in the case of ordinary vessels. In as much as we have the Vedic declaration—'they do not become unclean by Soma',—it is understood that in the case of other defilements, the ordinary purification is to be done.

The exact shapes of the '*graha*' the '*chamasa*' and the '*sphya*' are to be ascertained from persons versed in sacrificial lore.—(115—116).

## VERSE (117).

OF GRAINS AND CLOTH, IN LARGE QUANTITIES, THERE IS SPRINKLING WITH WATER; AND IN SMALL QUANTITIES, THEIR PURIFICATION HAS BEEN ORDAINED TO BE SECURED BY MEANS OF WASHING WITH WATER.—(117).

*Bhāṣya.*

Grains are declared as to be regarded to be 'in large quantities' when they are more than one '*droṇa*' in weight (about thirty-two seers). Others hold that they are to be regarded as 'much' in relation to particular men and to particular time and place; e.g., for one who is in a poor condition, even a '*kuḍava*' (a quarter seer) may be 'much'; similarly under certain conditions, grain is regarded as 'much', only when there is a large accumulation. Says Baudhāyana (*Dharmasūtra* 1-5-47)—'One shall employ the method of purification after having duly considered the place, time, the man himself, the substance, the use to which it is going to be put, its origin and condition.'

Some people would apply the same rule to *cloth* also.

Though things have been declared to be 'many' when they are three and more, yet, since the text has used the *plural* number in the term '*alpānām*', '*those in small quantities*', we take it that upto (and including three), they are to be regarded as of 'small quantity'.

'*With water*' (in the second time)—This is purely illustrative; hence the cloth is to be washed with that liquid which may be able to remove the contamination that has defiled it. This has

been already explained before. The term '*sprinkling*' has been used for the purpose of emphasising the use of water, the sense being that 'the sprinkling is to be done with *water* only.' It is on account of this difference that the term '*with water*' has been used twice.

If even by washing the stain in the cloth does not go, then that much of it should be cut off, or the whole should be cut off,—as laid down by Gautama (1—33).—(117).

## VERSE (118).

**THE METHOD OF PURIFYING LEATHER AND TREE-BARKS IS SIMILAR TO THAT OF CLOTHES; AND FOR VEGETABLES, ROOTS AND FRUITS, THE PURIFICATION IS LIKE THAT OF GRAINS.—(118).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Leather*',—i. e., goat-skins and such other skins as are touchable; and not the skin of the dog, the jackal or such animals as are by their nature unclean.

The same rule holds good regarding also things made of the said leather, in the shape of shoes, armour and the like.

In the present context, wherever the original constituent cause is mentioned, it includes the product also; and *vice versa.* So that the rule laid down in connection with 'wooden articles' is applicable to *wood* also. Vashiṣṭha, having described the purification of wooden articles, proceeds to speak of 'wood, bone and earth'; and if the cause did not include its product, how could the author apply the purification (prescribed for *wooden articles*, and not for *wood*) to the *wood*? In fact the inclusion of the product by the cause is only right, since the notion of the latter does not certainly cease in regard to the former.

'*Vaidala*' stands for the *bark of trees* and other like things.

In another *Smṛti*-text this same purification in laid down for feathers, *kusha*, skins, *chowries*, grass, cane, hair, and tree-bark'—Here 'feather' stands for the *peacock's feathers*, and things made of them, such as umbrellas, hair ornaments and so forth;—the term '*pavitra*' stands for *kusha*, and also for cloth made of

*kusha*;—the term '*grass*' stands for *palm-leaves*; according to the assertion that 'the palm is known as the *king among plants*'; and the part of the wood (i.e., '*tṛṇa*', which is part of '*tṛṇarāja*') denotes the whole, like the term '*deva*' denoting the name '*Dēvadatta*';—'*hairs*'—i. e., of the cow, the horse and the goat, not of man; as the latter, when fallen from the body, are untouchable; for in the present context all the purification mentioned pertains to cases where a thing has been defiled by the touch of another substance, and not where the thing is unclean by its very nature; that this is so is indicated by the fact that exactly the same purification has been laid down for cloth and grain.

Vegetables have to be dealt with in the same manner as grains. That is just as *sprinkling* and *washing* are the means of purifying grains, while they are still in the form of grains, and have not undergone embellishment by means of *thumping* and the like acts,—so also are they for the purifying of vegetables also. Hence the present rule pertains to *uncooked* vegetables only. As for *cooked* vegetables, even though they are spoken of as 'vegetables', yet some other method of purification has to be found for them; as it has been said—'by clean water and by the flame of fire' and so forth. For vegetables taken out of large heaps, as also for gruel, cow's milk and the rest, *sprinkling* and *heating on fire* have been specially laid down by Hārita;—and similarly, for all grains in pods, scrubbing and pounding and so forth.

All this is for the purpose of removing all doubts in the event of their being touched by foot, as it has been said that 'all things in large quantities are pure.'—(118).

## VERSE (119).

OF SILKEN AND WOOLEN STUFFS, BY MEANS OF SALINE EARTH; OF BLANKETS BY SOAP-BERRIES; OF 'AMSHU-PAṬṬA,' BY THE BEL-FRUIT; AND OF LINEN BY WHITE MUSTARD.—(119).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Uṣa*' is *saline earth*.

The '*soap-berry*' and other things mentioned are well-known.

When the stuffs spoken of are stained by an oily substance, they have to be rubbed over with the powder of the things mentioned, and then washed.

'*Silken-stuff*', '*kausheya*', is a particular kind of cloth; so also the '*amshu-paṭṭa*'; the '*āvika*', is *woolen stuff*. In connection with this latter *Hārīta* has declared that 'woolen articles are purified by the sun.' But this should be understood as pertaining to such stuffs as are constantly worn, and hence come into contact with the bodies of several persons; and not when they have become defiled by foreign contamination.

By reason of all these being 'cloth', it might be thought that 'sprinkling and washing' would be the means of purifying them; and the present text prescribes the methods for moving the stains of oil, &c.

'*Kṣauma*', '*Linen*', includes *jute stuff* also. (119).

## VERSE (120).

THE LEARNED MAN SHOULD PURIFY CONCH-SHELLS, HORN AND THINGS MADE OF BONE AND TUSK, LIKE LINEN; AND BY COW'S URINE OR WATER. (120).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The 'bone', 'horn' and 'tusk' meant are those of the touchable animals,—the cow, the sheep and the elephant,—and not of such animals as the dog, the ass and the like.

'*Water*' and '*cow's urine*' are optional alternatives; while the use of 'white mustard' is to be combined with either of these.—(120).

## VERSE (121).

GRASS AND WOOD AND STRAW BECOME PURE BY SPRINKLING; THE HOUSE BY SWEEPING AND SPRINKLING; AND AN EARTHEN POT BY RE-BAKING.—(121).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Palāla*', '*straw*,' is the name applied to corn-stalks used in the making of mats and such other things

'*Grass*',—i.e., *kusha*, ordinary grass, and so forth.

"In connection with the mention of 'wooden articles'(114), it has been remarked that the mention of the *product* implies the *cause* also; under the circumstances, why should 'wood' be mentioned in the present verse?"

It is mentioned for the purpose of emphasising the fact that *sprinkling* alone is what should be done. And it is in virtue of this that until the cause contamination is very serious, people do not have recourse to scraping the wood. In the event of its being touched by the Chāṇḍala and such unclean persons, the purification is brought about 'by means of the rays of the sun, of the moon and wind'; but in the case of things made of wood,—such as the ladle and the like,—if the contamination is slight, people desirous of using them in connection with food &c., should have recourse to sprinkling and scraping.

'*Sweeping*'—is the clearing of the house, which consists in removing of the stains of smoke and such things.

'*Smearing*'—i. e., rubbing the floor with cow-dung, lime or some such thing.

All this should be understood to be necessary in the case of the whole wall of the house becoming defiled by the touch of a dead body, *a chāṇḍala*, a menstruating woman and such persons; while in the case of only a portion of the wall being defiled, only that part should be *smeared.* But in the case of defilement by a dead body falling on the roof, walls should be scraped, rays of the sun should be made to enter the house, and the inside should be exposed to flames of fire; and in some cases *re-building* also has been laid down. All this comes under the term '*clearing*'.

Of earthen articles, there should be '*re-baking*'. That is, when it has been touched by a man with unwashed mouth, it shall be heated on fire; actual *rebaking* is to be done only in the case of its being defiled by such unclean things as a *wine-keg* and the like. When however it is touched by the wine itself, it should be thrown away. This is what has been thus declared by Vashiṣṭha (3—59)—'An earthen article is not purified by re-

baking, if it has been touched by wine, urine, ordure, spittings, pus and blood '.—(121).

## VERSE (122),

**BY CLEANING AND SMEARING, BY SPRINKLING AND BY SCRAPING, AND BY THE LODGING OF COWS—BY THESE FIVE LAND BECOMES PURIFIED.—(122).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

*Sprinkling*—with cow's urine or water; or by milk, as laid down in some books.

'*Scraping.*'—Scratching with some weapon and then throwing away the scraped earth, according to Gautama's direction that 'of land there should be throwing away' (1.32).

'*By these five.*'—This re-iteration is with a view to indicate that the methods may be used singly or collectively. '*Smearing*', without '*cleaning*', is a means of purifying a spot which is not supplied with a dust-bin. If the ground is stained with urine or ordure, there should be *scraping* and *sweeping.* In the case of river-banks and forests, there should be sprinkling with water.

'*Lodging of cows*'—making the land a cow-pen for a single day.

All this should be done in the case of land lying near the cremation-ground. In the case of land containing bones and skull, a portion of the earth should be taken out and thrown away to another place; also where all these may not be visible, but where their existence and subsequent appearance may be suspected.—(122).

## VERSE (123).

**WHAT HAS BEEN EATEN BY A BIRD, WHAT HAS BEEN SMELT BY A COW, BLOWN UPON, OR SNEEZED AT, OR DEFILED BY HAIR AND INSECTS, BECOMES PURE BY SCATTERING EARTH.—(123).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The use of the term 'eaten' indicates that the text pertains to *food.*

'*By birds*'—i.e., parrots and other birds that are eatable—what has been eaten out of (rendered a 'leaving). This does not apply to what may have been eaten by the crow, the vulture and other such birds; as in connection with this extensive expiatory rites have been prescribed under the text 'what has been licked by a bird &c., &c.,' which lays down the expiration to be performed in the case of food which, by itself, is quite pure. Thus it is that there is no purification for food that has been eaten out of by the cow, in connection with the eating of which a similar elaborate expiation has been laid down. Though such may be the law, yet it is necessary to find out other Smṛti-texts and usage bearing upon the subject. As a matter of fact, when food, larger in quantity than ten cupfulls, has been defiled by the crow and other such birds, what cultured people do is to throw away just that portion of it that has been touched, and make use of the remainder after having purified it; but if it is less than ten cupfulls, they throw it away. Here also the peculiar circumstances of each case have to be taken into consideration.

In another Smṛti-text, food defiled by the black birds has also been prohibited.

'*Blown upon*'—with breath from the mouth, or over which a piece of cloth has been shaken for the purpose of being dusted.

'*Sneezed at*'—that food on which some one has sneezed.

'*Hair*'—of men from their heads.—'*Insects*'—small organisms; some of these, born out of moisture in the house, if they fall upon the food while living, they do not defile the food; just as is the case with flies. The present purification is laid down for the case where *dead* insects fall on the food. Those insects, on the other hand, that are born out of impure sources, or which live upon dirt, they defile the food, even when living. Says Gautama (17·89)—'What is defiled by hair and insects is ever uneatable.' When the food happens to be covered by a large number of these, the whole of it should be thrown away.

In the case of large heaps of food, if a small portion of it happen to be contaminated by impure insects, that much alone of

the food has to be thrown away and the remainder is purified.

In the case of contamination by hair, another Smṛti has laid down that the food shall be touched by vessels of gold, silver, *kusha* and gems, along with water. In certain works *heating* also has been prescribed.

Some people have taken this verse as laying down a rule for the purification of *land*. But they go against —(*a*) other Smṛti-texts, (*b*) usage and (c) the direct meaning of the text.—(124).

## VERSE (125).

**FROM AN OBJECT TAINTED BY AN UNCLEAN SUBSTANCE, AS LONG AS THE SMELL AND THE STAIN CAUSED BY IT DO NOT DISAPPEAR, SO LONG SHOULD EARTH AND WATER BE APPLIED TO IT,—IN ALL CASES OF THE PURIFICATION OF THINGS.—(125).**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Unclean*'—Untouchable.

"If that be so, then what is not eatable by the person concerned, that alone will be a source of contamination for him ; e.g., wine and spirit would be 'unclean' for the *Brāhmaṇa*, but not for the *Shūdra*."

This is not right ; because substances intended as offering-materials at a sacrifice are 'not eatable', before the offerings have been made ; and yet they are not 'untouchable'. As for wines and spirits, even the *touching* of these has been prohibited for the *Brāhmaṇa*. So that that thing may be regarded as a source of contamination for a man the *touching* of which has been prohibited for him. So that what is true is, not 'what is *not eatable* is *untouchable*,' but that 'what is *untouchable* is *not eatable*.'

'*Tainted*'—besmeared ; contaminated.

'*So long*',—this prescribes repetition of the act.

'*Earth and water*' ;—all this to be is used only if there is need for it ; and the *need* would consist in the removing of the smell and stain. So that in the case of the touch of such unclean things as are dry, or in the case of the contamination having

taken place long ago,—since the smell and stain would have been removed by the lapse of time,—washing with earth and water should have to be done once only.

"The use of earth and water is for a visible purpose,—since it is only by their use that the stain is removed and the thing is purified ; what then is the use of the phrace '*as long as &c.*' ?"

The explanation is as follows :—The qualifying phrase has been added with a view to exceeding the restricted number of applications, specifically laid down in such texts as—'once to the urinary organ, thrice to the anus &c. &c.' (3·448) ; the sense being that if the removal of the stain &c., of the excretions be found to be impossible by the restricted number of applications, the said restrictions are to be ignored and more applications used. All that the mention of the exact number of applications means is that even if the smell and stain be removed by a less number of applications, the prescribed number must be made up.

'*Earth and water*' have been mentioned only as indicating things that may be used as a means of purification. Hence even though the contaminating substance may have been washed off by water, yet it should be rubbed with saline substances, so that not a trace of the substance may be visible.

'*Disappear*'—go off, cease.

'*Caused by it*'—caused by the *unclean* substance. Hence there would be no contamination if the smell of such substances as musk and the like did not disappear from clothing &c. But in the case of a thing painted with *kuṅkuma* and such substances, if any portion of it should happen to be contaminated by an unclean thing, then the *kuṅkuma* also has to be removed from that portion ; and this for the simple reason that the *kunkuma* also is in contact with the unclean thing ; specially there also the 'smell and taint' are present. If however the colour of *kuṅkuma* happens to be attached to one's body, and it cannot be removed by rubbing, then purification may be attained (even by the use of earth and water).—(125).

## VERSE (126).

**The gods ordained three things pure for the Brāhmaṇas: what is not seen, what is washed with water and what is commended by word.—(126).**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Pavitram*'—pure.

The mention of the gods is by way of commendation.

The term '*Brāhmaṇa*' includes, according to usage, all castes.

'*What is not seen*';—a thing that, though lying in an unprotected place, is yet not actually seen to have been contaminated by the touch of the dog, the crow or such other things. The mere presence of such animals should not be made the ground for suspecting actual defilement, until it is actually perceived. Similarly there can be no harm in a man partaking of food prepared in the kitchen by cooks and others who may have done the cooking without having themselves undergone a cleansing process [if anything unclean is not actually perceived].

In this connection, no one should entertain the idea that—'there would be nothing wrong in the partaking of food if the defilement were entirely unknown.' As this would be contrary to what has been declared (in 5-20) regarding the sinfulness of eating certain things *unintentionally*.

Thus the conclusion is that a thing is to be regarded as *pure* in connection with which no contamination is known by any of the recognised means of knowledge. But when, even in the absence of definite proof, there be even the slightest and most far-fetched suspicion regarding contamination, the thing concerned should be washed with water. *E.g.* when from among a large number of dishes and cups lying in the same place, if even *one* has been seen to be contaminated by the touch of the dog or some such thing, all the rest of them also should be washed with water.

To this same category (of '*what is not seen*') belongs also '*what is commended by word.*' That is cultured men should be made to

pronounce the thing to be *pure*. They say that things become pure by the Brahmaṇa's word. The *present tense* in '*prashasyatē*', '*is commended*', has the force of the *Injunctive*.

Some people explain the 'commendation' here spoken of as follows :—"When the person going to make use of a certain thing has seen it being defiled, even if he does not himself see it being purified, he should believe it to have been purified if cultured people assure him that it has undergone purification."

This however is not right. Since the assertion of a trustworthy person has nowhere been spoken of as being unreliable, to assert it here would be a needless repetition.

Others have explained the term '*what is washed with water*' as meant to be an example,—and the '*unseen*' and the '*commended by word*' as the two whose purity is here enjoined ; the sense being —'Just as what is washed with water is pure, so also should be regarded *what is not seen* and *what is commended by word*.'

"If everything is *pure*, in which no contamination is cognised by either Perception or Inference or Verbal Authority,—then why should the *Chāndrāyaṇa* have been prescribed (under 5-21) as to be performed for the expiation of the sin of having partaken of defiled food, without knowledge ?"

What has been said under 5.21 is in connection with what is *fit for being eaten* ; while the present text deals with *purification* in general. Or, a distinction may be drawn between the two declarations, either on the ground of one refering to cases of more serious defilement than the other, or on the ground of one refering to times of distress and the other to normal times.—(126)

## VERSE (127).

**WATER COLLECTED ON THE GROUND IS PURE, IF IT IS SUFFICIENT TO ALLAY THE THIRST OF THE COW ; BUT ONLY IF IT IS NOT CONTAMINATED BY ANY UNCLEAN THING, BECOMING AFFECTED BY WITH ITS SMELL, COLOUR AND TASTE.—(127)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The 'ground' is mentioned only by way of illustration ; so that water in canals is also pure. Water on the ground, as also in the

atmosphere, is, by its very nature, pure; but the ground, being in contact with unclean substances, is slightly impure; hence when water is collected on the ground, it imbibes impurity by contact; and the present text proceeds to point out what quantity of water thus collected is to be regarded as *pure*:—'*Sufficient to allay the thirst of the cow*';—'*vaitṛṣṇyam*' means *freedom from thirst.* This is meant to indicate a particular quantity; this explanation having been adopted by the ancients on the strength of the words of the Veda—'so that the dawlap of the cow dapples in water &c. &c.' Thus the quantity meant is that in which the cow's dewlap becomes submerged, or which allays her thirst.

Water collected on pure ground is pure, even in small quantities.

"How is it to be known that water has been '*contaminated by an unclean thing*'?"

In answer to this we have the phrase—'*becoming affected by its smell, colour and taste.*' The Instrumental ending in '*amedhyēna*', '*by an unclean thing*', has to be changed here into the *genitive*; the meaning being—'when the water imbibes the smell, colour and taste *of the unclean thing*, then it is to be regarded as *contaminated* by it.' According to this construction, if in a tank, an unclean thing be found in one part, while in another part the water be found to be free from its smell &c., then this latter is to be regarded as pure—(127).

## VERSE (128).

**THE ARTISAN'S HAND IS ALWAYS PURE; SO ALSO IS MERCHANDISE SPREAD OUT FOR SALE; THE FOOD BEGGED AND HELD BY THE STUDENT IS EVER SACRED; SUCH IS THE ESTABLISHED RULE—(128).**

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Kāru*' is artisan; such as the cook; the dyer, the weaver and so forth;—the hand of these people is '*always pure.*' It is for this reason that they are touchable even during periods of impurity

caused by birth or death. But it does not mean that their hand is to be regarded as pure even when found to be actually bearing the stains of ordure or such unclean things.

What is stated here is on the same footing with what as been asserted before regarding certain people being 'immediately purified.' Nor is there any superfluous repetition; as no such purification has been declared anywhere else in the Institutes of Manu. Then the present text contemplates another case also, *e.g.* weavers, as a rule, weave cloth without bathing;—for separating the yarns from the pillars they make use of dough and gruel &c.; —they place the vessels containing these things at random:—the 'impurity' involved in all this is what is negatived by the present text; and it is not meant that people who are impure by their very nature are to be regarded as 'touchable' by taking to the work of artisans; because such work has not been ordained for them.

This same reasoning holds good regarding the view that things touched by *Mlechchhas* are not impure. In connection with these, *sprinkling* and *washing* have to be done, as laid down by Shaṅkha, who reads—'The artisan's hand is pure, and so also are substances in a heap.'

'*Merchandise*;—the substance that is sold for money, or is exchanged for some other substance, is called '*merchandise*'; and when this is '*spread out*' in the market-place, it is pure. That is, it does not become defiled by such contaminations as being handled by several purchasers, being spread out on unwashed ground and so forth, even though one may perceive such contaminations again and again. Since the text speaks of its being '*spread out*', it follows that so long as the thing is stored within a room, it is not pure, even though it is 'in the market-place'. As regards cooked substances, such as fried flour, cakes and the like,—though these also are 'pure' (when spread out in the market-place), yet they are not fit for eating; as declared by Shaṅkha—'things exposed in the market-place are not fit for eating'.

'*Held by the student*'.—By reason of the 'purity' being spoken of in this verse along with this term, it is to be regarded as pertaining

to such contamination as the following—(a) treading along the public road in course of begging (b) the sight of unclean objects, (c) spitting and sneezing, (d) the dropping of one hand on the food obtained and so forth,—all which are probable.

'*Sacred*;—this is meant to imply *purity*—(128).

## VERSE (129).

**THE MOUTH OF WOMEN IS ALWAYS PURE ; AS ALSO THE BIRD IN THE DROPPING OF FRUITS ; THE CALF IS PURE IN CAUSING THE FLOW (OF MILK) ; AND THE DOG IS PURE IN THE CATCHING OF DEER—(129).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The mouth of all women is '*pure*'—for the purposes of kissing &c. 'Women during sexual intercourse etc.'—says another *Smṛti*-text. What is said here applies only to such women with whom sexual intercourse is possible, and not to the mother, sister and such women. This should not be understood to be the denial of the impurity attaching to the mouth until it is washed after food. Because even though the wife is a woman with whom sexual intercourse is possible, yet it has been declared in discourse IV that 'one should not eat with his wife'.

The addition of the term '*always*' implies that the mouth is pure, not only at the time of the actual intercourse, but also during the acts that lead up to it.

'*The bird in the dropping of fruits*'.—Though the term "*shakuni*", '*bird*', denotes all kinds of birds, yet by usage, what is said here is not applicable to the crow, the vulture or other such birds as feed upon unclean things.

Since the text uses the term '*dropping*', the present rule applies only to fruits on the tree.

'*In causing the flow*'.—When the cow is being milked, the calf is made to touch the teats for the purpose of making the milk to flow ; and yet it has been declared that 'cows are pure except in their mouths' ; so that the touch of the calf's mouth might be

regarded as a source of impurity ; it is with a view to preclude this notion that we have the present text.

The dog itself is not pure ; but it is to be regarded as pure when in the course of hunting, it catches the deer—(129).

## VERSE (130).

**THE FLESH OF THE ANIMAL KILLED BY DOGS MANU HAS DECLARED TO BE PURE ; AS ALSO THAT OF THE ANIMAL KILLED BY OTHER CARNIVOROUS ANIMALS AND BY THE CHĀṆḌĀLA AND OTHER LOW CASTES.—(130).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

In the preceding verse—'the dog is pure in the catching of deer'—all that was meant was that in the act of catching deer, the dog is pure ; while the present verse goes into further details and declares the purity of what has been killed by the dog, as also of that killed by others with the stroke of sticks &c. Hence it is only the latter part of the verse that lays down something new.

'*Carnivorous animals*'—the kite, the jackal and the rest.

'*Chāṇḍāla and others*';—'and others' is meant to include the *Shvāpada* and people of that class.

'*Low castes*';——the *Nisāda*, the *Vyādha* and others, who live by killing animals.—(130).

## VERSE (131).

**THE CAVITIES THAT ARE ABOVE THE NAVEL ARE ALL PURE ; THOSE THAT ARE BELOW IT ARE IMPURE ; AS ALSO ARE ALL EXCRETIONS DROPPED FROM THE BODY.—(131).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The term '*kha*' stands for *organ* ; hence the *organs of action* also become included ; and thus taking the two feet, the plural number becomes justified in the phrase '*those that are below it are impure.*'

This explanation (by which the lower organs are all made *impure*) is not right; as it is contrary to what has gone in the first half. Therein it has been declared that the purity of those above the navel is of a higher grade and superior: and this could have a meaning only if the lower ones also were *pure*; for what is *white* cannot be called *more black*.

Further, the term '*kha*' does not signify the *organ*, it only signifies the *cavity* or *hole*. It is for this reason that the organs have been spoken of as '*saptashirṣanyaḥ*', 'having seven seats' (the cavities of the two ears, two eyes, two nostrils and the mouth). There are two 'cavities' below the navel; but the plural number has been used on account of the male and female generative organs being regarded as distinct.

According to this, there would be no uncleanliness of the hand involved in touching the inside of the mouth;—but only if it does not come into contact with the phlegm or other things that may be there. So, that if the hand does become contaminated with some such defiling substance, the mouth shall not be touched by it—(131).

## VERSE (132).

FLIES, WATER-DROPS, SHADOW, THE COW, THE HORSE, THE SUN'S RAYS, DUST, EARTH, AIR AND FIRE—SHOULD BE REGARDED AS PURE TO THE TOUCH.—(132).

### *Bhaṣya.*

'*Flies*'.—all sweat-born insects.

The '*cow*' includes the goat and sheep.

The '*horse*' includes the elephant and the mule.

The '*sun*' includes all luminous bodies.

'*Vipruṣaḥ*', '*water-drops*'—such drops of water as are invisible and can be felt only by touch.

'*Shadow*'—of the *Chāṇḍāla* and other unclean things.

'*Earth*'—in contact with, or walked over by, the Chāṇḍāla and the like—is pure. In other cases its sweeping has been prescribed.

The flies &c. mentioned here, even though coming into contact with ordure and other unclean things, do not become sources of defilement.

Another Smṛti-text says—'Goats and horses are pure in their mouths ; cows are pure except in their mouths; cats and mongoose are touchable,—as also other auspicious birds and animals'.—(132).

## VERSE (133).

FOR THE CLEANSING OF THE EJECTORS OF URINE AND FAECES, EARTH AND WATER SHOULD BE USED, AS MUCH AS MAY BE NECESSARY ; AS ALSO IN THE TWELVE CLEANSINGS OF THE BODILY EXCRETIONS. —(133).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The impurity of the bodily excretions having been asserted in 131, the present verse proceeds to lay down directions for their cleansing.

'*Ejectors of urine and faeces*'—*i. e.* the organs by which these are passed,—*i. e.* the Anus &c. ;—for the cleansing of these —one should '*use earth and water, as much as may be necessary*' ; *i. e.* not minding any restrictions as to the number (of washings and rubbings), one should go on taking up as much water and earth as may be necessary for the total removal of smells and stains.

'*Bodily*'—proceeding from the body,—'*excretions*'—which are sources of impurity. In connection with the purifications necessitated by these also, earth and water are to be used as much as may be necessary. In another *Smṛti* we read—'In the case of the former six excretions both earth and water should be used ; in the case of the latter six one is purified even by the use of water only'.

In connection with phlegm &c. it is thus declared in another *Smṛti*—'The viscid excretion from the nose is called *Phlegm*' ; and since this occurs among the latter group of six, for cleansing it earth need not be used at all.—(133).

## VERSE (134).

FAT, SEMEN, BLOOD, MARROW, URINE, ORDURE, NASAL EXCRETION, EAR-WAX, PHLEGM, TEARS, RHEUM OF THE EYES AND PERSPIRATION,—THESE TWELVE ARE THE 'EXCRETIONS' OF HUMAN BEINGS.—(134).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The twelve 'excretions' or 'impurities' are here indicated.

'*Human beings*' includes all *five-nailed* animals. As regards dogs and jackals, their excretions are impure by reason of their own untouchability.

'Urine and ordure'—of all animals, except those of the goat, the sheep, the cow and the horse.—(134).

## VERSE (135).

ONE WHO DESIRES CLEANLINESS SHOULD APPLY EARTH—ONCE TO THE URINARY ORGAN, THRICE TO THE ANUS, TEN TIMES TO ONE HAND AND SEVEN TIMES TO BOTH HANDS.—(135).

### *Bhāṣya.*

After the passing of urine and fæces, for the cleansing of the urinary organ, earth should be applied to it once.

In another *Smṛti* it has been laid down that one should take as much earth mixed with water as can be contained in one hand. What I assert is that in view of what has been said regarding the using of as much earth and water as may be necessary, the proper quantity would be what is stated in the present text. Some people quote, in this connection, the following saying—"The hand being filled up, the first (and largest) measure of it is called *Prasṛti*, the second is half of it; and the third part of it is called *mṛttikā*.' But this measure applies to the case of anus-cleansing only. In all other cases, as much is to be used as may be necessary.

In the case of a single evacuation also, the number of applications is to be as here prescribed ; and what is prescribed is the repetition of the act (of rubbing and washing).

There is a distinction among the various kinds of 'earth', just as there is among the various kinds of the 'cow' and other things. In present connection, for instance, it has been declared that 'earth should be got from a place far removed from an ant-hill, as also from the stables' and so forth. No account need be taken however of the distinction into 'white', 'black', 'red' and so forth.

'*Who desires*'—who wishes.—(135).

## VERSE (136).

SUCH IS THE PURIFICATION FOR HOUSEHOLDERS ; DOUBLE OF THIS FOR STUDENTS, TREBLE FOR HERMITS, AND QUADRUPLE FOR RENUNCIATES.—(136).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The rules regarding Purification vary with the stages of life. For those who do not belong to any of these stages, the only rule is that as much earth and water shall be used as may be necessary. The same holds good for the *Shūdra* also, who is entitled to observe the rules regarding the stage of the Householder ; so that he also has to observe the same number of applications.—(136).

## VERSE (137).

HAVING PASSED URINE OR FAECES, AND SIPPED WATER, ONE SHOULD TOUCH WITH WATER THE CAVITIES ; ALSO WHEN HE MAY BE GOING TO READ THE VEDA, AND ALWAYS WHEN GOING TO TAKE FOOD.—(137).

### *Bhāṣya.*

Having '*passed*'—i. e., cleansed away according to the aforesaid directions,—all taint of urine &c., from the urinary organ,

etc. ;—'*and sipped water,*'—'*one should touch with water the cavities*'.

'*Also when he may be going to read the Veda*'—*i. e.*, according to the course of Vedic study prescribed in Discourse II.

In accordance with its primary signification, the word '*kṛtvā*', '*having passed*', appears to mean 'having evacuated'; and the meaning is that—'after having passed urine and faeces and washed the anus and the urinary organ, one should sip water'.

'*Also when going to read the Veda*;'—the sipping of water has been prescribed as a necessary duty in connection with the course of Vedic study, under 2·70. What is prescribed here is meant for all sorts of reading of the Veda—either by one who is *teaching* it, or *reading* it. In other cases, people are said to be 'reciting' the Veda (*udāharantaḥ*). The meaning is that after having done other secular acts, one should not pronounce the words of the Veda, without having sipped water.

'*Also when going to take food.*' (137).

## VERSE (138).

DESIRING BODILY PURIFICATION, ONE SHOULD SIP WATER THRICE ; THEN HE SHOULD TWICE WIPE HIS MOUTH ; BUT THE WOMAN AND THE SHŪDRA SHOULD EACH DO IT ONCE ONLY.—(138).

### *Bhāṣya.*

This is the reiteration (of a former injunction), for the purpose of enjoining what is necessary for the woman and the *Shūdra*. Though what is said here has been already declared before, yet it is repeated here for the sake of women and *Shūdras*.

Some people explain this text as follows :—According to the rule that 'the Shūdra is purified by touching water', all that the ordinary Shūdra is to do is to touch water ; hence washing and touching of the ear, etc., that are understood as applying to the

*Shūdra*, are regarded as pertaining to the better class of *Shūdras*. As regards women,—the general rule being that 'the Brāhmaṇa is purified by water reaching the heart &c., &c.' (2. 62), where the different castes are specified, it would seem as if all that is prescribed for males is to be done by females also ; and it is with a view to preclude this notion that we have the present text.

'*Desiring bodily purification*';—this indicates that if one is quite clean when going to read or to take food, he need not necessarily repeat the acts *thrice* ; nor need there be *washing*;—all that need be done is the sipping of some quantity of water, and the touching of the organs ; and not all the details that have been laid down in connection with the 'sipping of water' prescribed among the duties of the Student.—(138).

## VERSE (139).

BY SHŪDRAS LIVING ACCORDING TO LAW, SHAVING SHOULD BE DONE EVERY MONTH ; THEIR MANNER OF PURIFICATION SHOULD BE LIKE THAT OF THE VAISHYA ; AND THEIR FOOD SHALL CONSIST OF THE LEAVINGS OF TWICE-BORN MEN.—(139).

### *Bhāṣya*

A general rule of conduct is here laid down for the better class of *Shūdras*.

'*Living according to law* ;'—*i.e.* attending on twice-born men and performing the great sacrifices. By these '*shaving*'—of the head—shall be done '*every month*'. The Genitive in *Shūdrāṇām* has the sense of the Instrumental. Or, in as much as *shūdras* are entirely dependent upon Brahmaṇas their shaving shall be got done by these latter ; and in this case the root '*kṛ*,' which has several meanings, is to be taken in the sense of *advising*.

The details of the manner of purification—in connection with births, deaths and the rest—should be like those of the *Vaishya*.

'*Their food shall consist of the leavings of twice-born men.*'—This has been already explained before.—(139).

## VERSE (140).

**DROPS FROM THE MOUTH, IF THEY DO NOT REACH THE BODY, DO NOT MAKE ONE IMPURE; NOR THE HAIRS OF THE BEARD THAT ENTER THE MOUTH; NOR WHAT ADHERES TO THE TEETH.—(140).**

### *Bhaṣhya.*

In the text—'on having spat and on having told a lie &c.' (5.144)—it has been laid down that on spitting one should sip water; which indicates that until one has sipped water, he remains impure. Drops issuing from the mouth would also be a form of 'spitting;; so that the issuing of drops of water from the mouth standing on the same footing as the spitting of phlegm, it might be thought that it should necessitate the sipping of water. With a veiw to this contingency, the author has added the present verse.

'*Mukhyaḥ*'—produced in, or issuing from, the mouth;—such '*drops*' do not make one impure, if they do not fall upon the body.

"But it has been already declared that drops are pure (5-132.)"

But that was with reference to things other than bodily excretions. That this was meant there is clearly indicated by the present verse; which makes it clear that *all kinds of drops* were not meant when they were declared to be pure.

'*Shmashruṇi*'—hairs of the beard,—'*that enter the mouth*'—'do not make one impure'; this has to be construed with the present phrase; so that they do become the cause of some slight evil effects (even though they do not make the man impure).

So also '*what adheres to the teeth.*' In connection with this we have greater details in another *Smṛti text*—'What adheres to the teeth is like the teeth, except what is touched by the tongue;—some say that this is so before it falls off from the teeth;—what falls off is to be treated as saliva;—the man becomes pure by swallowing it.' (*Gautama* 1-38 to 40.) 'Those that fall off'—*i. e.* without being touched by the tongue: since the touch of the tongue has been declared to be not pure.—(140).

## VERSE (141).

**The drops that touch the feet of one who is helping others to wash should be regarded as on the same footing as those on the ground; and he is not rendered impure by them.—(141)**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Helping others to wash,*'—*i. e.* offering water to other persons.

The meaning is as follows :—When one is pouring water for another person and the latter begins to sip water, if drops of water flowing out from between the fingers of that person happen to fall on the ground and rising from it, touch the feet of the man who is offering the water,—that man is not made impure by them.

'*Those on the ground*'.—The drops of water falling from the hand of the washing person, though unclean, should be regarded to be as clean as small quantities of water collected on clean ground.

'*By them,*'—touched, the man does not become impure.—(141)

## VERSE (142).

**He who, with some substance in hand, happens to be touched by an unclean object, becomes pure by washing, without laying down that substance.—(142).**

*Bhāṣya*

The man who has committed something necessitating 'washing' is called 'unclean'. For instance, one who has passed urine or evacuated his bowels, and has not performed the purificatory ablutions ; or when he has been defiled by the contamination of some unclean thing.

'*With some substance in hand* ;'—the person who is holding in his hand some thing to be eaten or some metal or cloth, &c., is called '*dravyahastaḥ*', the use of the compound being similar to such compounds as '*khaḍgahastaḥ*'.

If such a person happens to be touched, then '*without laying down*'—without setting aside—'*that substance*'—he should wash.

"How can the man wash, when he has a substance in his hand ? The procedure of washing has been described as 'washing the hand upto the wrists and so forth."

In answer to this some people offer the following explanation :—What is meant by the man being 'with some substance in hand' is that he should have the substance somewhere on his body, not necessarily in his hands. Similarly in the case of impurity also if the man become defiled, the contamination affects substances that may be lying on his shoulders also. Similarly purification is obtained by washing. Hence the man should perform the washing by removing the substance from his hand and keeping it on his fore-arm, in his lap or in some other part part of his body. The meaning is that just as the impurity of the man makes the substance impure so also the purification of the man renders the substance pure.

Gautama has declared that—'The man with a substance in hand, happening to become unclean, should wash after *having kept away the substance*' (1.28). This they explain as follows : Though both (*washing* and *keeping away*) are spoken of together, yet it is the *keeping away* that is meant to be enjoined by this text, otherwise all that would be necessary in the circumstances would be the purifying of both himself and the substance ; and where would there be any necessity for the *keeping away* of the substance ? Hence, since, in the absence of the text quoted, there would be no possibility of the *keeping away*, this text must be taken as meant only for enjoining this latter. "How then would the substance be purified ?" It would be purified by being held by the pure person,—or by the 'washing' prescribed by another *Smṛti-text* : viz : 'while dealing with foods and drinks

if one happens to touch an unclean thing, he should wash the article and then sip water: in this manner it does not become defiled.'

"In the present verse nothing is said regarding the necessity of having to keep away the substance, and yet if it were to be taken as implied, the phrase '*without laying down*' would be absolutely futile."

As a matter of fact, the same purpose runs through all *Smṛtis*; and yet from the direct words of the texts in the present instance we understand that there is a clear difference of opinion (between Manu and Gautama). So that the two should be regarded as optional alternatives; and the rule determining the option would be that—(a) if the substance is a heavy one it shall be laid aside, otherwise it may be kept on the body,—or (b) when the man himself eats the food (carried), or he touches a large quantity of unclean things, or is touched by a person who should have washed but has not yet washed,—in all these cases the touching of the substance would be a source of uncleanliness (142)

## VERSE (143).

HAVING VOMITTED OR PURGED, ONE SHOULD BATHE AND THEN EAT CLARIFIED BUTTER. AFTER HAVING EATEN HIS FOOD, HE SHOULD ONLY SIP WATER. FOR ONE WHO HAS COPULATED BATHING HAS BEEN ORDAINED.—(143).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'Vomitting' and 'purging' are wellknown. The man who throws out the food that he has eaten is said to have '*vomitted*'. The man the number of whose motions has gone beyond the number *eight*,—either through disease, or through his having taken *Harītakī* or some such purgative—is said to have '*purged*.'

These two persons should first of all bathe.

Then, they should eat clarified butter and then any other kind of food; and the injunction of eating clarified butter is meant to be a

prohibition of other kinds of food. Just as in the case of expiatory rites, ashes and water are regarded as means of purification, so in the case in question, is the eating of clarified butter.

'*After having taken food he should only sip water.*'—After he has taken his food, if he happen to vomit or purge on the same day, then he should do the sipping of water only, and not bathing and eating of clarified butter.

Others have taken this independently by itself, to mean that 'after having taken his food he should sip water',—this being a reiteration of the water-sipping that has already been prescribed as to be done after meals.

'*One who has copulated,*'—i. e., one who has had sexual intercourse with a woman,—becomes pure by bathing. (143).

## VERSE (144).

ONE SHOULD SIP WATER AFTER HAVING SLEPT, AFTER HAVING SNEEZED, AFTER HAVING EATEN, AFTER HAVING SPAT, AFTER HAVING TOLD A LIE, AFTER HAVING DRUNK WATER, AND WHEN GOING TO READ THE VEDA, EVEN THOUGH HE MAY BE QUITE PURE.—(144).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*After having sneezed,*'—after having done *sneezing*, which is the name given to the sound that emanates involuntarily from the nostrils of a man moved by internal wind.

'*Even though he may be quite pure.*'—This is to be construed only with the phrase '*when going to read the Veda*'; the meaning being that even though he be quite pure, he should, when going to read the Veda, read it after having sipped water; i.e., the water sipping-should be done as part of the procedure laid down in connection with Vedic study; while after *sleep* &c., the water-sipping shall be done *once* only.

As for the following declaration—'Having slept, having sneezed, having eaten, having drunk water, the wise man shall sip water and then again sip water; as also after having spat and told lies',—this has to be construed to mean that 'having sipped water, he should eat and then sip water again.' In a case however where it is clearly stated that 'one should sip water *twice*, the act has to be repeated consecutively.' (144)

---

## SECTION. (14)
## Duties of Women.

### VERSE (145).

**THUS HAS THE WHOLE RULE REGARDING CLEANLINESS AND PURIFICATION OF SUBSTANCES FOR ALL CASTES BEEN EXPOUNDED TO YOU; LISTEN NOW TO THE DUTIES OF WOMEN. (145).**

*Bhāṣya.*

The first three quarters sum up the section dealing with Purifications; and the fourth states briefly what is going to be explained.

The term '*rule regarding cleanliness*', though a general one, yet, by reason of the proximity of the term 'purification of substances', is to be taken as standing for purification other than this latter; just as in the case of the expression '*go-balīvarda*' (the term '*go*' stands for the *cow* as distinguished from the *bull*, *balīvarda*).

'*Duties of women*,'—such duties as have to be performed exclusively by women; those that are common to men and women—such as the performance of sacrifices and the like—are not described here.—(145).

### VERSE (146).

**WHETHER SHE BE A CHILD, OR A YOUNG WOMAN, OR AN AGED WOMAN, SHE SHOULD NOT DO ANY ACT BY HERSELF, EVEN IN THE HOUSE.—(146).**

*Bhāṣya.*

The sense of the teaching is that under no circumstances should there be independence for women. The mention of the various stages of her age, is meant only to indicate where she has to be

dependent upon others, and no significance is meant to attach to it.—(146).

## VERSE (147).

IN CHILDHOOD SHE SHOULD REMAIN UNDER THE CONTROL OF HER FATHER, IN YOUTH UNDER THAT OF HER HUSBAND, AND ON THE HUSBAND'S DEATH UNDER THAT OF HER SONS ; THE WOMAN SHOULD NEVER HAVE RECOURSE TO INDEPENDENCE.—(147).

### *Bhāṣya:*

It has been declared thus—' In the absence of any *sapiṇḍa-relation* of her husband, some one on her father's side shall be the woman's protector ; on the total extinction of both families, the King has been declared to be the woman's guardian.'

This refers to a case where the husband is no more. (147).

## VERSE (148).

SHE SHOULD NOT SEEK SEPARATION FROM HER FATHER, HUSBAND OR SONS ; BY SEPARATING, THE WOMAN WOULD RENDER BOTH FAMILIES DISREPUTABLE.—(148).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The ground for ' disrepute ' would consist in the irregularity of her life ; this is what is meant by the words '*would render both families disreputable.*' This passage has to be explained as ' By living or going about in other villages, apart from the persons mentioned, &c., &c.'—(148).

## VERSE (149).

SHE SHOULD BE ALWAYS CHEERFUL AND ALERT IN HOUSEHOLD-WORK ; SHE SHOULD HAVE THE UTENSILS WELL-CLEANED AND IN SPENDING SHE SHOULD BE CLOSE-FISTED.—(149).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The term ' *sadā* ', like the term ' *nitya* ', signifies *constantly*.

'*Cheerful*'—always smiling. Even though elsewhere she might have had reasons for anger and sorrow, yet when she sees her husband, she should show that she is happy, by means of a cheerful face, smiles, sweet words and so forth. This advice is meant for the married as well as the unmarried girl.

'*Alert in household-work*,'—in laying by and spending money in such religious acts as bathing and the like. What is 'household-work' has been explained in 9·11. In all that she should be '*alert*', expert. That is to say, she should be able to cook food quickly and so forth.

'*She should have the utensils well cleaned.*'—Vessels used in the house, such as the jar, the tub and so forth, are called '*utensils*'; and all these should be '*well cleaned*', thoroughly washed and nice-looking.

'*In spending*'—wealth, over the feeding of friends, relations and guests,—'*she should be close-fisted*'—not too liberal; that is, she should not spend too much.

'*Susaṁskṛtopaskarayā*' is a *Bahuvrīhi* compound—'she whose *upaskaras*, utensils, are *susaṁskṛta*, 'well-cleaned.' Similarly '*mukta-hastayā*' means 'she whose *hasta*, fist, is *mukta*, open'; and this is compounded with the negative particle. But apart from its literal meaning, the word '*mukta-hasta*' denotes, by convention, *liberality*.—(149).

## VERSE (150).

HIM TO WHOM HER FATHER MAY GIVE HER,—OR HER BROTHER WITH THE FATHER'S PERMISSION,—SHE SHALL ATTEND UPON AS LONG AS HE LIVES, AND SHALL NOT DISREGARD HIM WHEN HE IS DEAD.—(150).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Or her brother with the father's permission.*'—Just as the brother is entitled to give away the girl only with the father's

permission, so also is the father entitled to give her away only with the consent of her mother, though the present text speaks of the father as if he were free to give her away without consulting anyone else. And the reason for this lies in the fact that in all things the husband and wife have joint title, and the daughter belongs to both the parents. In fact in Discourse IX it is pointed out that if the father is not alive, the girl may be given away by the mother. The child is born of both parents, and on this rests their right over her; hence it is only right that both should consult each other.

'*Attend upon*'—Serve.

'*When he is dead, she shall not disregard him.*'—'Disregarding' means *not minding*. The meaning is that she should not behave as if she were her own mistress; just as during her husband's life-time she is dependent upon him, so after his death also, she should ever remain subservient to him. Since it has been declared that—'the fact that she has been given away constitutes the ground of his ownership over her',—as soon as the father gives away his daughter, his ownership over her ceases, and then comes into existence the ownership of the man to whom she is given away. This 'giving away' happens not only at the time of marriage, but even at the time at which the bridegroom is chosen.

"For what purpose then is the *marriage* performed?"
[The answer is given in the next verse.]

## VERSE (151).

**AT THEIR WEDDING, THE SACRIFICE TO PRAJĀPATI, WHICH IS THE MEANS OF SECURING WELFARE, IS PERFORMED FOR THE PURPOSE OF PROCURING GOOD FORTUNE; IT IS THE GIVING AWAY THAT IS THE SOURCE OF OWNERSHIP.—(151).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Good fortune*' consists in the accomplishment of the desired

object; what brings about this is said to be 'for that purpose;' it is for this that there is 'sacrifice to Prajāpati.' The term '*maṅgalārtham*' is in the neuter form, because it is an adverb.

'*Svastyayanam*' is that by which '*svasti*', *welfare*—'*īyate*',—*is secured*; *i.e.* whereby the person's loved objects do not become lost.

'*Their*'—of women.

'*At wedding*', sacrifice' is offered to the deity Prajāpati. This refers to certain offerings of butter that are prescribed as to be made at marriage with the *mantras* '*Prajāpati* &c.' This is only illustrative: it indicates the other deities also—e. g. Pūṣan, Varuṇa and Aryaman. Indicative also of these other deities are such mantra-texts as—'*Pusannu dēvam varuṇannu dēvam, &c., &c.*'

What the present text means is that even without the marriage, ownership is produced by the *giving away*; and no significance is meant to be attached to the statement that the marriage-sacrifices are performed only for the purpose of securing good fortune; because 'marriage' has been declared to consist in the 'taking of a wife'; and even though there may be ownership, the girl does not become 'wife' until the marriage is performed.—(151).

## VERSE (152).

**THE HUSBAND WHO HAS PERFORMED THE MANTRIC SACRAMENTAL RITES FOR WOMEN IS THE IMPARTER OF HAPPINESS TO THEM BOTH IN SEASON AND OUT OF SEASON, HERE AS WELL AS IN THE NEXT WORLD.—(152).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The husband is '*the imparter of happiness*' to his wife '*out of season*' also,—in accordance with the rule 'one may have recourse to his wife at all times, except on the days expressly prohibited.'

'*Mantric sacramental rite*'—i. e., the marriage-ceremony ; he who has performed this is called the '*Mantrasaṃskārakṛt.*'

'*In the next world.*'—Since it is only along with her husband that the wife is entitled to the performance of religious acts, and the acquiring of their results,—the husband is called '*the imparter of happiness in the next world.*'—(152).

## VERSE (153).

**BE HE ILL-MANNERED OR OF LICENTIOUS HABITS OR DESTITUTE OF GOOD QUALITIES,—THE HUSBAND SHOULD ALWAYS BE ATTENDED UPON LIKE A GOD BY THE TRUE WIFE.—(153).**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Ill-mannered.*'—Addicted to gambling and other evil habits.

'*Of licentious habits*'—whose nature is prone to be voluptuous.

'*Destitute of good qualities*'—devoid of learning, wealth and other good qualities.

'*Should be attended upon*'—served.—(153).

## VERSE (154)

**THERE IS NO SEPARATE SACRIFICING FOR WOMEN, NO OBSERVANCES, NO FASTINGS; IT IS BY MEANS OF SERVING HER HUSBAND THAT SHE BECOMES EXALTED IN HEAVEN.—(154).**

*Bhāṣya.*

It has been more than once explained that women separated from their husbands are not entitled to the performance of sacrifices. From this it follows that, when going to keep an observance or to take to a fast, she should obtain his permission.

'*Observance*' here stands for the vow to give up meat, wine and such things ; it does not stand for the *Kṛchchhra* and other penances ; because the repeating of *mantras* and offering of libations form part of these latter, and to these the woman is not

entitled. It will not be right to argue here that—"it would be possible for the woman to perform the *Kṛchchhra* and other penances, omitting the mantras and the libations" ;—because it can never be right to abandon, at one's will, the details of a sacrificial performance ; specially as it is only the act complete in all its details that is regarded as leading to prosperity and success. Nor does the dropping or adding of details depend upon the varying capacities of performers. Then again, a woman has always available men of her own caste, among the three higher castes, who could perform for her the said acts. For these reasons neither the woman nor the *Shūdra*, desiring her own welfare, is entitled to the performance of the *Kṛchchhra* and other penances. We shall explain this in detail under the *Expiatory Rites*.

'*Fasting*'—living without food, giving up eating for one day, two days or such limited periods.

'*Serves*'—attends upon.—(154).

## VERSE (155).

THE GOOD WIFE, DESIROUS OF REACHING HER HUSBAND'S REGIONS, SHOULD NEVER DO ANYTHING THAT MAY BE DISAGREEABLE TO HER HUSBAND, ALIVE OR DEAD.—(155).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Her husband's regions*'—The regions to which she has become entitled by the performance of religious acts in the company of her husband.

'*Being desirous*' of reaching those regions,-'*she should never do anything that might be disagreeable*' ; i. e., such acts as intercourse with other men and so forth, *which have been forbidden by the Scriptures.* It is not possible for anyone to ascertain what is agreeable or disagreeable to the dead person ; it is not necessary that what was agreeable to the living would be agreeable to the dead also ; because notions of pleasure and displeasure vary with the varying conditions of men. From all this it follows that what is

meant by 'disagreeable' here is that 'freedom of life' which has been forbidden for women ;—and this the good wife should avoid.—(155).

## VERSE (156).

WELL MIGHT SHE MACERATE HER BODY BY MEANS OF PURE FLOWERS, ROOTS AND FRUITS ; BUT SHE SHOULD NOT EVEN MENTION THE NAME OF ANOTHER MAN, AFTER HER HUSBAND IS DEAD—(156).

### *Bhāṣya.*

What has been said in the preceding verse is explained more specifically in the present verse.

As in the case of men, so in that of women also suicide is forbidden. As for what Aṅgiras has said—'they should die after their husband',—this also is not an obligatory act, and so it is not that it must be done. Because in connection with it there is an eulogium bestowed upon the results proceeding from such suicide. Thus then, the performing of the act being possible only for one who is desirous of obtaining the said result, the act stands on the same footing as the *Shyēna* sacrifice. That is, in connection with the *Shyēna* sacrifice we have the Vedic text—'one may kill living beings by means of the Shyēna sacrifice,'—and this makes the performance of this sacrifice possible ; but only for one who has become blinded by extreme hatred ; so that when the man does perform the act, it does not become regarded as 'Dharma,' a 'meritorious act' ; exactly in the same manner, when the widow happens to have a very strong desire for the results accruing from the act of suicide, it is open to her to disobey the prohibition of it and kill herself ; but in so doing she cannot be regarded as acting according to the scriptures. From this it is clear that the act of killing herself after her husband is clearly forbidden for the woman. Further, in view of the distinct Vedic text—'one shall not die before the span of his life is run out'—being contradicted by the Smṛti-text of Aṅgiras, this latter is open to being assumed to have some other meaning. Just as in the case of the Smṛti rule

'one should take the final bath after having read the Veda',—the injunction of the bath, as pertaining to one who has not yet studied the meaning of the Vedic texts, has been taken as having a different meaning.

It may happen so that the widow is childless, has not inherited any property from her husband and has to maintain herself by spinning or some such work; and she does not wish to marry again, because her husband was very dear to her and any disregard for him would be against the scriptures and is even distinctly forbidden; so that knowing that in abnormal times of distress all transgressions are permissible,—as was the case when Vishvāmitra partook of the dog's thigh—she might, being pinched for a living, be tempted to some transgression. It is with a view to such a case that the author has put forward the present text.

Under the stated circumstances '*well might*' the woman '*macerate*'—reduce—'*her body*'—'*by means of flowers, roots and fruits*';—i. e., she might maintain herself upon these, according as they may be available; '*but she shall not even mention the name of another man*'—by saying to him 'you are my husband to-day'.

As for the text—'When the husband is lost or killed or become a renunciate, or is found to be impotent, or become an outcast,—under these five difficulties, another husband is sanctioned for women' (Parāshara —what is meant is that she may for the purpose of obtaining a living by doing such work of as that of the *maid* &c., have recourse to another man *as her protector*,—this being the literal meaning of the term '*pati*'.

This shall be fully dealt with under discourse IX.

This rule also is applicable to the woman whose husband has gone out on a journey.

The use of the term '*kāmam*'—'well might'—is meant to indicate the author's displeasure at the course of conduct suggested; the sense being—'the emaciating of the body is bad, and worse still is the act of having intercourse with another man.'—(156).

## VERSE (157).

**Till her death, she should remain patient, self-controlled and chaste,—seeking that most excellent merit that accrues to women having a single husband. (157).**

*Bhaṣya.*

What has gone before is further explained.

'*Till her death she should remain chaste*' ;—i. e., even under the said distressing conditions she shall not seek to maintain herself by misbehaviour.

'*Patient*'—disregarding the troubles caused by her circumstances, she shall not allow her chastity to be disfigured by hunger ; she shall not allow her mind to be disturbed by the waves of passion.

The compound '*ekapatnī*' may be expounded either as 'those who have a single husband,' or 'those who are wives of single men' ; such women, as Sāvitrī and the rest ;—the 'merits' accruing to such women ; which brings such results as the capacity to confer boons and pronounce curses ;—'*seeking*' such merit, the woman should not renounce chastity.

Under the said circumstances, if, by living upon fruits and roots, she happen to die,—there would be nothing wrong in this.—(157).

## VERSE (158).

**Many thousands of unmarried Brāhmaṇa students have gone to heaven, without having perpetuated their race—(168).**

*Bhāṣya.*

The preceding verse has prohibited intercourse with another man for the purpose of maintenance ; the present verse prohibits it, if betaken to for the purpose of continuing the race.

It has been declared that 'there is no heaven for the childless

person ('aputrasya').' But in this sentence no significance attaches to the masculine gender used. In view of this text a widow might be prompted to take to another husband; and it is for meeting such a case that we have the present text.

'Many thousands of unmarried students'—life-long celebates—'*have gone to heaven*'—do go to heaven.

As for the '*Niyoga*' that is prescribed for the widow in Discourse IX, that refers to a case where she is commanded to do so by her elders and not where she herself desires offspring.

'*Without having perpetuated their race*'—The begetting of offspring is for the purpose of perpetuating one's race; and they did not do it; i. e., they did not beget children.

'*Many, anēkāni*'.—In a negative compound the latter term forms the predominant factor: hence the use of the plural ending is open to question. Even though the compound contains the *negation of unity*, yet plurality is inadmissible. What the word signifies therefore is a very large number, though its exact nature is not expressed, and the character of *unity* is abandoned. Just as it is in the case of such words as '*modat*'(?), '*grāmaḥ*' and the like which denote *multitude*. Says the author of the *Chūrṇikā*—'The form *anēkasmāt* becomes justified',—where he has declared the correctness of the use of the singular number.

Or, the term '*anēka*' may signify 'alone, helpless': the meaning being 'the men who had become helpless by the death of their wife.'—(150).

## VERSE (159).

**On the death of her husband, the good wife who remains firm, goes to heaven, even though childless; just like those students.—(159).**

### *Bhāṣya*

The same thing is repeated again, for the purpose of strengthening our conviction.—(159).

## VERSE (160).

**THAT WOMAN, HOWEVER, WHO, FROM A LONGING FOR A CHILD, DISREGARDS HER HUSBAND, BRINGS DISGRACE TO HERSELF IN THIS WORLD AND FALLS OFF FROM HER PLACE IN THE OTHER WORLD.—(160).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

Her longing being—'may a child be born to me'; this is the '*longing for a child.*' From this cause if the woman disregards her husband and becomes wedded to another man, she brings to herself '*disgrace*'—bad name—'*in this world*'; and never reaches heaven.—(160).

---

## VERSE (161.)

**WHAT IS BORN OF ANOTHER IS NOT A 'CHILD'; NOR IS ONE BEGOTTEN ON ANOTHER MAN'S WIFE; FOR GOOD WOMEN A SECOND HUSBAND IS NOWHERE ORDAINED.—(161).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The child that is born for her from another man is not her 'child'; similarly what is begotten by a man on another man's wife is not his child.—(161.)

## VERSE (162).

**SHE, WHO, HAVING ABANDONED HER OWN HUSBAND WHO IS INFERIOR, HAS RECOURSE TO ANOTHER PERSON WHO IS SUPERIOR, BECOMES CONTEMPTIBLE IN THIS WORLD AND IS CALLED A 'REMARRIED WOMAN.'—(162).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

It is not only contempt and disgrace that is hers; but something more (described in the next verse).—(162).

## VERSE (163).

THE WOMAN, WHO, THROUGH FAILURE IN HER DUTY TO HER HUSBAND, BECOMES AN OBJECT OF CONTEMPT IN THE WORLD, COMES TO BE BORN AS A JACKAL AND IS TORMENTED BY FOUL DISEASES.—(163).

*Bhāṣya.*

For these reasons, the woman shall not fail in her duty to her husband,—either with a view to worldly or heavenly joys.—(163).

## VERSES (164—165)

SHE, WHO DOES NOT FAIL IN HER DUTY TO HER HUSBAND, HAVING HER THOUGHT, SPEECH AND BODY WELL-CONTROLLED, REACHES HER HUSBAND'S REGIONS ; AND IS CALLED 'GOOD' BY ALL GENTLEMEN.—(164).

BY SUCH CONDUCT, THE WOMAN, HAVING HER THOUGHT, WORD AND BODY WELL-CONTROLLED, OBTAINS EXCELLENT FAME IN THIS WORLD, AND ALSO HER HUSBAND'S REGION IN THE OTHER WORLD.—(165).

*Bhāṣya.*

These verses sum up the duties of women ; and these duties are easily intelligible ; hence I have devoted no attention to the explanation of these.

The meaning of the teaching is as follows :—Though the man is permitted (in 167) to take to another wife, yet that does not permit of the woman taking another husband ; because according to the injunction—'she shall not disregard him when he is dead', there can be no possibility of her marrying again ; and by the assertion that 'even childless persons go to heaven' it is made clear that the bearing of children, even in times of distress, is forbidden. It is only in the *Smṛti* sanctioning '*Niyoga*' that this latter is permitted. Hence in view of these (prohibition and sanction) the two courses are regarded as optional alternatives ;

and between these two *Smṛtis* we cannot determine which is superior and which inferior: since one of them enjoins the bearing of children, and the other clearly forbids it. Hence by taking them as optional alternatives we make room for both—(164—165).

## VERSE (166).

**THE TWICE-BORN MAN, KNOWING THE LAW, SHOULD CREMATE THE WIFE OF HIS OWN CASTE,—WHO BEHAVES HERSELF IN THE SAID MANNER, AND DIES BEFORE HIM,—WITH THE SACRED FIRE AND ALONG WITH THE SACRIFICIAL IMPLEMENTS.—(166).**

*Bhāṣya.*

This verse reiterates what is already implied by the law.

In as much as she is a 'good' wife, it is only right that she should be cremated with the sacred *Agnihotra* fire; specially in view of the assertion—'on the death of the wife the Fires are not maintained'—(166).

## VERSE (167).

**HAVING, DURING THE LAST RITES, GIVEN AWAY THE SACRED FIRES TO HIS WIFE WHO DIED BEFORE HIM, HE MAY MARRY AGAIN AND KINDLE THE FIRES AGAIN.—(167).**

*Bhāṣya*

The present verse is added with a view to indicate the man's title to another marriage; i. e., an exception in favour of his wedding another wife; and it also serves to prohibit the man forthwith taking to the life of the Recluse or the Renunciate, as soon as he finds himself deprived of his help-mate;—and this because he has still got to fulfil certain duties. Says the *Shruti*—'He is abandoned by old age, or by the omission of his duties.'

Others say that a '*yadā*', 'when', should be supplied in this verse; so that there would be no incompatibility between this and the *Shruti* laying down life-long *Agnihotra*.—(167).

## SECTION (15)

### Conclusion.

### VERSE (168).

**IN THIS MANNER, ONE SHALL NOT OMIT THE FIVE SACRIFICES; AND DURING THE SECOND PART OF HIS LIFE, HE SHALL TAKE TO A WIFE AND DWELL IN THE HOUSE.—(168).**

*Bhāṣya.*

This verse sums up the Discourse.

The 'five sacrifices' are mentioned as including all duties.—(168).

END OF DISCOURSE V.

# DISCOURSE VI.

### Duties of the Hermit and the Renunciate.

### SECTION (1).

### Introductory.

### VERSE (1).

THE TWICE-BORN ACCOMPLISHED STUDENT, HAVING, IN THE AFORESAID MANNER, LIVED, ACCORDING TO LAW, THE LIFE OF THE HOUSEHOLDER, SHOULD DWELL IN THE FOREST, IN THE PROPER MANNER, SELF-CONTROLLED AND WITH HIS ORGANS UNDER SUBJECTION—(1).

*Bhāṣya.*

The term '*gṛhāshrama*' means that '*āshrama*', *life-stage* which is characterised by the '*gṛha*', *house*,—i. e. the *presence of the wife*.

Having '*lived*' there,—i. e. having duly fulfilled the duties of that stage of life—he should dwell in the forest. This is the injunction here set forth.

The affix in '*sthitvā*', 'having lived', indicates the priority of the Householder's life to that of the Hermit; and the meaning is that one should proceed from stage to stage in the right order; it is only one who has lived the Householder's life that is entitled to the forest-life of the Hermit.

What is said here is in accordance with the view that a man should pass through each and all the four stages. There is however the other view that from the life of the purely celebate student also one can proceed at once to the forest-life; as is going to be described later on.

'*With his organs under subjection*'—with his impurities washed off, his passions calmed down.

The phrases '*according to law*' and '*in the proper manner*' have been added only for the purpose of filling up the metre ; as we have already explained in several places.

All that is meant to be enjoined here is that 'having completed the Householder's life, he shall betake himself to the life in the forest.'—(1).

---

## SECTION (2).

### The Procedure to be adopted.

VERSE (2).

WHEN THE HOUSEHOLDER NOTICES HIS WRINKLES AND GREYNESS, AND SEES HIS CHILD'S CHILD,—THEN HE SHOULD RETIRE TO THE FOREST.—(2).

*Bhāṣya.*

It has been said before that the person who is entitled to the life of the Hermit is only one who has abandoned all longing for the objects of sense : and this is what the author is explaining now.

'*Wrinkles*'—Looseness of skin.

'*Greyness*'—the whiteness of the hair.

'*Child's child.*'—They explain this to mean 'son's son'. And cultured people have held that this rule does not apply if the man has only a son born to his daughter, or a daughter born to his son.

Others however have taken the 'greyness of hair' and 'birth of the grandchild' only as indicative of *old age*. So that even if an old man's hairs may not, for some reason, become grey, he should, at the approach of old age, retire to the forest. Just as the person who has got a son and has his hairs still black is entitled to the 'kindling of fire', so is the man who has got a grandson and has his head turned grey entitled to the Hermit's life. And in the former case also 'the birth of the son' and 'blackness of hair' are only indicative of a certain age.

Some people have taken the text to mean that 'one should retire into the forest *neither too early nor too late in life*.' But in is necessary to find out an authority for this.—(2).

## VERSE (3).

**Having given up cultivated food and all his belongings, he shall repair to the forest, either making over his wife to his sons, or along with her.—(3).**

*Bhāṣya.*

From this time onward he shall not eat any food consisting of barley, paddy and the like ;—this is what is meant by '*having given up*'. This is what has been described as 'living on roots.'

'*Belongings*'—Consisting of cows, houses, clothing, seats and beds, etc.

If the wife wishes it, then they should go away together ; otherwise he shall go alone. Others explain the text to mean that if the wife is still young he shall commit her to his sons, and if she is old, he is to take her with himself.

It is only when the wife is there that there can be any rule regarding her either being made over to the sons or going to the forest with her husband. If the wife has died, then also the man should retire to the forest, as declared by Āpastamba and others, in connection with the 'Re-kindling of Fire.'

Only that man can be a Hermit whose senses are not too mobile ; otherwise, he should take another wife ; such is the established rule.—(3).

## VERSE (4).

**Taking with him the Sacred Fire, as also all the ritualistic appurtenances of the Fire, the man shall go forth from the village to the forest and live there, with his senses under control.—(4).**

*Bhāṣya.*

The term '*agnihotra*' here stands for the *fires* themselves.

Taking with himself the Fires that had been kindled according to Shrauta rites, and also '*the ritualistic appurtenances of the Fire*'—in the shape of the *sruk*, the *srura* and the rest. The abandoning of all belongings having been laid down, the present text makes an exception in favour of those pertaining to the Fires—(4)

## SECTION (3)

## Details of the Hermit's Life.

### VERSE (5).

THESE SAME 'GREAT SACRIFICES' HE SHOULD OFFER, ACCORDING TO RULE, WITH VARIOUS KINDS OF PURE FOOD FIT FOR HERMITS, OR WITH HERBS, ROOTS AND FRUITS.—(5).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*These same*'—those that have been prescribed for the Householder;—'*he should offer*'—perform.

'*According to rule*';—this is a reiteration, for the purpose of filling up the metre.—(5).

### VERSE (6).

HE SHOULD WEAR EITHER SKIN OR A BIT OF CLOTH; HE SHALL BATHE IN THE EVENING, AS ALSO IN THE MORNING; HE SHALL ALWAYS WEAR MATTED LOCKS, AS ALSO BEARD, HAIR ON HIS BODY AND NAILS.—(6).

*Bhāṣya.*

*Skin*—of the bull, the deer and other such animals.

'*Chīra*'—a bit of cloth.

'*Evening*'—end of the day.

'*Morning*'—opening of the day.

This rule regarding bathing in the evening implies that the man is to eat at night only; because bathing after meals is forbidden.

This view, some say, is not right; because among the observances of the Accomplished Student, it is said that 'after taking his food he shall bathe' (which shows that bathing after meals is not entirely forbidden). In fact this bathing after meals is declared in the *Mahābhārata* as to be done by each and every person.

It is open to the Hermit to bathe thrice during the day—this being a matter of option.

'*Matted locks, beard, hairs on the body and nails*' ;—all this he shall not have cut.—(6)

## VERSE (7).

WHAT HE EATS, OUT OF THAT HE SHOULD MAKE THE OFFERINGS AND GIVE ALMS, ACCORDING TO HIS CAPACITY ; AND THOSE WHO COME TO HIS HERMITAGE HE SHOULD HONOUR WITH WATER, ROOTS AND FRUITS AND ALMS—(7).

*Bhāṣya.*

It has been said that 'food fit for hermits' should be used ; this consists of wild grains, such as *Nīvāra* and the rest, and of wild-growing herbs, etc. The term '*anna*', 'food', is generally used in the sense of some *preparation of grains*,—such as rice, fried flour, cake and so forth ; and it is for this reason that, though herbs, &c., also are 'food fit for hermits', they have been mentioned separately. 'Hermits' are ascetics, and their food is called 'food fit for hermits.' And what is meant (by verse 5) is that the man should perform the Five Sacrifices, which are duties related to cooking on the household fire. This might give rise to the notion that when the man lives upon ripe season-fruits (and does not cook his food) he should not offer the said sacrifices ; it is with a view to preclude such a notion that the Text adds—'*what he eats*'; the meaning is that whatever, in the shape of flour, &c., he eats, that he should offer to the best of his capacity.

'*Offerings*'—apart for the Agnihotra libations ; those that are laid down as to be made to '*Indra*' '*Indrapuruṣa*' and so forth.

In this view, there are no offerings poured into the fire,—they say.

But this is not right ; as the term '*bali*', 'offering', is a generic name for all kinds of oblations ; and hence it stands equally for those offered into the fire, and those not offered into the fire.

If the right view to take were this that 'one shall offer only what he eats;—and that also into the fire only,—and that offerings into the fire must consist of *cooked* food',—then the hermit would cook just that much herb, &c. as would be needed for the offerings, and he himself would eat the ripe fruits of the season. Even for one who lives upon season-fruits, it is necessary to offer the *Vaishvadēva* oblations into fire.

The compound in the second line is a copulative one, formed of '*ap*', 'water', and the rest; the meaning being that 'the traveller that happens to come to his hermitage he shall honour with water, roots, fruits and alms—consisting of *Nīvāra* and other grains'.—(7).

## VERSE (8).

HE SHOULD BE ALWAYS ENGAGED IN VEDIC STUDY, MEEK, CONCILIATORY, QUIET, EVER LIBERAL, NOT ACCEPTING ANY GIFTS, AND COMPASSIONATE TOWARDS ALL LIVING BEINGS.—(8).

### *Bhāṣya.*

This being a distinct stage of life, people might think that such duties as Vedic Study and the like, which pertain to other life-stages, should have to be omitted now; hence with a view to show that they do not cease, the Text has added—'*always engaged*'; and not as in the Householder's stage, during which the man being busy with his household work, their performance leaves no time for Vedic study and such duties.

'*Meek*'—endowed with humility; free from haughtiness.

'*Conciliatory*'—abounding in the friendly spirit; always saying what is agreeable and wholesome; ever ready to conciliate his neighbour.

'*Quiet*.'—Even when urged by others, he should not speak much of what may be irrelevant.

'*Ever liberal*'—in making gifts of water, fruits and roots and alms.

'*Not accepting any gifts*'—He should not beg anything for his medication or diet and such needs, from a person belonging to another stage of life and coming to see him.

'*Compassionate towards all living beings.*'—'Compassion' is *pity*. But even though he be compassionate, he should not, for the sake of any person, beg anything from another person.—(8).

## VERSE (9).

HE SHALL OFFER, ACCORDING TO RULE, THE SACRIFICIAL OBLATIONS, TAKING CARE NOT TO OMIT THE 'DARSHA' AND THE 'PAURṆAMĀSA' SACRIFICE.—(9)

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Vitāna*', *is vihāra, sacrifice*; what pertains to it is '*sacrificial*', '*vaitānikam*'; i. e. the rites pertaining to the Three Fires;—this he shall '*offer*', perform.

The term '*agnihotra*' primarily denotes the wild barley and other substances that are employed in sacrificial oblations; and it is not the name of a particular rite; it is in this sense that we have the term used as the object of the verb '*shall offer*'; and we get at the meaning that 'he shall offer, by means of the *Agnihotra* and other rites, the oblations into the *Āhavanīya Fire*;'—it is in this way that the use of the verb '*juhuyāt*', '*shall offer*' becomes justified. In this explanation the word '*agnihotra*' becomes synonymous with the denotation of the root '*hu*', 'to offer into the fire.'

*Objection*—"The text has just prescribed the optional alternative of committing his wife to his sons; in this case how can the man, in the absence of his wife, be entitled to the performance of *shrauta* rites? It might be said that 'the man would be entitled to them in the same way as the man away from home is entitled; just as the man who is away from home, though at a distance from the Fires, is regarded as the *performer* of the rituals by reason of his having made arrangements for the offerings to be made

by a proper substitute, in the same manner, in the case in question, when the man is starting for the forest, his wife shall permit him to carry on the rituals ; and in this manner the joint character of the title would not be disturbed.' But this cannot be right. The procedure of employing a substitute is permissible only in cases where the man is forced by human or divine agencies to go away from home, and not when he goes out of his own accord. Because in such a procedure, many of the details would become omitted, even though the man would be perfectly capable to accomplish them (if he himself remained at home); e.g. in connection with the *Darsha-Paurṇamāsa* sacrifices it is laid down that the *sacrificer* shall *make his wife repeat* the *mantra* '*vedo-si vittirasi*, &c.' ; and this would be omitted (during the sacrificer's absence).

"It might be said that the rule laid down in the present verse may be taken as pertaining to the case where the householder is retiring to the forest *along with his wife* (and not when he is going alone, leaving her in charge of his sons). But this also is not possible; because we do not find any such restrictive specification. Further in connection with the contingency of leaving the wife behind, the scriptures have prescribed another method of disposing of the Fires (in the shape of the direction that they should be committed to the charge of the wife.)

"Then again, even if the rule were taken as pertaining to cases where the wife accompanies the husband, the following direction (contained in verse 11) would not be relevant—'With pure grains, fit for hermits, which grow in spring and in autumn, and which he has himself collected, he shall prepare the cakes and the boiled messes, according to law' ;—the grains meant here are the wild ones, *Nīvāra* and the like, because he has been directed to relinquish all his village-belongings ; and yet in the Veda cakes are laid down as to be made of *Vrīhi* and other grains, which are *cultivated*. Nor could the rite be completed by using any other pure grain, either in accordance with the maxim that 'whatever is produced may be used' ('*Utpanna-nyāya*'), or in accordance with the law of options (*Vrīhi-*

*nyāya*). Because any such grains it would be difficult for the wife to obtain. Lastly, the performance of the *Agnihotra* being a life-long duty, how can there be any relinquishing of that rite, or of the wife? From all this it is clear that the rule regarding the entering into the next stage of life is not compatible with the performance of the Sacrificial Acts."

On this point a special effort has to be made (for reconciling the apparent discrepancy).

(A) Some people say that the term 'sacrificial' in the text has been used, by way of praise, for the *smārta* (not *shrauta*) rites; and in connection with the *smārta* rites there are no such scriptural restrictions as that cakes should be made of the *Vrīhi* and other *cultivated* grains only. In fact in connection with these rites it has been declared that—'The deities of a man partake of the same food as the man himself' (Vālmīki-Rāmāyaṇa *Ayodhyā kāṇḍa*). So that there would be nothing wrong if the Hermit performed these rites with 'grains fit for the hermit.' Even if this were incompatible with the injunctions regarding the use of *Vrīhi* and other cultivated grains, this incompatibility could be easily explained away.

"But even in this case there would be the law relating to the joint right of the husband and wife to the performance, which would be infringed by the man doing it when separated from his wife."

Well, as regards the Vedic declaration—'One shall offer sacrifices, when accompanied by his wife.'—this can pertain to *shrauta* rites only so that the said difficulty does not arise in connection with the *smārta* rites.]

(B) Another explanation is that the rule laid down in the present verse does not refer to the Householder's Fire at all; it refers to what has been prescribed by Gautama (3·27) regarding 'the kindling of fire in the month of *Shrāvaṇa*.' In the present treatise also, the author is going to add the phrase 'following the methods of the hermit' (Verse 21). From all this it is clear that the rites referred to here are those that have been prescribed in the

scriptures, as entirely apart from the rites relating to the Agnihotra, &c. And the terms '*Darsha*' and '*Paurṇamāsa*' too have been used only figuratively. Thus the said kindling of the Fire by the Hermit is to be done by him, without his wife. As regards the household Fires of the *Agnihotra*, the method of disposing of them is laid down (in verse 25 below) in the words—'Having reposited the sacrificial fires in himself, &c. &c.'

As regards the contention based upon the life-long character of the *Agnihotra*-rite, that the abandoning of the Fires cannot be right,—we shall deal with this when we are considering the question of the sequence among the four life-stages.

(C) Others again explain as follows:—What has been forbidden for the Hermit is the act of offering oblations of cultivated grains, and not that of employing these for the sake of the Deities.

"But the sacrificer has got to eat of what is offered to the gods, according to the law that the four priests, with the sacrificer as the fifth, partake of the sacrificial cake."

True; but that *eating* is one that is prescribed by the scriptures, and not the ordinary one; and what has been forbidden under verse 3 is the *ordinary* eating. And for purposes of the scriptural act, even if the man were to go into the village, there would be nothing wrong in this; in fact it is going to be declared below (verse 28) that—'he may eat the food after having obtained it from the village.'

This however is not right; because of the express injunction that he is to make use of only such grains as are 'fit for hermits.'

Thus we find that the whole explanation regarding the text referring to the fire kindled during the month of *Shrāvaṇa* (explanation B above), and all that follows is not acceptable.

Further, verse 4 has spoken of the man '*taking with himself* the sacred fire',—and not *leaving it behind.* As for its being committed to another person, it is going to be laid down that it is to be done either by the man who is going to die, or who is going out for the first time. Then again, the *Turayāṇa* and other rites that are

prescribed (in verse 10) for the Hermit (and which are all *Shrauta* rites to be performed in the *Shrauta* Fire of the *Agnihotra*) cannot be explained, if the present verse refers to the fresh *Smārta* fire kindled in *Shrāvaṇa*. In fact, this latter Fire-kindling could be done only by one whose wife has died,—such being the implication of the actual words laying it down. Or, it may be done in a case where the man retires to the forest immediately after Studentship.

From all this it follows that when an *Agnihotrin* retires to the forest, he shall do so along with the Fire, and accompanied by his wife.

In the forest, the rites are to be performed 'according to law', with *Vrīhi* and other grains; and these grains (though belonging to the *cultivated* category) may somehow or other be brought under the category of 'grains fit for hermits.' Specially as *Vrīhi* and *Yava* (which are *cultivated* grains) are quite sacred.

For the man who has not maintained the Fire, the duty of 'committing the Fires to his wife' may be accomplished somehow with reference to the Fire kindled according to *smārta* rules. This would be only right, as both are '*smārta*' acts. In the case of a man who has two wives, and one of these has taken charge of the Fires, the 'committing of the wife to the children' would apply to the second wife.

'*Not omitting*.'—'Omission' is disobeying the Injunction; the non-performance of an act in the form in which it has been prescribed. This has been added only for the purpose of filling up the metre; similarly also the term '*yogataḥ*', '*taking care*.' The construction is '*yogataḥ askandayan*', '*taking care not to omit*', i. e., carefully keeping up. The 'care' here refers to the injunction itself—(9).

## VERSE (10).

**He shall perform the Darshēṣṭi and the Āgrayaṇa; as also the Chāturmāsya sacrifices, and the Turāyaṇa and Dākṣāyaṇa in due order.—(10).**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Darshēṣṭyāgrayaṇam*' is a copulative compound consisting

of the two terms '*darshēṣṭi*' and '*āgrayaṇa*'. '*Chāturmāsya*' '*Turāyaṇa*' and '*Dākṣayaṇa*' are the names of particular *shrauta* rites.

According to some people the performance of the *Turāyaṇa* and the rest is obligatory—(10).

## VERSE (11).

WITH THE PURE GRAINS FIT FOR HERMITS, WHICH GROW IN SPRING AND IN AUTUMN, AND WHICH HE HAS HIMSELF GATHERED, HE SHALL SEVERALLY PREPARE CAKES AND BOILED MESSES, ACCORDING TO LAW—(11).

### *Bhāṣya.*

If the phrase '*grains fit for hermits*' is not connected with what has gone before, then there is no room for the objection—"how can the sacrificial offerings be made, which are laid down as to consist of *Vrīhi* and other cultivated grains?"

The 'boiled mess' and 'cake' meant here are those that have been prescribed by the rules laid down for Hermits.

'*Vāsanta*'—those that grow, or ripen, during spring; similarly '*shārada*'.

'*Sacred*'—this is a mere re-iteration.

'*Which he has himself gathered*'.—This forbids such means of livelihood as receiving gifts and the like. For the due fulfilment of the aforesaid *smarta* rites, grains have to be gathered by wandering hither and thither.

'*According to law*', '*severally*'.—Both these terms are added for filling up the metre.—(11).

## VERSE (12).

HAVING OFFERED TO THE GODS THAT MOST PURE OFFERING CONSISTING OF WILD-GROWING THINGS, HE SHALL TAKE TO HIMSELF THE REMNANT, AS ALSO THE SALT PREPARED BY HIMSELF—(12).

### *Bhāṣya.*

He should eat only what remains after the offerings to the

gods have been made on the New and Full moon days,—and not any herbs, roots, fruits and the rest.—'*He shall take to himself the remnant*';—shall use it for his own purposes, i.e. for the sustaining of his body.

He should eat only such salt as is '*prepared by himself*' and not rock-salt &c.—(12).

## VERSE (13).

**HE SHOULD EAT THE VEGETABLES THAT GROW ON LAND AND IN WATER; ALSO FLOWERS, ROOTS AND FRUITS, THE PRODUCTIONS OF PURE TREES; AS WELL AS OILS PRODUCED FROM FRUITS.—(13).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

He should eat those growing on land and in water; as also flowers, roots and fruits.—(13).

## VERSE (14).

**HE SHALL AVOID HONEY, MEAT, CABBAGES, MUSHROOMS, THE FRAGRANT GRASS, THE POT-HERB AND THE 'SHLEṢMĀTAKA' FRUITS.—(14).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Bhaumāni Kavakāni*'.—The term '*kavaka*' has already been explained (under 5·5) as a synonym of '*chhatraka*' (mushrooms). These mushrooms grow on the ground, as also in the hollow of trees and other places. Hence the specification 'land-grown'.

This however would appear to be contrary to usage; specially as among the duties of the Householder, all kinds of mushroom have been forbidden, and for the Hermit, the discipline, if anything, should be stricter.

25

For this reason the term '*bhaumāni*' should be taken separately by itself; and it should be understood as standing for the '*gojihvikā*' (cabbage), which is well-known among foresters,—and not for *anything grown on the land.*

Mushrooms having been already forbidden before, their repeated prohibition in the present text is for the purpose of indicating that the eating of the fragrant grass and other things involves the same Expiatory Rite as that of mushrooms.

'*Bhustṛṇa*' (fragrant grass) and '*shigruka*' (pot-herb) are the names of particular kinds of herbs well known among cultivators—(14).

## VERSE (15).

IN THE MONTH OF ĀSHVINA HE SHALL THROW AWAY THE FORMERLY-GATHERED 'HERMIT'S FOOD', AS ALSO THE WORN-OUT CLOTHES AND THE HERBS, ROOTS AND FRUITS. —(15).

### *Bhāṣya.*

This throwing away of the food during the month of *Āshvina* is applicable to cases where the man is either one who lays by provision for six months or for one who does it for a year.

"As a rule hermits' food should be collected only in such quantities as may be actually needed for the rites to be performed; so that there can be no surplus; under the circumstances, what would be there to be thrown away?"

The answer to this is as follows:—At the time that the man is gathering food he cannot always keep a weighing balance in his hand; hence it is quite possible that some small quantities may be left over; and it is these that have to be thrown away during the month of *Āshvina.*

'*Worn out clothes*'.—There is no throwing away of such clothes as are not worn out.—(15).

## VERSE (16).

HE SHALL NOT EAT ANYTHING PRODUCED BY PLOUGHING, EVEN THOUGH IT MAY HAVE BEEN THROWN AWAY BY SOME ONE ; NOR SUCH FLOWERS AND FRUITS AS ARE GROWN IN VILLAGES, EVEN THOUGH HE IN BE IN DISTRESS. —(16).

*Bhāṣya.*

Of forest-grown things also, those 'produced by ploughing' are forbidden ; whlie things grown in villages, even though not 'produced by ploughing', have been already forbidden by verse 3 above; the present fresh prohibition is meant for flowers and fruits, and this prohibition applies to the use of village-grown flowers and fruits in the worshipping of gods &c.

'*Even though he be in distress*'.—That is, even though nothing else be available, and the worshipping of gods be absolutely necessary,—these things shall not be used even as substitutes.

The term '*api*', '*even*', should be construed away from where it occurs ; the sense being—'*even* flowers shall not be used, what to say of *grains* ?'—(16).

## VERSE (17).

HE MAY BE ONE LIVING ON FOOD COOKED BY FIRE, OR ONE EATING ONLY WHAT RIPENS IN ITS OWN TIME ; HE MAY USE THE STONE FOR GRINDING OR HE MAY USE HIS TEETH AS THE MORTAR.—(17).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*One living on food cooked by fire*'.—One whose food consists of vegetables and rice &c. cooked by fire.

Or he may eat only such fruits of trees as ripen themselves in their season.

Or his food may consist of flour obtained by grinding *nīvāra* and other grains. That is, he should grind these grains, and having thus turned them into dough, eat it.

Or this phrase may mean that those nuts that ripen in their own season, and which have a kernel beneath a hard crust,—the outer crust of these should be broken with stone and the inner kernel eaten.

'*Dantolūkhalikaḥ*'.—One who has his teeth for the mortar. That is the outer crust of nuts may be removed with the teeth. This however ought not to be done even though the nut may have been cleaned.

Or the phrase may be taken as qualifying the eating; the sense being that—'he shall eat in such a way that his teeth may serve the purposes of the mortar, in the thumping and removing of chaff'.—(17).

## VERSE (18).

HE MAY BE EITHER ONE WHO WASHES OFF IMMEDIATELY, OR ONE WHO LAYS BY FOR A MONTH, OR ONE WHO LAYS BY FOR SIX MONTHS, OR ONE WHO LAYS BY FOR A YEAR.—(18).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The food that has been described above, he should obtain day after day, just enough to serve for the day.

The man who has a collection that lasts for one month. The form is obtained by the adding of the affix '*ṭhan*'. Or the reading may be '*māsasañchayakaḥ*' and the word explained as a *Bahuvrīhi* compound: 'he whose collection is sufficient for a month'.

Similarly with the last two expressions.—(18).

## VERSE (19).

HAVING COLLECTED FOOD TO THE BEST OF HIS ABILITY, HE SHOULD EAT IT AT NIGHT, OR DURING THE DAY; OR HE MAY DO IT AT EVERY FOURTH TIME, OR AT EVERY EIGHTH TIME.—(19).

### *Bhāṣya.*

Two meals having been prescribed for the man's ordinary purposes, the present text lays down the dropping of one of these meals for the Hermit. The sense is that as age goes on advancing, the man should go on dropping the meal-times one by one. The 'fourth' meal-time is to be computed in the same manner as the 'eighth': Three days having elapsed, if one eats in the evening of the fourth day, he comes to be regarded as eating '*every eighth time*'. The act of *eating* being the subject-matter of the context, the 'fourth' (or 'eighth') time has to be taken as referring to that act.—(19).

## VERSE (20).

OR HE MAY LIVE DURING THE BRIGHT AND DARK FORTNIGHTS IN THE MANNER OF THE 'CHĀNDRĀYAṆA' PENANCE; OR HE MAY EAT ONCE AT THE END OF EACH OF THE TWO FORTNIGHTS, BOILED BARLEY-GRUEL.—(20).

### *Bhāṣya.*

*Ends of the fortnights*—i.e. the New Moon Day and the Full Moon Day;—on these two days he shall eat boiled barley-gruel;—'*once*' i.e. either in the morning or in the evening.—(20).

## VERSE (21).

**OR, HE MAY ALWAYS SUBSIST ONLY ON FLOWERS, ROOTS AND FRUITS, WHICH HAVE RIPENED IN THEIR OWN SEASON AND FALLEN DOWN SPONTANEOUSLY,—KEEPING FIRM IN THE WAYS OF LIFE PRESCRIBED IN THE 'VAIKHĀNASA' INSTITUTES.—(21).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Ripened in their own season*'.—The jack-fruit and some other fruits are ripened (artificially) by means of fire also; and it is with a view to exclude these that this epithet has been added. But fruits ripened by means of fire are not forbidden for the Householder.

'*Vaikhānasa*' is the name of a treatise where the duties of the Hermit are prescribed;—keeping firm on these rules;—i.e. he should seek to learn also the other details of life prescribed in that treatise.—(21).

## VERSE (22).

**HE SHALL ROLL ABOUT ON THE GROUND, OR STAND ON TIP-TOE DURING THE DAY; HE SHALL BEGUILE HIS TIME BY STANDING AND SITTING, GOING TO WATER AT THE 'SAVANAS'.—(22).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Rolling about*'.—Lying down on the ground on one side for sometime and then turning over on the other side. He shall pass his time thus rolling about, except during meal-time and the time during which he has to move about, he shall neither sit down nor walk about, nor sit on a bed, or a seat, or a parapet.

'*On tip-toe*'—'*prapadaiḥ*'.—'He shall stand'.

'*By standing and sitting*'.—During the day; as for the night, it is going to be declared that the man should sleep on the bare ground.

'*At the savanas.*'—i.e. in the morning, at midday and in the evening;—'*going to water*'.—This indicates that where a river or some such reservoir of water is not available, one may perform his bath even with water pulled out (of a well).—(22).

## VERSE (23).

DURING SUMMER HE SHALL KEEP FIVE FIRES; DURING THE RAINS, HE SHALL HAVE THE SKY FOR HIS SHELTER; AND DURING THE WINTER HE SHALL KEEP WET CLOTHES: GRADUALLY INCREASING HIS AUSTERITIES.—(23).

*Bhāṣya.*

He shall heat himself with five fires; he shall kindle four fires close to himself on his four sides and shall expose himself to the sun at the head.

During the rainy season, he shall have the sky for his sole shelter; i.e. he shall live in a place where the rain falls, and he shall not hold the umbrella or any such thing to ward off the rain.

'*During the winter*',—i.e. whenever it is cold; i.e. during the two seasons of *Hemanta* and *Shishira* (Winter and Mid-winter)—he shall have his clothes wet.

'*Gradually*'—In due course.—(23).

## VERSE (24).

BATHING AT THE THREE SAVANAS, HE SHALL OFFER LIBATIONS TO THE GODS AND PITṚS; AND PRACTISING HARSHER AND HARSHER AUSTERITIES, HE SHALL EMACIATE HIS BODY.—(24).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Upasparshana*'—means *bathing*.

'*Austerities*'—such as holding up the arms permanently, fasting during the whole month, or for twelve days, and so forth.

'*Harsher*'—what is calculated to cause greater suffering to the body.

He shall '*emaciate*',—make to dry up,—his body.(24).

## VERSE (25).

HAVING REPOSITED, ACCORDING TO RULE, THE SHRAUTA FIRES WITHIN HIMSELF, HE SHALL BE A SILENT HERMIT, WITHOUT FIRES AND WITHOUT A HOUSE, LIVING UPON ROOTS AND FRUITS.—(25).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Vaitāna*'—*Shrauta.*

These fires he shall reposit within himself, by swallowing their ashes and perfoming such other rites as have been laid down in connection with it. The exact procedure of this *repositing* should be learnt from the *Shravanaka* (?).

When austerities have been performed for a long time, and the man has reached seventy years of age, then, still remaining a hermit, he shall be '*without fires and without a house*'; i e. he shall give up his thatched dwelling-house.

"Where then should be live ?"

He shall dwell '*at the roots of trees*',—as is going to be said in the next verse.

'*He shall be a silent hermit*'.—The construction is '*muniḥ syāt*', 'he shall be a *muni*'; which means that he shall keep his speech under control; the man who has his speech under control is called 'a keeper of the vow of silence'.

'*Living upon roots and fruits*'.—This serves to exclude all other kinds of food; he shall not eat even *Nivarā* and the other wild grains.—(25).

## VERSE (26).

MAKING NO EFFORT TO OBTAIN PLEASURE-GIVING OBJECTS, AND MAINTAINING CELIBACY, HE SHALL SLEEP ON THE GROUND : AND NOT CARING FOR SHELTER, HE SHALL HAVE THE ROOTS OF TREES FOR HIS DWELLING.—(26).

### *Bhāṣya.*

He shall make no effort to obtain things that give pleasure; e.g. troubled by heat, he shall not move into the shade, and troubled by cold, he shall not kindle fire. If, however, his sufferings are removed by such natural causes as the falling of the sun's rays and the like,—this is not forbidden. This rule refers to seasons other than the rains; because special rules have been prescribed with special reference to this latter season.

Or, the text may be taken as prohibiting the use of medicines by the hermit if he happen to fall ill,—being cured of disease also being a kind of 'pleasure ;' hence he shall not make any effort to secure this pleasure.

'*Sleeping on the ground*';—i.e. he shall sleep on the ground, covered only with grass.

'*Shelter*'—dwelling-places, such as houses, tree-roots and so forth ;—for these he shall not care ; he shall not have any hankering after the possession of these.

He shall make the roots of trees his dwelling. In the event of their being not available, stone-slabs, mountain-caves and such places have also been ordained for him.—(26).

## VERSE (27).

HE SHALL RECEIVE ALMS JUST ENOUGH FOR SUBSISTENCE, ONLY FROM BRĀHMAṆA-HERMITS, OR FROM SUCH TWICE-BORN HOUSEHOLDERS AS LIVE IN THE FORESTS. —(27).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The Locative ending in '*tāpaseṣu*' &c. has the sense of

the Ablative; meaning 'from hermits'—'*he shall receive alms*',—in the event of his being unable to obtain fruits and roots;—'*or from such householders as live in the forests*'.

'*Enough for subsistence*';—what is just sufficient to satisfy his hunger.—(27).

In the absence of such alms.—

## VERSE (28).

WHILE DWELLING IN THE FOREST, HE MAY BRING FOOD FROM THE VILLAGE,—RECEIVING IT EITHER IN HIS HOLLOWED HAND OR IN A POTSHERD,—AND EAT EIGHT MORSELS.—(28).

*Bhāṣya.*

The use of the term 'morsel' implies that the alms are *not* to consist of fruits and roots only. In fact the present text permits the use of cultivated grains, in the absence of wild ones.

Receiving the alms either '*in the hollowed hand*'—without a dish—or in a piece of broken earthenware, dish, &c.—(28).

## VERSE (29.)

THE BRĀHMAṆA DWELLING IN THE FOREST SHALL ATTEND TO THESE AND OTHER RESTRAINTS; AND ALSO TO THE SEVERAL VEDIC TEXTS CONTAINED IN THE UPANIṢADS, IN ORDER to ATTAIN THE SELF.—(29).

*Bhāṣya.*

These '*restraints*'—observances and '*others*'—such as standing in water, keeping the eyes closed and so forth.

'*Vedic texts contained in the Upaniṣads.*'—He shall study the texts contained in the esoteric sections of the Veda, and think of them and ponder over them; '*in order to attain the Self.*'

Or this may refer to the several forms of worship that have been laid down for attaining Brahman.

'*Several*'—this is a mere re-iteration.—(29).

## VERSE (30).

**SUCH OF THESE AS HAVE BEEN ATTENDED TO BY SAGES AND BRĀHMAṆA HOUSEHOLDERS, FOR THE ADVANCEMENT OF KNOWLEDGE AND AUSTERITIES, AND ALSO FOR THE PURIFICATION OF THE BODY—(30).**

*Bhāṣya.*

It has just been stated in general terms that 'he shall attend to *others*'; this might be taken to imply the propriety of practising the restraints and observances laid down in the '*Shākya*', the '*Pāshupata*' and other heterodox scriptures. Hence the present verse is added for the purpose precluding these.

'*By sages.*'—The *Mahabharata* describes several restraints and observances practised by the ancient sages.

Those attended to by '*Brāhmaṇa-householders*';—as has been declared under Gautama (3·9)—'This refers to those coming later, also, because there is no incompatibility in this.'.

'*Knowledge*'—the realising of the unity of the Self; this one should '*advance*'—confirm, strengthen—by the study of the Veda.

'*For the purification of the body*'—he should attend to the restraints relating to the regulation of food—(30).

## VERSE (31).

**OR, HAVING FIXED UPON THE NORTH-EASTERLY DIRECTION, HE SHALL GO FORWARD, MOVING STRAIGHT ON, INTENT AND LIVING UPON WATER AND AIR,—TILL THE FALLING OFF OF HIS BODY.—(31).**

*Bhāṣya.*

The '*Aparājitā*' is the name of the North-Easterly direction, known among the people as '*Aishānī*';—'*Having fixed upon*' this direction—as "this is the direction towards which I shall go',—he should proceed towards it.

'*Moving straight on*'--not swerving from his path, not seeking to avoid even rivers and streams. This is a rule laying down the going towards the North-East.

'*Intent, living upon water and air, till the falling off of the body.*'—That is, until the body falls off, he shall live upon air and on water.

'*Intent*',—having concentrated himself by the rules of Yoga. This refers to the 'Grand Journey' (towards certain death).—(31).

## VERSE (32).

HAVING DISCARDED HIS BODY BY ONE OF THESE METHODS ADOPTED BY THE GREAT SAGES, THE BRĀHMAṆA, WITH SORROW AND FEAR DEPARTED, BECOMES EXALTED IN THE REGION OF BRAHMAN.—(32).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The austerities spoken of above and the 'Grand Journey' just spoken of constitute '*the methods adopted by the Great Sages.*' By '*one of these*'—by drowning in a river, by falling from a preicipice, by burning one self by fire, by starving one'self to death—one should discard his body.

The result of this is that 'with sorrow and fear departed' he reaches the regions of Brahman. '*Sorrow*' consists in the experiencing of the sufferings of hell, etc.,—'*Fear*'—of going to hell. Both these disappear for the man; and directly—not having to pass through the several stages of Light, etc.– he goes to the region of Brahman.

The '*region of Brahman*' is a particular place, superior than Heaven itself; and in that '*he becomes exalted*'—remains to honoured. This does not mean that he obtains the 'Self-sovereignty' of Brahman; since the text distinctly adds the term 'region'; specially as Liberation is going to be spoken as being led to from the *fourth* Life-stage.

They say that Liberation is not attained by mere Action.

But this is not right; since in this very work it has been said—'he should study the Vedic texts contained in the Upaniṣads in order to attain the Self'; and 'attainment of the Self' is nothing more than *meditating upon the Self and thereby becoming absorbed in it*; there can be no other meaning of the term 'attain'. And further what is to be meditated upon by *yogins* in connection with the Upaniṣad-texts is the Self:—'One fixed in Brahman reaches immortality', 'he becomes absorbed therein' and so forth.

It might be argued that—"there are other forms of success proceeding from austerities, spoken of in such texts as 'if he is desirous of reaching the regions of the Pitṛs etc. etc.'; wherein we find it stated that man can attain that degree of greatness which belongs to Brahman, and which is acquired by his determined activity; but this cannot be *Liberation*."

But this is not right. Because there is no distinction made. The man of action is just as much entitled to 'Immortality' (which is Liberation) as to the forms of worship leading to inferior results. It is nowhere declared that those forms of worship which relate to Non-duality shall be followed by the *Renunciate only*.

"But, having declared that 'there are three departments of *Dharma*', the Upaniṣad (Chhāndogya) names 'sacrifice, study and charity', which represent the duties of the Householder; then it mentions 'austerity' which refers to the Hermit; then it speaks of the 'Student dwelling in the Teacher's house', which refers to the Life-long Student; and lastly it mentions 'one who is fixed in Brahman', and this refers to the Renunciate. Further on, it declares that the former three lead to 'sacred regions'; from which it follows that it is the remaining fourth, the Renunciate, who attains Immortality."

Not so at all; the term '*brahmasaṃstha*', 'fixed in Brahman', is used in its literal sense of 'one who is given up to meditating upon Brahman' [and this has no reference to any particular stage of life].

"If all men were equally entitled to it, then all that the Upaniṣad need have said is 'one who is fixed in Brahman reaches Immortality' [and nothing need have been said regarding the three life-stages]".

Not so; what the passage means is that,—'the several life-stages lead to sacred regions, which constitutes the result mentioned in connection with the Injunctions relating to the stages; but if, *while still in the same stages*, if a man fixes himself upon Brahman, he attains *Immortality*, which means *non-return to birth*.'

"Those who know the Self have declared that Brahman is non-dual; and It is also called 'one in whom all activity has ceased'; the Life-stages on the other hand, all constitute the path of activity, consisting of the performance of various acts leading up to various results; so that there is a clear incompatibility between the 'knowing of the *non-dual* Self' and the performance of the *Agnihotra* and other rites, which are inseparable from the stages of the Householder &c., and which are all based upon notions of *diversity*".

Our answer to this is as follows:—This would be equally applicable to Renunciation also, which also consists of restraints and observances, which presuppose diversity.

It might be argued that—"For the man who has renounced all activity and entered the path of Inaction, there are no scriptural injunctions at all".

Such certainly is not the meaning of the scriptures. Renunciation is going to be described as 'the surrendering of the notions of *I* and *mine*', and not the abandoning of all that is enjoined by the scriptures. Further, in connection with the Renunciate also, when he is hungry and goes about begging food, the notion of action and agent is always present. Under the circumstances, what reasonable man could assert that—"in the case of the Renunciate there is no incompatibility between his engaging in the said acts pertaining to the ordinary worldly life and his realising of the non-dual Brahman,—while there is a

clear incompatibility between this latter and the performance of the *Agnihotra* and other acts prescribed by the scriptures" ?

The following argument may here be put forward :—"When the Renunciate is hungry and engages himself in eating, there is certainly incompatibility between this act and his knowledge of Self ; but this incompatibility or incongruity lasts during that ime only ; just when a man walks in the dark he may put hist foot upon thorny places ; but when the sun rises and he obtains sufficient light, he places his foot only upon the right path. which is free from thorns ; in the same manner, during the time that the man is suffering from hunger, he loses sight of his knowledge of Self ; but as soon as the cessation of hunger comes about, like light in the other case, his firm conviction regarding the Self reasserts itself and the man regains his knowledge".

The same may be said regarding the Hermit also.

For the Householder also, there would be nothing incongruous in his attending to his wife and children and also meditating upon Brahman.

"But how can the man of manifold activities, who has become identified with *diversitty*, ever obtain conviction regarding *Non-duality*" ?

In connection with the duties of the Householder also it has been laid down that—'he shall meditate in solitude' (4.248), and 'having made over éveything to his son &c.' (4.247).

" It has been declared in the *Shruti* that 'the man desiring heaven should not die before the span of his life has run out'; how then can there be any 'giving up of the body' for the Hermit ? It is not possible for the present text to restrict this *Shruti*-text to cases *other than that of the Hermit.* Because the *Shruti* is more authoritative, and as such, could not be restricted in its scope by the *Smṛti.*"

There would be no going against the said *Shruti* if the man were to seek death when his body is torn up by old age and by sorrows and he knows that death is near at hand. What the

*Shruti* says is 'before the span of his life has run out'; where as if dying were not considered right under any and every circumstances, then it would have simply said 'one desirous of heaven should not die.' Further, the Upaniṣads speak of several signs of approaching death; and these also have their use in connection with the *Shruti* in question; the sense being that 'unless a man knows of impending death by means of such signs he shall not seek to die."—(32)

---

## SECTION. 4

## The Renunciate.

### VERSE. (33)

HAVING THUS PASSED THE THIRD PART OF HIS LIFE IN THE FOREST, THE MAN SHALL, DURING THE FOURTH PART, RENOUNCE ALL ATTACHMENTS AND GO FORTH (A WANDERING MENDICANT).—(33).

*Bhāṣya.*

Henceforward we have the description of the fourth life-stage.

'*Third part.*'—*i. e.* having remained in the forest *for some time*; for such time as would suffice for the due performance of austerities and the proper allayment of longing for objects of enjoyment. The phrase cannot be taken as standing precisely for the exact 'third part' of the man's life; because the period of the life-stage is not determined precisely with reference to one hundred years (the alleged span of man's life); because the time for entering on the third life-stage has been indicated as that marked by the appearance of 'wrinkles and grey hair'; and in every man these do not always appear at the completion of fifty years. Then again, elsewhere it has been declared that 'one should go forth on the completion of his austerities'.

" In the case of the other life-stages the time has been precisely indicated—*e.g.* (*a*) Studentship shall continue till the Veda has been got up, (*b*) the life of the Householder shall continue till the appearance of wrinkles and grey hairs; in the present instance however no such time is indicated; whether we take it to be the 'third part' as asserted in the present text, or 'on the completion of austerities,'—even so we stand in need of information regarding the exact time meant; for there is no knowing by what time one's austerities might be completed. For these reasons it is necessary that the time should be indicated by the words of the text."

It has already been explained that the 'third part of life' cannot be determined with reference to 'a hundred years'; and as regards the exact time, it has been clearly indicated by such words as—'one should take to the life of the Wandering Mendicant after the body has fully ripened'; which means that 'one should go forth after he has performed enough austerities, and till sufficiently advanced age, to be convinced that there is no more chance of any recrudescence of the passions.'

'*Having passed*'—having lived through; *i.e.* having carried on the duties as detailed above.

'Renouncing of attachment' consists in not harbouring notions of *I* and *mine*, in *resting within one'self*.—(33).

## VERSE (34)

IF ONE, AFTER PASSING FROM STAGE TO STAGE AND AFTER OFFERING THE SACRIFICES, WITH SENSES SUBDUED, TIRED OF ALMS AND OFFERINGS,—GOES FORTH AS A WANDERING MENDICANT, AND THEN DIES, THEN HE PROSPERS.—(34)

### *Bhāṣya*

This verse lends support to the view that one should pass through all the life-stages.—'*Passing from stage to stage*; that is passing from the Householder's stage to that of the Hermit.

'*After offering the sacrifices*'—during both the stages.

'*With senses subdued*'.—when he becomes so, then alone he should go forth.

'*If he dies, then he prospers*'—*i. e.* obtains most excellent for splendour,

'*Tired of alms and offerings*'—by having recourse to these a long time.

This is a reiterative reference to the duties of the Life-stages.—(35).

## VERSE. (35)

**ONE SHALL TURN HIS MIND TOWARDS LIBERATION ONLY AFTER HAVING PAID OFF THE THREE DEBTS ; WITHOUT HAVING PAID THEM, IF HE SEEKS FOR LIBERATION, HE SINKS DOWNWARDS.—(35)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Paying off*'—Clearing off the debt.

'*One shall turn his mind towards Liberation*'.—The term 'liberation' here indicates the stage of Renunciation; it is this stage that is spoken of as the principal path which leads to Liberation only; not so the other stages (which lead to other results also); hence '*liberation*' means the *Stage of Renunciation*.—(35).

## SECTION. 5

## The manner of Paying the three Debts.

### VERSE (36).

AFTER HAVING STUDIED THE VEDAS ACCORDING TO RULE, HAVING BEGOTTEN SONS IN THE RIGHTFUL MANNER, AND HAVING OFFERED SACRIFICES TO THE BEST OF HIS ABILITY,—HE SHALL TURN HIS MIND TOWARDS LIBERATION.—(36).

*Bhāṣya.*

This *Smṛti*-text reiterates what has been said in the following *Shruti*—'Man is born beset with three debts—the debt of sacrifice to the gods, the debt of offspring to the Pitṛs, and the debt of vedic study to the sages' (*Shatapatha-Brāhmaṇa*, 1.7.2.1).

"But the Jābāla-shruti has declared that—'one should go forth as a mendicant after having been a house-holder, or he may go forth directly after studentship'."

Our explanation of this is as follows:—What the text just quoted does is to mention the mere coming into existence of the stage of Renunciation; and if it were taken in its literal sense it would be contrary to what is said in the following verse regarding the impropriety of 'going forth, without having begotten offspring'.

"Well, when we have the *Shruti* just quoted, what if it be contrary to a *Smṛti*-text?"

We explain. The necessity of taking to the Householder's life has been directly enjoined (with all its details); while all that the text does in regard to the Renunciate is to enjoin that 'one shall go forth'; and nothing is said as to the rites to be performed by the Renunciate, or

the procedure to be adopted in regard to those rites. As regards the Householder on the other hand, the *Agnihotra* and other rites have been prescribed along with all their appurtenant details. This is what we meant (by urging that the *Shruti* text quoted, if taken in its literal sense, would be contrary to the *Smṛti*-text) Those persons then who, not knowing of the *Shruti* text describing the 'three debts', take their stand upon *Smṛti*-texts only, and become life-long 'students', find themselves running up against the 'Householder's Life' which has been directly enjoined.

There are some people who explain the Smṛti-texts relating to the 'Life-long Student' as applying to the case of such men as are suffering from impotence or some such debility, and are, on that account, not entitled to entering upon the Householder's Life.

But we do not understand what these people really mean. Their meaning may be as follows:—Such a person is not entitled to the rites laid down in the Shruti, on account of their being incapable of properly accomplishing such acts as *the examining of the clarified butter* (which cannot be done by the *blind*), or the *walk in Viṣṇu's steps* (which cannot be done by the *lame*); and that even so the said Shruti-texts have their application in the case of such men as are capable of duly accomplishing the rites with all the said details; so that there is no need for taking them as forcing the disabled persons also to perform the acts".

If this is what is meant, then as regards the *Smṛti*-texts also which speak of the 'Life-long student',—such a student also would have to 'fetch water for the Teacher,' to beg for food, and so forth; and in regard to the Renunciate also it has been declared that 'he shall not dwell in any one place for a second night'. So that how could the blind and lame be entitled to these life-stages as prescribed by the *Smṛti*-texts? In fact the Initiatory Ceremony (*upanayana*) itself is clearly indicative of all (the four life-stages). Hence the desire of the person for marriage, which is referred to later on (9·203) in the text—

'if he has need for a wife etc. &c.' Though in connection with the Initiatory Ceremony also, there are several details, such as *looking at the sun, going round the fire* and so forth (which cannot be done by the blind or the lame), yet—in as much as the uninitiated person, by reason of his having become an outcast, would not be entitled to marry,—it is open to the man to keep up his studentship, even though defective, by serving his Teacher to the best of his ability. As for the impotent man, he is, by his very nature, unfit for the Initiatory Ceremony; in fact, like the outcast, he is not entitled to anything at all.

From all this our mind is not satisfied with the view that the life of the Renunciate (directly after studentship), or that of the Life-long Student, is meant for disabled people. In fact the two methods may well be regarded as optional alternatives; as is done in the case of the two Vedic texts laying down oblations to be offered 'before sunrise' and 'after sunrise'. And it is in accordance with the alternative view that all the four life-stages should be passed through that we have the passage—'without paying off his debts &c.',—which is *deprecatory* and not *prohibitive* (of Life-long Studentship, or Direct Renunciation). Or, it may be taken as referring to cases where the married man is going to take to Renunciation.—(36).

## VERSE (37)

THE TWICE-BORN PERSON, WHO SEEKS LIBERATION, WITHOUT HAVING STUDIED THE VEDAS, WITHOUT HAVING BEGOTTEN OFFSPRING, AND WITHOUT HAVING OFFERED SACRIFICES, SINKS DOWNWARDS. —(37).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Sacrifices*'—such as the Animal-Sacrifice, the Soma-Sacrifice and the like, which are obligatory on persons who have set up the Fire.—(37).

## SECTION 6.

## Procedure of going forth as a Wandering Mendicant.

### VERSE (38).

HAVING PERFORMED THE PRĀJĀPATYA SACRIFICE, WHEREIN ALL HIS BELONGINGS ARE GIVEN AWAY AS THE SACRIFICIAL FEE,—AND HAVING REPOSITED THE FIRES WITHIN HIMSELF,—THE BRĀHMAṆA SHOULD GO FORTH FROM HIS HOUSE.—(38).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Prājāpatya Sacrifice*'—as prescribed in the Yajurveda; at this the giving away of all one's belongings is enjoined. After this has been performed, the Fires are reposited by the man within himself; the exact procedure of this *repositing* also has to be learnt from that same Veda.

The compound '*Sarvavedasadakṣiṇam*' is to be treated as a *Bahuvrīhi* compound; 'that at which all one's belongings are given away as the sacrificial fee'. '*Vedas*' mean *wealth*; and the whole of this is to be given away. This is the sense attributed to the '*aṇ*' affix in the term '*sarvāvedasa*'. Or the '*aṇ*' affix may be taken in the reflexive sense; the '*Prajñādi* group' (which are laid down as taking the said affix in this sense) being a purely tentative one.

Others have explained the 'Prājāpatya sacrifice' as *human sacrifice*. At this latter the Brāhmaṇa forms the first animal to be sacrificed in accordance with the injunction 'the Brāhmaṇa should be sacrificed to Brahman'; and 'Prajāpati' is only another name for Brahman; and since a sacrifice is named after its chief deity, 'Prājāpatya' is the name for the *human* sacrifice. Further, it is only in connection with this sacrifice that the scriptures have enjoined the *giving away of all belongings, the repositing of the Fires within oneself* and *the going forth as a mendicant.* We have the following *Shruti*-text on this point:—'Having reposited the

Fires within himself, and regarding this repositing as a worship rendered unto Āditya, the man should go forth; then alone does he become securer than gods and men'.

Some people have held that the 'repositing of the Fires within himself', which is mentioned in connection with Renunciation, becomes fulfilled if the Fires are made over to the wife at her death; and hence Renunciation is to be taken to only in the event of the wife's death, when a second wife need not be taken.

But in that case the text bearing on the subject should have been in some such form as—'in the event of the wife dying first, the Fires should be made over to her at her funeral rite', and since the present treatise is the work of a human author, and not a Veda, the answer would not be available that no exception can be taken to its words. (?)—(38).

## VERSE (39).

**HE WHO GOES FORTH FROM HOME AFTER HAVING GRANTED FREEDOM FROM ALL FEAR TO ALL BEINGS,—TO THAT EXPOUNDER OF THE VEDA BELONG REGIONS OF LIGHT.—(39).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

This verse eulogises the fourth life-stage at the expense of the Householding stage.

At sacrifices animals are killed; the cutting of herbs and grasses also constitutes 'killing', according to the theory that 'all that grows is animate'. It is this that constitutes the 'fear' of living beings. So that when one has gone away from home, and has disposed of the Fires, there is no such fear from him. This is what is meant by the words—'*having granted freedom from fear to all beings.*' This also indicates that the Renunciate shall not pick up for his use any such leaves or twigs as have not quite dried up.

'*Of light*'—ever effulgent; where the rising and setting of the sun are not perceived; this is what is described by the words of the Upaniṣads—'Beyond this the sun does not rise or set.'—(39).

## VERSE (40)

THE TWICE-BORN PERSON, FROM WHOM NOT THE SLIGHTEST DANGER ARISES TO LIVING BEINGS, SUFFERS NO DANGER FROM ANY SOURCE, WHEN HE HAS BECOME FREED FROM HIS BODY.—(40).

*Bhāṣya.*

The same idea is repeated again.

'*When he has become freed from his body*'—*i. e.* when his present body falls off. (40)

## VERSE (41).

HAVING DEPARTED FROM HIS HOUSE, FULLY EQUIPPED WITH THE SACRED THINGS, HE SHALL GO FORTH, SILENT AND WHOLLY INDIFFERENT TOWARDS PLEASURES THAT MAY BE PRESENTED TO HIM.—(41.)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Sacred things*'—the muttering of sacred texts, kusha-grass, water-pot and deer-skin;—'*Equipped*'—supplied—with these. Or '*pavitra*' may be taken as standing for the *purifying* penances.

'*Muni*',—'*silent*,'—speaking little.

'*Presented*'—offered by some person;—'*pleasures*'—pleasure-giving objects, such as nice food and the like, which may come to him by chance,—or the sounds of music &c.,—or sons and other relations. When these happen to be presented before him, he should be '*indifferent*' to them; *i. e.* he shall not look upon them for long with loving eyes, shall not listen to them, or shall not sit with them.—(41).

## VERSE (42).

**HE SHALL ALWAYS WANDER ABOUT ALONE, WITHOUT A COMPANION, IN ORDER TO ATTAIN SUCCESS; WHEN ONE REALISES THAT SUCCESS ACCRUES TO THE SOLITARY MAN, HE NEITHER FORSAKES NOR BECOMES FORSAKEN.—(42)**

### *Bhāṣya*

This verse enjoins solitude.

'*Alone*'—denotes the giving up of past acquaintances.

'*Without a companion*':—he shall not take with him even his former servant &c. It is only in this way that the man becomes free from friendship, hatred and love; and thus comes to look upon all things as equal. Otherwise, if a servant happen to be near him, he could have the notion that—'this man is *mine*, not that'; and this is the attachment that becomes the cause of bondage.

When he realises this, then he does not '*forsake*'—no son or anybody else is ever forsaken, by him; and hence he himself also is not '*forsaken*'—not separated from this son and others; *i. e.* he is not beset with the pain of separation from them. Otherwise—if there had been attachment—the giving up would cause great pain. In fact, for such a man no one dies, nor does he die for any one.—(42).

## VERSE (43).

**HE SHALL BE WITHOUT FIRES AND WITHOUT HOME; HE MAY GO TO A VILLAGE FOR FOOD;—DISINTERESTED, STEADY, SILENT AND CALMLY-DISPOSED.—(43)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The abandoning of the *Shrauta* fires has been mentioned before; this verse speaks of the abandoning of the *domestic* fire. Or this may be taken as forbidding the act of cooking, and of seeking for fuel for the fire required for the allaying of cold and such other purposes.

'*Niketa*' is home.

'*He may go*'—for one night—'*to a village for food*'; and having got what he needs, he should spend the rest of his time in the forest. This living in the village for a single night has been declared by Gautama. If the man happen to be near a village, then he shall enter it only for obtaining food; but if he happens to be far off from it, then he may dwell there for a single night, and pass on to the forest for the second.

'*Disinterested*';—he should not own his even such inanimate objects as the water-pot and the like. Or, it may mean that he shall not have recoursee to any remedy for his bodily ailments.

Some people read '*asaṅkusukaḥ*';—'*saṅkusuka*' means fickle, unsteady; and the opposite of this denotes firmness of mind.

'*Silent*'—with the organ of speech under his full control

'*Calmly disposed*'—Calm in disposition; i. e., he shall give up all mental imaginings; he shall be calm by *disposition* not in mere speech (43).

## VERSE (44).

THE POTSHERD, THE ROOTS OF TREES, COARSE CLOTH, SOLITUDE, EQUALITY TOWARDS ALL,—ARE THE MARK OF THE LIBERATED MAN.—(44).

### *Bhāṣya.*

The '*potsherd*'—the broken jar—shall be his dish and his begging-bowl;—the '*roots of trees*' shall be his home.

'*Coarse cloth*'—Rough and torn pieces of cloth.

'*Equality*'—towards the friend and the enemy, to one who is neither a friend nor an enemy, as well as towards himself.

'*Mark of the liberated person*'. What this means is that for such a man Liberation is quickly attained; not that the man becomes liberated by these alone.—(44).

## VERSE (45).

**HE SHALL NOT REJOICE AT DEATH ; NOR SHALL HE REJOICE AT LIFE ; HE SHALL AWAIT HIS TIME, JUST AS THE SERVANT AWAITS THE FULFILMENT OF HIS CONTRACT—(45).**

*Bhāṣya.*

This denotes freedom from troubles.

He shall not seek death ; nor shall he seek life, for the purpose of acquiring more knowledge.

'*He shall await his time*'.—He shall cultivate the habit of thinking 'let anything happen at any time it may'.

'*Just as the servant waits for the fulfilness of his contract*'—'This work I have got to do for him during the day,—if I stop in the middle, I shall not obtain full wages'.

Worldliness having thus ceased, when the man's body falls off, he attains Liberation, by this process and not by doing whatever he likes.—(45)

## VERSE (46).

**HE SHALL PLACE HIS FOOT SIGHT-PURIFIED, DRINK WATER CLOTH-CLARIFIED, UTTER SPEECH TRUTH-SANCTIFIED AND ACT WITH PURE MIND—(46).**

*Bhāṣya.*

Having looked over the path with the eye, he should place his foot on a spot where there may be no animals to suffer from his tread.

It being already known that one should tell the truth, the term '*pūta*', '*sanctified*', is meant to show that the term '*satya*', '*truth*', is purely indicative ; hence there is nothing incongruous in this.

One shall always remain *pure in his mind* ; *i.e.* he shall not even think of possessing what belongs to another and so forth.—(46)

## VERSE (47).

HE SHALL PATIENTLY BEAR IMPROPER WORDS, AND SHALL NOT INSULT ANYONE; AND HE SHALL NOT MAKE ENMITY WITH ANY ONE, FOR THE SAKE OF HIS PRESENT BODY.—(47).

### *Bhāṣya.*

When one speaks in a manner contrary to the scriptures, his words are called '*improper*'—*i.e.* hard, disagreeable taunts;—these he shall '*bear patiently*'—*i.e.* tolerate, not answer back. In fact, he shall not bear ill-will even in his mind; what is implied by the direction is that 'on being cursed he shall pronounce a blessing," which forbids even mental perturbation; and it does not mean that he shall actually ask the man—'is it well with you?' Because if he spoke thus (and bore anger in his mind) he would be a liar, saying one thing and thinking of another.

'*He shall not insult*'—shall not show disrespect towards—any one. That is, he shall not omit to show respect to his elders.

'*For the sake of his present body*;'—*i.e.* if some one were to strike his body—'he shall not make enmity with him.' He is to think all the time in the following strain—'what would it matter whether this body perished or not, I may have an effulgent body.'—(47).

## VERSE (48).

TOWARDS AN ANGRY MAN HE SHALL NOT RETORT IN ANGER; WHEN HE IS CURSED, HE SHALL PRONOUNCE A BLESSING; AND HE SHALL NOT UTTER AN UNTRUE WORD, SPREADING OVER THE SEVEN OPENINGS.—(48).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Seven openings*'—(1) Duty and wealth, (2) duty and pleasure, (3) wealth and pleasure, (4) pleasure and wealth, (5) pleasure and duty, (6) wealth and duty, and (7) wealth—pleasure—duty. He shall not utter an untrue word spreading over all these. All these are based upon notions of *diversity*; and all diversity is untrue; hence the word relating to these is called 'untrue'

The sense is that the man shall speak only such words as pertain to Liberation.

Or, the '*seven openings*' may stand for the seven breaths in the head; and these are the 'openings' of speech. Or, it may stand for the six sense-organs and Intellect as the seventh. It is only when objects have been perceived by means of these that words speak of them. Others explain that the '*seven openings*' stand for the seven declensional terminations.—(48).

## VERSE (49).

CENTERED IN SPIRITUALITY, DISINTERESTED, FREE FROM LONGINGS, WITH HIMSELF AS HIS SOLE COMPANION, HE SHALL WANDER FORTH IN THE WORLD, SEEKING BLISS.—(49).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Spirituality*'—disposition to concentrate one's attention upon the quest for the true nature of the self;—'*centered*'—always thinking of it, he shall remain.

'*Disintrested*;'—this re-iterates what has been already said before regarding his not caring for the due fulfilment of *Dharma* and other things.

'*Nirāmiṣaḥ*'—free from longings. Flesh is '*āmiṣa*', which indicates (figuratively) *longing*, by reason of the fact that living beings have a great liking for flesh; and this longing is forbidden.

All the rest has already been explained before.—(49).

## VERSE (50)

HE SHALL NEVER OBTAIN ALMS EITHER BY MEANS OF PRODIGIES AND PORTENTS, OR BY MEANS OF THE SCIENCE OF ASTROLOGY AND PALMISTRY, OR BY MEANS OF COUNSEL AND DISCUSSION..—(50)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Prodigies*'—appearing in the heaven, in the atmosphere and on the earth, e. g. eclipess, the appearance of particular planets,

the appearance of a comet, reddening of the atmosphere, earthquake and so forth. The man shall not go about describing the probable effects of these, for the purpose of obtaining alms.

'*Portents*'—the evil effects of planetary aspects.

'*Science of astrology*'—the science which enables one to say—'To-day the moon is in the asterism of *Kṛttikā*, which is fit for starting on a journey and so forth.

'*Science of palmistry*'—which describes the effect of marks in the palms and other parts of the body.

'*Counsel*'—offering advice to the King and his subjects,—in such form as 'It is right to act in this manner,—make peace with this King—declare war with that—why did you do this?—why don't you do this?'

'*Discussion*'—the urging of arguments in sheer arrogance for and against certain doctrines in regard to which there is difference of opinion.—(50)

## VERSE (51).

HE SHALL NOT GO NEAR A HOUSE THAT IS FILLED BY HERMITS, BRĀHMAṆAS, BIRDS, DOGS OR OTHER MENDICANTS—(51)

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Filled*'—where many people have collected for the purpose of obtaining food,—to such a place he shall not go for alms.—(51)

## VERSE (52).

HIS HAIR, NAILS AND BEARD CLIPPED, EQUIPPED WITH VESSELS, STAFFS AND WATER-POT, HE SHALL CONSTANTLY WANDER ABOUT, SELF-CONTROLLED AND NOT CAUSING PAIN TO ANY LIVING BEINGS.—(52)

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Vessels*'—to be described later on.

'*Staffs*'—three; the Renunciate being required to carry three staffs.

'*Kusumbha*'—is *water-pot*, not the colouring substance.

What is said in the second half of the verse has been already said before. (52)

## VERSE (53)

**His vessels shall be non-metallic and free from holes; the cleansing of these has been ordained to be done by water, just like that of the vessels at a sacrifice(53)**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Non-metallic* :'—His vessels for carrying food or water shall not be made of gold or other metals.

'*Free from holes*'—not having any holes etc.,

These are cleansed, like the sacrificial vessels, by means of water alone; but only when they are not stained; if there are stained, these should be removed by the use of other (cleaning) substances also. (53)

## VERSE (54)

**Manu, the son of Svayambhu, has declared that the vessels of the renunciate shall be a gourd, a vessel of wood or of earthenware, or of splits. (54)**

*Bhāṣya*

'*Splits*'—i. e. of cane, or bamboo or such other split things.

'*Vessels of the Renunciate*'—for carrying food and water. (54)

## VERSE (55)

**He shall go for alms only once, and shall not seek for a large quantity; because the renunciate who becomes addicted to collecting alms becomes attached to sensual objects also. (55)**

*Bhāṣya*

What is laid down here is that the man shall *eat once*, this being the purpose of the alms; it does not mean that he shall go to

beg only once. What is intended here is the prohibition of eating twice; that is, the man, having gone for alms once, shall not save out of it for eating again. It is with a view to this that we have the prohibition *of eating*. It is for this reason that the text adds-'*he shall not seek for a large quantity*;' *Seeking for a large quantity* can only be for the purpose of eating again and again; specially because for one who delights in solitude, large quantities of food would not be wanted for the sake of servants and other dependents. By supplying a reason for what is laid down, the text implies that even at a single meal the man shall not eat too much.—(55)

## VERSE (56).

THE RENUNCIATE SHALL GO FOR BEGGING ALMS AT A TIME WHEN THERE IS NO SMOKE ISSUING, WHEN THE PESTLE HAS CEASED TO PLY, WHEN FIRE EMBERS HAVE BEEN EXTINGUISHED, WHEN PEOPLE HAVE EATEN, AND WHEN THE REMOVAL OF THE DISHES HAS BEEN FINISHED.—(56)

### *Bhāṣya*

That time at which people have already eaten. Similarly with the other epithets, '*Vidhūmē*' and the rest.

'*Removal of the dishes*'—the throwing away of the dishes in which people have taken their food; when this has been finished.

From all this what follows is that he shall beg for food after the first occasion for the giving of alms, during the first instalment of the cooking, has passed away.

'*When there is no smoke*' etc., indicate the impossibility of the cooking being done again.

When the pestles have '*ceased to ply*'—i. e. kept aside.—(56)

## VERSE (57).

HE SHALL NOT BE SORRY AT NOT OBTAINING ALMS; NOR SHALL HE REJOICE AT OBTAINING IT; HE SHALL HAVE ONLY WHAT SUFFICES TO SUSTAIN HIS LIFE, AND BE FREE FROM ALL ATTACHMENT TO HIS ACCESSORIES.—(57)

### *Bhāṣya*

If at the stated time he should fail to obtain food, he shall

not be '*sorry*,' dejected in mind. He shall not allow grief or joy to overtake him at failing or succeeding to obtain food.

'*What suffices to sustain his life.*'—This indicates the quantity of food to be begged. What this implies is that in the event of his failing to obtain alms, he shall sustain his life by such fruits, roots and water as do not belong to another person.

'*Accessories*—vessels, staff and so forth ;—'*attachment to these*'—i. e. making special efforts to obtain them ;—from this he should be '*free*'; that is he shall harbour no longings.—(57)

## VERSE (58).

HE SHALL DISDAIN ALL HONORIFIC PRESENTS ; BY HONORIFIC PRESENTS THE RENUNCIATE, EVEN THOUGH LIBERATED, BECOMES FETTERED—(58).

*Bhāṣya.*

"*Honorific presents*'—what is given after due honouring ;—this he shall '*disdain*'—deprecate, shun ; and what is deprecated he shall not do.

'*All*'—at all times ; not even for a single day he shall accept such an alms.

The second half of the verse is a purely laudatory exaggeration ; in reality one who has been liberated can never be '*fettered*' again.—(58).

## VERSE (59)

BY EATING LITTLE FOOD AND BY STANDING AND SITTING IN SOLITUDE, HE SHALL RESTRAIN HIS SENSES, WHEN ATTRACTED BY SENSUAL OBJECTS.—(59).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*In solitude*'—in a place devoid of people—he shall stand and sit.

This indicates that 'subjugation of the senses' is the result of living in solitude. Or, it may be taken to be indicative of *freedom from curiosity*.

He shall not stay even for a moment at a place where large number of people, men and women, with various kinds of dress and ornaments, congregate.—(59)

## VERSE (60)

BY THE RESTRAINING OF THE SENSES, BY THE DESTRUCTION OF LOVE AND HATRED, AND BY NOT INJURING LIVING BEINGS, HE BECOMES FIT FOR IMMORTALITY.—(60)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Restraining*'—preventing from operating on their objects.

'*Becomes fit for immortality.*'—He is enabled to become immortal. This shows that what is mentioned here is as useful as self-knowledge itself.—(60)

## VERSE (61)

HE SHOULD REFLECT UPON THE CONDITIONS OF MEN, ARISING FROM THE DEFECTS OF THEIR DEEDS, THEIR FALLING INTO HELL AND THEIR SUFFERINGS IN THE ABODE OF THE DEATH-GOD.—(61)

### *Bhāṣya.*

What is stated here is a mode of meditating upon the Supreme Truth, consisting in the noting of the fact that birth and rebirth abound in pain.

Finding that life in the world abounds in sufferings caused by the separation from friends, relations, sôns and wife and the loss of wealth &c., how could the man voluntarily go on undergoing the physical troubles of wandering about, begging for alms and so forth ?

The '*conditions*' of men abound in pain and result from the defects of their actions,—from their doing what is forbidden ; *e.g.* such acts as doing injury to living beings, stealing, adultery, cruelty,

back-biting, improper intentions and so forth. Or 'conditions' may stand for what the man undergoes in the world of the living itself,—in the shape of sorrows resulting from poverty, disease, ill-treatment and so forth.

As regards the other world, there is '*falling into hell*'—*i.e.* being born as worms and insects in places filled with urine, ordure and dirt &c.

'*Sufferings in the abode of the death-god*'—in the form of *Kumbhīpāka* and other hells.

Something more has to be reflected upon (and this is pointed out in the next verse).—(61)

## VERSE (62).

ON THE SEPARATION OF LOVED ONES AND THE MEETING OF HATED PERSONS ; ON BEING BESET WITH DECREPITUDE AND SUFFERING FROM DISEASES.—(62)

### *Bhāṣya.*

The Accusative ending is due to the verse being construed along with the verb 'should reflect' (of the preceding verse.)

'*Loved ones*'—sons and other relations.

'*Separation*'—caused by their untimely death.

'*Hated persons*'—Enemies.

'*Meeting*'—in battle &c.

'*Decrepitude.*'—'Decrepitude' is a peculiar state of the body during the fourth quarter of man's age.—'*Being beset*'—*i.e.* having the shape of the body spoilt, feebleness, weakness of the senses, the advent of asthma and other diseases, being loved by none, being jeered at by all ;—all this constitutes being 'beset with decrepitude.'

'*Diseases*'—even before the advent of old age, some people are attacked by diseases.—(62)

Even when reduced to such a condition, if strong desires continue to appear in the man, he is, irresistibly and involuntarily led on to the following contingencies :—

## VERSE (63)

THERE IS FOR HIS INNER SOUL DEPARTURE FROM THE BODY, THEN AGAIN BIRTH IN THE WOMB, AND TRANSMIGRATIONS AMONG MILLIONS OF LIFE-FORMS.—(63)

*Bhāṣya.*

There is '*departure*'—going out—of the life-breaths; and this constitutes unbearable pain.

'*Birth in the womb*'—where there are several kinds of pain: the organs are not yet developed, the child in the womb is in utter darkness, and it also suffers from diseases, described in the medical science, as proceeding from the extremely cold and hot foods eaten by the mother in varying quantities.

'*Transmigrations*'—passing through—'*among millions of life-forms*';—the soul being born in the bodies of lower animals, worms, insects, dogs and so forth.

*Objection*—"The Inner Soul is held to be omnipresent and eternal; how can there be any '*departure*' for it, when it is present everywhere? how again can there be any '*transmigration*' among life-forms? how too can there be any '*birth*' for it when it is eternal?"

*Our answer is as follows*:—The theory of some people is that there lies within the body the 'personality' of the size of the thumb, composed of rudimentary substances, mind and intellect; and it is this personality that goes on being born during the entire series of births and deaths; and when this becomes endowed with a certain merit, the faculty of consciousness becomes manifested in it; and it is through this faculty that the qualities of the said Personality come to be attributed to the Inner Soul.

Or, the explanation may be that the inner soul is related to certain entities in the shape of the life-breath and so forth; and when these depart, the soul is said to 'depart.' Similarly with 'birth.'

All this we shall explain again under Discourse XII and we need not prolong the discussion here.—(63)

## VERSE (64)

ON THE INFLICTION OF PAIN UPON LIVING BEINGS, CAUSED BY DEMERIT; AS ALSO UPON THE IMPERISHABLE UNION WITH HAPPINESS PROCEEDING FROM THE ESSENCE OF MERIT.—(64)

### *Bhāṣya.*

The '*infliction*'–experiencing–'*of pain*' proceeds from Demerit.

'*Merit*'—as described above, is an '*artha*', an '*entity*' and from this—entity, essence—proceeds '*union with imperishable happiness*'.

This also has to be reflected upon.

The meaning is that Renunciation constitutes the principal merit.—(64)

## VERSE (65)

BY MEDITATION HE SHALL RECOGNISE THE SUBTILE CHARACTER OF THE HIGHER SELF, AS ALSO THE POSSIBILITY OF ITS PRESENCE IN ALL ORGANISMS, HIGH AND LOW.—(65)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Meditation*'—steadiness of the functioning of the mind, as described by Patañjali. By means of that, '*he shall recognise the subtile character*' of the conscious entity in the body, the soul; and he shall not look upon either the body etc. or the life-breath etc, as the 'Soul,' which latter is to be understood, by the help of intuition born of meditation, as something different from all external and internal things;—this is what is meant by the text. Of the Soul, there are no grosser manifestations. And just as he can realise the 'possibility of its presence'—in the higher organisms in the form of the bodies of the Gods and other such beings—i. e. the fact of its ensouling these bodies and passing through experiences born therein, even though in reality it is omnipresent,—exactly in the same manner can one realise it also in the lower organisms, of lower animals, spirits, demons and so forth.

According to the philosophy of Monism, the souls in the organsims are only so many manifestations of the Supreme Self; and it is for this reason that the text has spoken of the man recognising the '*transmigrations* of the Higher Self.'—(65)

## VERSE (66)

**EVEN THOUGH HE BE ADORNED, THE MAN SHOULD FULFIL HIS DUTY, TO WHICHEVER ORDER HE MAY BELONG. HE SHOULD BE EQUAL TO ALL BEINGS ; MERE EXTERNAL MARKS ARE NOT CONDUCIVE TO MERIT.—(66)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Adorned*'—with flowers, bracelets and other ornaments.

'*Duty*'—all that has been prescribed for the Renunciate, such as meditation on the Self and so forth, he shall perform with care. In fact one should perform the duties of that order to which he may belong.

One should not consider himself to have become a 'Renunciate' merely by wearing such external marks as the 'three staffs' and the like ; in fact '*he should be equal to all beings*;—that is, he should, with care, eschew all love, hatred and greed.

By deprecating the external marks it is not meant that the man should wear ornaments.—(66)

## VERSE (67)

**THOUGH THE FRUIT OF THE KATAKA TREE CLARIFIES WATER, YET WATER DOES NOT BECOME CLEAR BY THE MERE MENTION OF ITS NAME.—(67)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

When the fruit of the *kataka* tree is put in dirty water, the water becomes clarified, takes the clear form. But it does not become clear by the mere mention of the name of that fruit ; it

needs *action*. Similarly, the wearing of external marks is like the pronouncing of the name of the fruit ; and success is attained, not by that wearing alone, but by the due fulfilment of such duties as 'resting in solitude', 'meditation', 'equal-mindedness towards all beings' and so forth.

This verse is a laudatory supplement to what has gone before.—(67)

## VERSE (68)

WITH A VIEW TO THE SAFETY OF LIVING BEINGS, HE SHALL ALWAYS, DURING DAY AND NIGHT, EVEN DURING BODILY ILLNESS, WALK AFTER HAVING SCANNED THE GROUND.—(68)

### *Bhāṣya.*

This verse shows the necessity for what has been said above (46) regarding the treading on the ground 'sight-purified.'

'*Even during bodily illness*'—when the body is suffering from some disease ;—*during day and night*'—when the grass-bed has been spread for sleeping, he shall not lay down his body upon it without having carefully looked over it. The transgression of this rule involves the necessity of performing an expiatory rite.

Or, the text may be taken as referring to those minute animalcules that become attached to the man's body and perish by the mere moving of the limbs.—(68)

## VERSE (69)

BY DAY AND BY NIGHT, IF THE RENUNCIATE UNINTENTIONALLY INJURES SOME LIVING CREATURES, HE SHALL, FOR THE PURPOSE OF EXPIATING IT, BATHE AND THEN PERFORM SIX 'BREATH-SUSPENSIONS.'—(69)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Living creatures*'—here, should be understood as standing for minute animalcules ; 'for the expiation of the sin accruing from the injuring of these';—such is the construction of the passage.—(69)

## SECTION (7)

## Means of Removing Sin.

### VERSE (70)

EVEN THREE 'BREATH-SUSPENSIONS,' ACCOMPANIED BY THE THREE 'VYĀHṚTI'-SYLLABLES AND THE SYLLABLE 'OM', WHEN DULY PERFORMAD, SHOULD BE REGARDED AS THE HIGHEST AUSTERITY FOR THE BRĀHMAṆA.—(70)

*Bhāṣya.*

By using the term '*brāhmaṇa*' the text implies that what is mentioned constitutes the duty of the whole caste, and is not restricted to the Renunciate only.

'*Even three*'—more than three lead to more excellent results; *three* are absolutely necessary.

'*Vyāhṛti syllables*'— those mentioned under 2.81.

'*Praṇava*'—the syllable 'om'.

The breath-suspensions are to be '*accompanied by these*'.—This indicates the duration of the breath-suspension.

These breath-suspensions are of three kinds, named '*Kumbhaka*' (total suspension), '*Pūraka*' (inhaling) and '*Rēchaka*' (exhaling). The total suppression of air passing out of the mouth and the nostrils constitutes the (inhalation and suspension); and when the man does not inhale breath but continuously keeps on exhaling, it is called 'Rechaka', 'exhalation.' The exact duration of each of these has been described under Discourse II. Or, in view of its being spoken of as 'austerity,' it may be continued till it becomes actually painful.—(70)

### VERSE (71)

JUST AS THE IMPURITIES OF METALLIC ORES ARE CONSUMED WHEN THEY ARE BLASTED, EVEN SO ARE THE TAINTS OF THE SENSES CONSUMED THROUGH THE SUSPENSION OF BREATH.—(71)

*Bhāṣya.*

When the 'metallic ores,' of gold for instance, are blasted in

a furnace, what is left behind is pure gold ; similarly when the senses apprehend their objects, the man feels joys and sorrows, and these are productive of sin ; this sin is consumed through the suspension of breath.

For the man seeking Liberation, indulging in joys and griefs has been forbidden.

But even in a man who has given up all attachment, and has his organs under his control, these are bound to appear, in howsoever small a degree, through the sheer nature of things, whenever by chance various kinds of colour, sound &c. become presented before him. And it is for the removal of the taints due to these that breath-suspensions have to be practised.—(71)

## VERSE (72)

By means of 'Breath-suspension' he shall destroy the taints ; and by means of 'Concentration,' all sin ; all attachments by means of 'Abstraction,' and by means of 'Contemplation,' those attributes that are not independent.—(72)

*Bhāṣya.*

What is said here regarding Breath-suspension has already been indicated in the preceding verse.

But some people explain this verse to mean that 'one shall destroy the *taints*'—i. e. *love*, *hatred* &c.

But how can these latter be destroyed by means of Breath-suspension ? What can be destroyed by it is *sin* (not *love* &c.), specially as it is sin only which has its *origin* as well as *destruction* both indicated in the scriptures, and hence imperceptible ; while Love or Hatred and the rest are all directly perceptible ; so that what destroys these, and what is destroyed by them, can also be learnt by perception, and not through the scriptures. If the scripture were to speak of the destroying of these, its meaning would be that 'one should destroy these things, which are by their very nature, destructible';—and what would be the authority attached to such a declaration ? From all this it is clear that what is meant by the term 'taint' is the *evil deed* that proceeds

from Love and the rest. And this is 'destroyed' by the destruction of its effects ; because as for the act itself, it perishes by reason of its evanescent character. This is what is meant by '*dāha*', 'being consumed', and not being actually *burnt to ashes.*

Thus the present verse is only a reiteration of what has gone before in the preceding verse.

'*By means of Concentration*'—

*Objection*—" '*Kilviṣa*' is *sin*, so is '*doṣa*' also. Hence the words of the text should have been 'by means of Breath-Suspension and Concentration he shall destroy all *taints, doṣas*'; and there would be no need of mentioning *kilviṣa, sin,* separately. Or, only '*kilviṣa*', *sin*,' need have been mentioned, and where was the need for mentioning '*doṣa*,' '*taint*', also ?"

The explanation is as follows :—It is absolutely necessary to mention the 'taint', in order to show that what are destroyed by means of Breath-suspension are only particular kinds of sin, not all. The term 'taint' stands for Love and other like things ; and hence the word can be rightly taken as figuratively indicating such *sinful acts* as are prompted by Love, Hatred &c., as has been already pointed out.

"If so, then, let the *taint* be mentioned, what is the use of mentioning the '*kilviṣa*,' *sin* ?"

No objection can be taken to it, as it is mentioned only for the purpose of filling up the metre. Further (the use of the second term gives the further meaning that) Breath-suspension is destructive of the sin accruing from the taints of Love &c., while Concentration stops the sin from arising at all.

"What is 'Concentration' ?"

By a longing for sensual objects and their enjoyment the mind is sometimes drawn away from the point where it may have been resting during the periods of quiescence, self-control and the like ; and it is by means of 'Concentration' that it is concentrated, kept fixed on that same point. As a matter of fact, when one perceives brightness, charm, youth, shapeliness of the body and so forth in a woman, they give rise to his longing for

her; all these details are apprehended by concrete perception; and all such perceptions are so many thoughts. Hence they can be counter-acted by counter-thoughts pertaining to the defects in the object perceived,—such as 'her body is filled with urine and ordure,' 'the very object Woman consists of skin and bones;—fie upon the men that long for such a despicable object;—even the slight pleasure that she affords is momentary, and ultimately leads to terrible sufferings at the hands of the Death-god'. This is what is called 'reflecting over' the object. This reflection of the defects is what is spoken of below under verse 76.

The same method of reflection is to be employed regarding food and other objects of enjoyment. For instance—'all this—sugar, cakes, fresh butter, milk-rice and so forth—stands on the same footing as coarse food obtained in alms; there being no difference in their nutritive power; the slight difference in their taste that may be felt on the tip of the tongue, is felt for the infinitesimal part of a second, so that even this momentary taste is like the imaginary city. Similarly one may reflect upon the defects in the objects of touch; and so forth. This is what is taught in the present text (by the term 'Concentration').

Others offer the following explanation of the term '*dhāraṇā*' of the text:—When a man by constant practice succeeds in concentrating his breath, moving along his mouth and nose, in the cavity of his heart,—this is what constitutes 'Concentration'.

"In what way would this differ from Breath-suspension?"

The difference is that we have 'concentration' also when the breath is held up in such places as the arms, the forehead and the like; whereas in Breath-suspension there is always exhalation at the end.

Others again hold '*Dhāraṇā*', 'Concentration', to consist in the qualities of 'Friendliness, Joyfulness, Pathos and Indifference.' 'Friendliness, Kindness, Joyousness and Indifference, towards all living beings, carry the contemplation to the regions of Brahman; and these constitute *Dhāraṇā*'. (says an old text.)—Here 'friendliness' stands for *absence of hatred*, and not

*friendly affection* ; as this latter would be of the nature of a hindrance ;—'kindness' is pity, a disposition of the mind ; it consists in the longing to rescue a suffering person from suffering, and not the actual desisting from injuring, or conferring a benefit upon, others ; it is in view of this that it has been described as a *disposition of the mind*, which should be practised—'joyousness' also stands for *absence of grief* at suffering caused by disease, or at the fear of the sufferings of hell, and not for actual *pleasure*, as this would be conducive to attachment ;—'indifference' towards objects, favourable as well as unfavourable, is well known.

Or again, 'concentration' may be explained as consisting in fixing the mind on the inner cavity of the heart, in the process of meditating upon Brahman.

'*By Abstraction, all attachment* ;—'attachment' here stands for the connection of the senses with their objects and their being drawn towards them. This is destroyed by Abstraction ; whereupon the senses become drawn off from the objects, or their attraction is obstructed. For instance, when one happens to see a bracelet or some such ornament, or a handsome woman, he shall not fix his eyes upon them, he shall move his eyes to something else ; similarly with all the senses. In this manner the composure of the Yogin becomes unperturbed.

'*By means of Contemplation, those attributes that are not independent.*' The 'attributes' meant here are those of Harmony, Energy and Inertia ; and these are '*not independent*,' being subservient to something else, in the shape of Consciousness. Though the soul or person is free from pleasure &c., yet there appears in him the false notion 'I am happy—I am unhappy' ; though he is free from attributes, he identifies himself with them ; —all this has got to be destroyed by contemplating upon the distinction between the Soul and the Attributes ; that the distinction between the two has to be drawn in some such form as— 'the Person, being of the nature of Consciousness is beyond Attributes, and it is Primordial Matter that consists of the Attributes.'—(72)

How is this to be done? What too is to be contemplated upon by contemplation? This is explained in the next verse.

VERSE (73)

BY THE PRACTICE OF MEDITATION HE SHALL RECOGNISE THE PRESENCE OF THIS INNER SOUL IN ALL BEINGS, HIGH AND LOW,—WHICH IS DIFFICULT TO UNDERSTAND BY UNREGENERATE PEOPLE.—(73)

*Bhāṣya.*

*Inner soul*—the inner controlling personality;—'*presence*'—character—should be recognised.

Notions of pleasure and pain appear not only among human beings but among all kinds of '*beings, high and low*,'—i.e. among animals, goblins, Pishāchas &c.— there is the notion of 'I' and 'mine'; and this has to be got rid of.

Or, the man may go on pondering over the following ideas—'This soul is omnipresent, higher than the sky, higher than heaven, higher than all these regions, having all happiness, all tastes, all odours, all touches; and yet he is beset with hunger and thirst; and in the midst of such pleasures and pains, he passes through the experiences of his physical body, known as the *I*; how wonderful is the power of actions, that even this all-pervading, all-embracing soul is made subservient to the actions! I shall never have recourse to these acts, which are like a wicked master. Like a hired servant I shall wait upon the acts (already done by me); as when a man enters a man's service being urged to it by his need, thinking him to be kind, but soon finding out that he is difficult to please, irascible, given to beating, and harsh of speech, the man decides that he would not serve him any longer, after he has cleared off by service all that may have been advanced to him.' The thought to be practised should be in the form—'I shall get to the end of my past acts by going through the experiences resulting from them, and shall perform no further acts', and so forth. Similarly one should study the Vedānta, and having, with its help, discussed the question as to

whether the embodied souls are only manifestations of the Supreme Self or independent entities, and come to the conclusion that there is no soul apart from the Supreme Self,—he should ponder over this.

Others explain the text as follows :—'*Dhyāna*' is *Contemplation*, and '*Yoga*' is *Meditation*; and by means of these '*he should recognise the presence of the Inner Soul*'; and having recognised it, he should meditate upon it.

Or '*Dhyāna-yoga*' may be explained as '*yoga*', *calmness of mind*, for the purposes of '*dhyāna*,' *contemplation*;—having secured this calmness, '*he should recognise the presence of the Inner Soul*'; i.e. by means of devout worship he shall realise its presence as equipped with the qualities of Immortality and the like, free from defects, as described in the Vedānta-texts.

'*Akṛtātman*' '*unregenerate person*' is one whose '*ātman*', soul, mind, is '*akṛta*,' untutored. By such persons the Inner Soul cannot be grasped.—(73)

## VERSE (74)

EQUIPPED WITH TRUE INSIGHT, HE IS NO LONGER FETTERED BY HIS ACTS; BUT DESTITUTE OF INSIGHT, HE FALLS INTO THE CYCLE OF BIRTHS AND DEATHS.—(74)

### *Bhāṣya.*

This describes the result of what has been just enjoined.

'*True insight*'—true knowledge of the Self, just described; '*equipped*' with this,—i. e. having obtained direct apprehension of it.

'*Is not fettered by acts*'—does not fall into the cycle of births and deaths ; since the past acts have become exhausted on account of their effects having been already experienced, and no fresh acts are done.

This does not mean that Liberation is attained by mere knowledge.

He who is not endowed with the spiritual insight, taught in the Vedanta, and who is only given to the performance of acts, falls into the cycle of births and deaths.—(74)

## VERSE (75)

BY ABSTENTION FROM INJURING, BY THE NON-ATTACHMENT OF THE SENSES, BY THE ACTS PRESCRIBED IN THE VEDA, BY THE RIGOROUS PRACTISING OF AUSTERITIES, THEY ATTAIN THE POSITION OF THAT BEING.—(75)

### *Bhāṣya.*

These two verses are indicative of the doctrine that Liberation is attained by Knowledge and Action combined. The preceding verse spoke of *Knowledge* and the present one speaks of *Action.*

*Question:*— "What are those acts 'prescribed in the Veda,' whose result is here spoken of as the 'attaining of the position of That Being'? As for the voluntary acts, the results of these are already mentioned in those very texts that enjoin the acts themselves; and if they were to assume results other than those, there would be carrying the matter to an absurd length; and it would give rise to the great evil that the results of the acts would become mixed up and confused. Further, since the injunctive text would have all its syntactical needs supplied by the mention of the single result, how could any connection be established between that text and the additional words that would have to be thrown in if we were to connect the acts with the further result of 'attaining the position of That Being'? As a matter of fact, the needs of the injunction having been supplied by what is directly mentioned in the text, it does not stand in need of anything else."

Our answer to the above is as follows:—In fact in the Esoteric Section (of the Veda) we have a distinct text to the effect that 'one attains That by means of sacrifice.' So that by a proper adjustment there would be both kinds of results accomplished by means of Action; and there would be nothing incongruous in all the voluntary acts leading to the more limited results, as also

to the attainment of 'the position of That Being'; as two distinct sacrifices performed at two different times would lead to two distinct results The present text moreover has not specified any particular sacrifice, which could justify the conclusion that the result here spoken proceeds from the *obligatory* acts, and not from the voluntary ones.

The following argument might be raised against us:--"In as much as no results have been spoken of in the Vedic texts regarding any results following from the obligatory acts, it is only right that what is mentioned in the present text should be connected with those acts, and not with the voluntary ones; because there would be no difficulty in connecting it with them; and what the Esoterictext just quoted has declared regarding '*sacrifice*' leading to That' would also be amply justified by this construction.'

Why should any importance be attached to the mention of results in Vedic texts? Vedic Texts are purely injunctive in their character; their function lies in laying down *what should be done*; and that a certain act *should be done* is made known to us by such terms as 'as long as one lives' and the like, without the help of any words speaking of results; so that (even when the result is actually mentioned) the word expressive of the result is not needed at all by the sentence; so that in cases where it is assumed (and not directly mentioned) it would be entirely superfluous, and hence could not be construed along with the injunctive text. Thus then, the conclusion is that the esoteric text quoted above speaking of 'sacrifices' not being capable of being restricted to any particular kind of sacrifice, must be taken as including all kinds of sacrifices, obligatory as well as voluntary.

Further, the sesult spoken of in the present text cannot proceed from the voluntary acts; as none of then has been enjoined as to be done by 'one desirous of Liberation'. In fact it was with reference to this that the text declared (under 2. 2) that 'being given up to desires is not commendable'; and also in the *Mahābhārata*—'May thy acts not be done simply with a view to results. May thou not be addicted to inaction," (*Bhagavadgītā* 2. 47).

The conclusion thus is that so long as the actor has his mind beset with notions of diversity, is under the influence of Desire and Ignorance, and is not free from the notions of 'I' and 'mine',—the results obtained by him are just the narrow ones that he had bargained for (on the strength of the Vedic texts); while the other kind of actor, who undertakes an act without reference to any results, and simply because it has been enjoined by the Veda and as such *should be done*, attains *Brahman* Itself, which consists of the highest boundless bliss.

It will not be right to urge against this the following argument :—"There are one hundred and seventy-one sacrifices; in as much as it would be impossible for anyone to perform all these, the text would be enjoining an impossibility (if it meant *all kinds of sacrifices*)".—Because in the present context the performance of the acts is meant to be accomplished by the attainment of *true insight* itself. The meaning is that all sacrifices are to be accomplished by the said *insight*. This is what is meant by such texts as—'Other Brāhmaṇas offer secrifices by means of Knowledge itself'.

Or, the particular position or region spoken of in the present text as attained (by non-injury &c.) may be taken to be just those whose special character would be determined by the man's desires—according as he may be desirous of heaven or sons &c. &c. In fact persons who have their minds still beset with notions of such diversity as those of 'past', 'present' and so forth, are prompted by false longings, even when betaking themselves to acts leading up to the highest ends of man; just as when a child is tempted to drink a nutritious medicine by the false hope (set up before it) in the form that by drinking it it would have long hair.

Another theory on this subject is as follows :—The acts referred to in the present text are the obligatory ones. It is these whose omission is sinful, and acts as an obstacle to liberation. And it is the fact of these being properly performed, the obstacle being thereby removed, that is spoken of by the expression '*by the acts prescribed in the Veda*' :—even though these have not been enjoined as leading to liberation.

'*Rigorous*'—powerfully conducive to the emaciation of the body.

'*Of that* Being'—of Brahman.

'*Position*'—place, region.

'*Attain*'—Acquire.

Or, the '*position of that*' may mean that character of Brahman which may be in accordance with his desire; i. e. being the Lord of all beings, or self-sufficiency, or the attaining of its very essence, and so forth.—(75).

## VERSES (76-77)

HE SHALL DISCARD THIS ABODE OF MATERIAL SUBSTANCES, WHERE THE BONES ARE THE PILLARS, WHICH IS HELD TOGETHER BY THE TENDONS, PLASTERED WITH FLESH AND BLOOD; COVERED WITH THE SKIN, FOUL-SMELLING, AND FULL OF URINE AND ORDURE;—(76) BESET WITH WRINKLES AND SORROW, THE SEAT OF DISEASE, HARASSED, SULLIED WITH PASSIONS AND PERISHABLE.—(77)

### *Bhāṣya.*

This is meant to create disgust.

To say nothing of the bodies of worms insects and fleas, which are born in the earth and out of moisture etc.,—the human body itself, which has been considered highly desirable, the likelihood of losing which keeps man in constant fear,—is like a latrine, the abode of urine and ordure. It is this latrine-hut that is described.

The *bones* constitute the pillars; the hut is supported by the bones;—it is tied up with the tendons; it is plastered outside with flesh and blood;—and it is covered up with the *skin*; or *roofed over* with the skin;—'*filled with urine and ordure*';—the use of the Genitive here is analogous to that in the expression '*odanasya pūrṇaḥ*', filled with rice.—(76).

'*Wrinkles*'—indicates a peculiar state of the body in old age, due to its decrepitude.

'*Harassed*'—ever beset with diseases.

'*Sullied with passions*'—i. e. harbouring desires, the non-fulfilment of which brings irremediable unbearable pain.

Realising all this the man '*shall discard*' this body, which is the abode of '*material substances*'—the products of the Earth, in the form of fat, marrow, phlegm, urine, semen and blood ;—it cannot be the abode of the *Soul* ; because this is all-pervading. For all these reasons one should not cherish any affection for the body.—(77.)

## VERSE (78.)

HE, WHO LEAVES THIS BODY, EITHER AS THE TREE LEAVES THE BANK, OR AS THE BIRD LEAVES THE TREE, BECOMES FREED FROM THE SHARK OF MISERY.—(78.)

### *Bhāṣya.*

Continuing the figure of the body spoken of as the hut, we have the simile—'*as the bird leaves the tree*'. What is meant is, not that the body should be voluntarily given up, by entering into the fire, or such methods of suicide, but one shall not cultivate attachment to it. And then the body shall fall off by itself, by the exhaustion of Karmic residuum ; just as the tree on the banks falls off. This is what has been said above (40) in regard *not rejoicing at death.*

But when the man has acquired the inner light, has controlled the movements of his breath, and has withdrawn his mind from all manifestations of illusion ;—he may even voluntarily leave off the body ; in the same manner as the bird leaves the tree.

'*Shark*'—which is like the shark, resembling it in being a source of trouble ; hence the text has added the term '*misery*'; Even for the man who has attained discriminative wisdom, troubles continue to beset him so long as the body lasts ; as such is the very nature of it.

This second alternative (of leaving the body voluntarily has been put forward in view of there being objections against the

former one (of awaiting the chance of the falling off of the body)—(78)

## VERSE (79)

**Having, by the practice of meditation, attributed what is agreeable to him, to his good acts, and what is disagreeable, to his evil acts, he reaches the eternal Brahman.—(79)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

Disturbance of the mind caused by pleasure and pain, and appearing in the forms of joy and sorrow, should be got rid of in the following manner. [He shall cultivate the following idea]—'When such and such a person does anything pleasing to me, it is the result of some good act that I may have done in the past; and the doer of the act has not done it through any feelings of affection towards me; in fact he could not do anything inimical to me; and when some one does what is disagreeable to me, there also what is the source of my pain is only my own evil act';—this is what he shall ponder over while practising meditation; so that he does not feel any attraction towards the man who does what is agreeable to him, nor any repulsion towards one who does what is disagreeable to him.

By doing thus '*he reaches the eternal Brahman*', directly, and has not got to pass through the intervening stages of the Luminous Path and so forth.

The presence of the epithet '*eternal*' implies that the man does not return to the cycle of births and deaths.—(79)

## VERSE (80)

**When, by disposition, he becomes free from longing for all things, then he obtains lasting happiness in this world, as also after death.—(80)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

This teaches the cultivation of a mental disposition.

It is not by the abandoning of the acquisition of desired things that one becomes 'free from longings'; he becomes so only when he renounces what forms the source of all longing.

'*Disposition*' is an attribute of the mind, or of the soul, in the form of *desire*..

'*Towards all things*'—'*sarvabhāvēṣu*.'—This second '*bhāva*' denotes *things*. The presence of the epithet '*all*' implies that *attachment* to even such necessary things as articles of food and drink which are required for the maintenance of the body, is to be deprecated ;—and not the *desire*. Because the *desire* for such things, in the form of hunger and thirst, arises from the very nature of things and is bound to appear. But 'desire' is something different from 'longing': *Longing* arises from attachment and is demeaning ; while *desire* for food *&c.* appears in the man naturally, after the digestion of what has been eaten and drunk.—(80)

## VERSE (81)

HAVING, IN THIS MANNER, GRADUALLY RENOUNCED ALL ATTACHMENTS, HE BECOMES FREED FROM ALL PAIRS OF OPPOSITES, AND REPOSES IN BRAHMAN ALONE.—(81)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Having renounced all attachments*.'—'*Attachment*' stands for the notion of 'mine' that people have with regard to such things as the cow, the horse, the elephant, gold, slaves, wife, agricultural lands, houses and so forth. When this has been renounced, and the man has begun to delight in solitude ;—having taken to this as the principal method, and in the manner detailed above—i.e. by the due performance of the temporal and spiritual acts prescribed —he '*reposes in Brahman*,'—which is of the nature of pure consciousness ; and he is no longer fettered by actions. This is what is meant by the phrase '*from all pairs of opposites*'—i.e. pleasures and pains as resulting from good and bad acts.—*he becomes freed*'—(81)

## VERSE (82)

**ALL THIS THAT HAS BEEN DECLARED HERE IS APPURTENANT TO MEDITATION ; HE WHO DOES NOT REALISE AND CULTIVATE THE SAID MENTAL ATTITUDE DOES NOT OBTAIN THE REWARD OF THE ACTS.—(82)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Appurtenant to Meditation*',—i e. what comes about only when there is Meditation ; what is attained only when meditation is properly done.

"*All this that has been declared here*'—directly described, not merely indirectly implied. That is, the cultivating of the feeling that good and bad deeds are the causes of agreeable and disagreeable experiences ;—when man does something disagreeable, it is always the outcome of natural forces (of one's own acts) and stands on the same footing as when fever causes suffering or fire burns ; and just as the man, who has been burnt by fire, does not hate fire, so also he should not hate the man that causes him pain ; nor shall he forbid him to do it (just as no one goes to forbid the fire).

All this becomes possible only when there is Meditation, when the mind is duly concentrated. Consequently one should at all times, cultivate the following thought :—Pleasure and pain are the effect of past Actions ; in reality the King is not the bestower of happiness, of landed property and other things ; in fact it is by my own effort that the first approach to him was obtained ; it is my own past meritorious act that is the real bestower of the gift, and not the King ; similarly the fine imposed (Penalty inflicted) is not what causes me trouble ; it is my own acts that are troubling me ; neither the King nor any one else is able to do it.'

All this shall always be pondered over, reflected upon ; and all that has been described above as conducive to disgust with the world—thinking of the body a hut having bones for pillars &c. (76)—this also has to be always pondered over.

(A) '*Anadhyātmavit*';—'*adhyātma*' here stands for *mental attitude*;—he who does not realise,—does not cultivate—the above-described mental attitude,—'*does not obtain the reward of the acts*'; of such acts of the Renunciate, for instance, as *begging alms, living in the village for a single night* and so forth, he does not obtain the 'reward,' in the shape of *Liberation*. That is to say, the mere cotemplation of the body as a hut with bones for its pillars and so forth does not always bring about freedom from longing, so long as love and hatred have not been got rid of by the attributing of all that happens to one's own acts. When this attitude of the mind becomes permanantly fixed, then alone is the reward obtained, and not when it comes about only once in a way.

(B) [*Second explanation of 'anadhyātmavit'*]—Or, '*what has been declared*' may refer to the 'reposing in Brahman' (81); and the meaning thus is that this '*reposing in Brahman*' is '*appurtenant to meditation*,' and is not attained merely by the perpormance of acts. And as regards the question as to what is it that has to be *meditated upon*, the text adds '*nahyanadhyātmavit*'—and the term '*adhyātma*' stands for those teatsisés on Vedānta that have been composed on the subject of the Soul;—he who does not know this.—Or '*adhyātma*' may stand for *that which pertains to the soul*; i. e. such ideas as—'the Soul is something distinct from the body, the sense-organs, the mind, the intellect, the life-breath and so forth, and it does not perish when these perish;—it is neither the doer of acts nor the enjoyer of their fruits';—all these notions belong to one who is swayed by the idea of diversity;—when it has destroyed all evil, it is not affected by the taints or their effects;—being one, it is all this, there is nothing apart from it;—diversity is only apparent. One who does not know all this as described in the Harisavama, Sadaka and other (?) Upaniṣads, and does not strengthen these ideas by constant and one-pointed meditation, does not obtain the said '*reward of acts*.' The sense of the verse in this case would be that—'Except at the time that one is either taking food or engaged in some necessary act, one should always keep meditating upon the soul as described in the Vedanta and other treatises',

(C) (*Third Explanation*) Or, even though the text occurs in the section dealing with Renunciation, yet the '*reward of acts*' may be taken as refering to the Householder also; specially as it is this latter for whom the performance of acts constitutes the most important duty. According to this view, the meaning of the verse comes to be this:—Though Householders may duly perform the *Agnihotra* and other rites, yet, if they happen to be ignorant of the esoteric sciences,—those sciences which form the very essence of the rites, in the shape of the *Udgītha*, which is described as permeating all acts, and with which all persons learned in rituals are thoroughly conversant,—they do not obtain the full reward of those rites, which appear after a long time. This is what has been described in two *Shruti* texts of the *Bṛhadāraṇyaka* and the *Chhāndogya* Upaniṣads:—(a) 'O Gārgi, he who without knowing this syllable, performs sacrifices and practises austerities even for several thousand years, all this becomes only perishable; but what is done through full knowledge, with faith and in full accordance with the esoteric science, becomes extremely virile';—that is, excellent results accrue only to him who performs acts only after having understood the philosophy of the soul. (b) This has also been declared in the *Chhāndogya*—'Those who know this and meditate upon it as faith and austerity etc., etc.,' (5-10-1) It is with reference to these persons equipped with full knowledge and performing the prescribed acts that the *Shruti* has declared that they reach the region of Brahman by the path of light etc.(82).

The object to be meditated upon, for the sake of obtaining the knowledge of the Soul, having been thus indicated, it would appear as if the repeating of Vedic *mantras* were not required at all; hence it is this that is enjoined by the next verse.

## VERSE (83)

**HE SHALL CONSTANTLY RECITE VEDIC TEXTS BEARING UPON SACRIFICES, THOSE DEALING WITH DEITIES AND THOSE DEALING WITH THE SOUL, WHICH HAVE BEEN CALLED 'VEDĀNTA.'—(83)**

### *Bhāṣya*

What this verse permits (for the Renunciate) is the mere

*reciting* of the texts, and not the repeating and getting up of them, as is prescribed for the Householder.

'*Bearing upon sacrifices*'—i. e. the Brāhmaṇa texts prescribing the sacrificial rites.

'*Dealing with deities*'—those indicating the deities of sacrifices.

A particular kind of texts of this last class is '*those dealing with the Soul;*'–i. e. '*aham manurabhavam &*,' '*aham rudrēbhiḥ etc.*' and so forth.

*Which have been called* '*Vedānta*'—and which deal with Action and Knowledge both. This shows that it is the combination of these two that makes one reach Brahman.—(83)

## VERSE (84)

THIS IS THE REFUGE FOR THE IGNORANT, THIS FOR THE LEARNED; THIS FOR THOSE SEEKING HEAVEN, AND THIS ALSO FOR THOSE DESIRING IMMORTALITY.—(84)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*This*' refers to the Veda; which also is Brahman; as has been declared in the following words–'Two Brahmans have to be recognised—the Verbal Brahman and the Supreme Brahman; one who is thoroughly acquainted with the Verbal Brahman reaches the Supreme One';–one is said to become 'acquainted with the Veda' when he studies it, understands it and acts according to its injunctions.

This verse is a commendatory supplement to the foregoing injunction.

'*For the ignorant*'—those who do not understand the meaning of Vedic texts, and are yet entitled to and desirous of their reciting. The revered Vyāsa has declared success for the mere reciter. Or, 'ignorant' may mean *those not knowing the true nature of the Soul*; i. e. those who have not realised, with the help of the scriptures, the real nature of the Soul, and though engaged in meditation upon it, have not yet acquired the requisite steadiness of the mind.

For these people the Veda is the *'refuge'*; as by reciting it, acting in accordance with it and acquiring some knowledge of it, they are saved from falling into the life of worms and insects, or into hell.

*'This for the learned.'* The text proceeds to show how it is the 'refuge' for the learned—*'this for those seeking heaven;'*—i. e. those who know only the Ritualistic Sections of the Veda, and have not acquired any firm conviction regarding the Soul; and when these people perform the rites laid down in the Veda, they obtain heaven and other rewards. Others however, who have renounced all attachment and destroyed all passions, and are intent upon the contemplation of the real nature of the Soul, obtain *'immortality'*, i. e. non-return to the cycle of births and deaths.

For all these the Veda is the only *'refuge'*, and there is no other path. Such is the sense of the verse—(84)

### VERSE (85)

THE TWICE-BORN PERSON, WHO, BY THIS SUCCESSIVE PROCESS, GOES FORTH (AS A MENDICANT), SHAKES OFF EVIL AND ATTAINS THE SUPREME BRAHMAN.—(85)

### *Bhāṣya.*

*'Successive process'*—the adopting of the method that has been described as consisting of the combination of action and knowledge;—i. e. after having paid off his debts.

*'Shakes off evil'*—just as the horse shakes off its hairs, so the man shakes off evil by means of self-knowledge. This has been thus described—'Just as the water does not become attached to the lotus-leaf so evil does not become attached to the man who knows It.'

*'He attains the Supreme Brahman'*—becomes one with Brahman, having got rid of all notions of diversity.

This verse describes the reward following from true knowledge and from the proper fulfilment of the duties of the particular life-stage.—(85).

## SECTION (8)

## The Renouncer of the Veda

### VERSE (86)

**THUS HAVE THE DUTIES OF THE SELF-CONTROLLED RENUNCIATES BEEN EXPOUNDED TO YOU. LISTEN NOW TO THE DUTIES OF THE 'RENOUNCERS OF THE VEDA.'—(86).**

*Bhāṣya.*

Those who have taken to the renouncing of the Veda are called '*Veda-sanyāsika*,' 'renouncers of the Veda.' The term '*veda*' indicates the renouncing of all such acts as the pouring of libations and the like, and not that of reciting Vedic texts; then again, as for meditation on the soul, this has been enjoined for these men also; so that what are forbidden for them are such acts as going on pilgrimages, keeping of fasts and so forth, all which require (for their accomplishment) wealth as well as bodily labour; and the prohibition does not apply to such acts as the twilight-prayer, repeating of mantras and the like, for which the man needs nothing besides himself. All this we shall explain at the proper place.

The first half of the verse sums up the section on Renunciation, and the second half introduces the duties of the 'renouncer of the Veda.'—(86).

### VERSES (87) & (88).

**THE STUDENT, THE HOUSEHOLDER, THE HERMIT AND THE RENUNCIATE,—ALL THESE, SEVERAL STAGES EMANATE FROM THE HOUSEHOLDER.—(87). BUT ALL THESE, WHEN OBSERVED IN DUE ORDER, ACCORDING TO THE SCRIPTURES LEAD THE BRĀHMAṆA WHO HAS (THUS) ACTED ACCORDING TO THE LAW, TO THE HIGHEST STATE.—(88).**

*Bhāṣya.*

*Objection* :—"Inasmuch as the author has promised that he is going to expound the duties of the Renouncer of the Veda, the assertion of the sequence of the life-stages is entirely irrelevant."

In answer to this some people have explained that the four life-stages have been mentioned in the present context with a view to show that 'Renunciation (of the Veda)' is not a distinct stage, being included among these same four; and the question arising as regards the particular stage in which it is included, the present verse points out that it is included in the state of the 'Householder'; since the man has to dwell in the 'house.'

Others however point out that the said 'Renunciation of the Veda' is to be included under the fourth stage of 'going forth as a mendicant', since it resembles this latter on this point that in both there is 'renouncing of attachments'; nor is there any need for including it under any one stage; because by virtue of the qualities of the man and of the Renunciate, the man would no longer have anything to do with sacrifices and other acts; specially as these have been enjoined by means of such specific words and expressions as restrict them to a definite life-stage.

"But if the man belongs to no life-stage, he would be liable to the penalty of the expiatory rite that has been prescribed for one who, for one year, remains outside the pale of all orders."

Since such a state of things would have been brought about by the strict observance of the words of the text, how could there be any liability to an expiatory penance?

From all this it follows that the other orders have been mentioned in the present text for the purpose of eulogising Renunciation; and this serves the purpose of lending support to the view that the combination of knowledge and action (as represented by the four orders) is necessary (for liberation).

In view of the fact that the house is the shelter, the dwelling-place, for all these orders, they have the Householder for their '*source*', their support. Such is the explanation of the compound.—(88)

## VERSE (89)

**AMONG ALL THESE HOWEVER, IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE INJUNCTION OF THE DIRECT VEDIC TEXT, THE HOUSEHOLDER IS DECLARED TO BE THE BEST ; BECAUSE HE SUPPORTS THE OTHER THREE.—(89)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

"What is asserted here does not appear to be right. For what it means is that the order of the Householder is directly enjoined by Vedic texts, which speak of the others only as supported by the former. In fact, in the event of the order of the Householder alone being directly enjoined by the Veda, there would be no room for the other orders ; because the Vedic text (laying down Householding) would be more authoritative than the *Smṛti*-texts laying down austerities and other things (connected with the other orders.)—It might be argued in this connection that—'the words of the present verse are not to be construed as *By reason of the injunction of the Vedic text* (the Householder is superior), but that *the superiority of the Householder spoken of in the Vedic text is due to the fact of his supporting the others ;* this is what is made clear by the sentence '*he supports the other three*'.—It has however got to be explained how this can be.—It may be urged that this would be so on account of the other orders also being enjoined in the Veda.—But if they are enjoined in the Veda, (and this is what is referred to in the present verse), then the present text clearly runs counter to the Smṛti text that—'the Householder's order alone is directly enjoined by the Veda' (*Gautama*, 3-36). Nor is there any other construction possible.—It might be urged that 'In view of the *Jābāla-shruti*, where we read that, having become a Householder, one shall become a Hermit, and having become a Hermit he shall go forth

as a Wandering Mendicant,—all the orders are equally *enjoined by the Veda*'.—But even so, the contradiction of the *Smṛti*-text remains unexplained. Then again, this *Jābāla-shruti* is not injunctive in connection with the other orders; it does not contain any such injunction as that 'one shall wander about in the forest in such and such a manner,--such and such acts shall be done by the man dwelling in the forest,—and such and such by the man who has gone forth as a Wandering Mendicant',—in the way in which the duties of the Householder, beginning from the Laying of the Fire and ending with the Final Sacrifice, are found to be directly laid down; it merely mentions their name—'having become a householder &c.' From all this it is clear that to speak of the Householder's order as well as the other orders as equally enjoined in the Veda involves a contradiction of what has gone before."

Our answer to the above is as follows:—It is true that for the man who has taken a wife to himself, the Veda has directly enjoined the duties, commencing with fire-laying and ending with the final sacrifice. Now, in connection with the marriage-rite itself, we have to consider the question as to what it is by which that act of marriage is prompted,—whether it is prompted by the Vedic texts that speak of persons entitled to offer the *Agnihotra*-libations?—or by the injunction that lays down the duty of begetting children?—or by the visible (worldly) purpose of the man?

"What sexual love prompts is only the taking of a woman, and not the *marriage-rite*; that alone can be regarded as prompting an act, without which this latter could not be accomplished; and for persons influenced by sexual love, all their domestic business would be accomplished by simply having a woman; why then should they need to perform the marriage-rites?"

This would be all right, if intercourse with a mere woman in general were not forbidden. Though what the Veda says regarding the fire-laying may apply to any woman in general, yet the scriptures always make a distinction between the woman with whom one may, or she with whom he may not, have inter-

course. It is for this reason that for men with a steady character, the desired purpose cannot be accomplished without marriage. So that it is only natural that there should be the idea that marriage is prompted by the Veda itself.

"If it be as the text says, then there would be nothing to prompt the other orders. And the purposes of all orders being accomplished by Householdership alone, what would be the need of examining what prompts the others. That which prompts the marriage may serve as the prompter (of Householdership); but if Householdership alone is actually enjoined, how could the other orders come about? Under the circumstances again, how far would any investigation into the prompter of marriage be justified?"

Our answer is as follows:—It has been asserted that the purposes of all the orders are fulfilled (by Householdership). This is quite true; when one order has been duly prompted, and the aid required by the others becomes indirectly accomplished by the same, there can be no need for the assumption of what would prompt these latter. For instance, the *Vrīhi* corn, the acquiring of which is prompted by the motive of livelihood, is also used in the performance of rites; and there is no acquiring of property for the purpose of the rites;—or again, even though the unlearned man is not entitled to the performance of sacrifices, yet the acquiring of learning is not prompted by those performances, being, as it is, already accomplished in obedience to the injunction of Vedic study itself. Similarly in the case in question (of marriage), the necessary motive being already supplied by the man's own desires, the act does not need the prompting of Vedic texts. Thus the injunction of the acts to be done would be applicable to those also who have not married.

Thus it is that the man who has all his passions deadened during the period of Studentship itself, does not wish to marry at all; and such a person, on account of having no companion (wife), would not be entitled to the second order. Thus not being entitled to the rites prescribed in the Vedic texts, he would

naturally take to the next (the third) order (having skipped over Householdership).

Others have offered the following explanation:—Marriage does not stand on the same footing as Property. Without some property living is impossible, as it is on property that man lives; but in the absence of the wife living is not impossible; so that the wife is not as essential as property; and the act of marrying a wife is prompted soley by considerations of religious acts (which cannot be done without a wife); and it is necessary to realise in this connection the necessity of making every effort to become entitled to the performance of religious acts. Otherwise, (if no such effort were necessary), having lost his title to such acts by reason of the impurity brought about by evacuations, if one were to omit the necessary purifying processes, he would not be open to the charge of having omitted an obligatory duty; under the circumstances, why should anyone take the trouble of getting rid of the impurity caused by death and other circumstances?—It might be argued that this latter is also itself enjoined.—Even so, the omission would involve the transgression of this one injunction only, and not of the thousands of injunctions (relating to the acts that the man would perform after due purification).

In answer to this, the following arguments may be put forward:—"Of what particular injunction would it be the meaning that 'for the sake of acquring the title to the performance of religious acts, the agent shall make an effort to accquire that title'? All the Injunctions that there are pertain to the performance of the *Agnihotra* and other rites, and all that they lay down is that the acts therein specified ought to be performed, and they donot urge the bringing into existence of the Fires. These fires are kindled, in connection with the voluntary acts, by the man who undertakes them through desire for the rewards to be obtained from them; and it is only when these Fires have been thus kindled that the man becomes 'one who has laid the Fires,' and hence subject to the injunctions relating to the life-long performance of the *Agnihotra* rites. Then again, it is only the man with a wife that is entitled to the 'laying of fire'; so

that the man would desire to marry a wife in the same manner as he lays the Fires for the purpose of acquiring the title to the performance of religious acts. So that the sense of no Injunction is offended if one omits to acquire the title to the performance of the Agnihotra and other rites [simply because there is no such Injunction as that *one shall acquire this title*]. Nor does the Injunction of Marriage itself indicate that *marriage shall be performed*; because the act of Marriage is a sanctificatory or sacramental rite, just like the Vedic rites of the obligatory daily *Agnihotra* and other rites; specially as no rewards are mentioned in connection with it."

In answer to this the ancients offer the following explanation: There is a direct Vedic text laying down the paying off of the 'three debts'—'When the Brāhmaṇa is born, he is born beset with three debts &c. &c.'; and this text becomes applicable to the man as soon as he is born; this 'birth' can not refer to the second 'birth' in the form of 'Initiation'; as in that case, the man would be as good as an animal, prior to his 'Initiation'. In fact the exact time referred to by the passage speaking of the 'debts' is that at which the man, having been born, comes to realise his responsibilities. Thus then, after the has accquired learning and thus become entitled to marry, if after having sought for a bride, he fails to obtain one and becomes grey, he would certainly be entitled to proceed to the stage of the Hermit. In fact, such a man comes to the following conclusion—'all through my youth I have been seeking for a bride;—they say that Fire-laying has been enjoined for only such men as have their hair still black;—and by the man of grey hairs Fire is not to be laid except in the event of his wife having died,—such is the meaning that they attribute to the Vedic Injunction'.

The '*Householder is the best of all*', because of his connection with religious acts; hence the superiority belongs to the *stage* itself (not to the *man*).

'*These three.*'—That it supports the other three stages is another ground for its superiority. This is what has been referred

to by the text—'By means of knowledge and by good &c. &c.' —(89).

This same dea is further supported by means of an example.—

## VERSE (90)

JUST AS RIVERS AND RIVULETS ATTAIN THEIR RESTING-PLACES IN THE OCEAN, SO DO MEN OF ALL OTHER ORDERS OBTAIN SUPPORT IN THE HOUSEHOLDER.—(90).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Rivers*'—the Gaṅgā and the rest;—'*rivulets*'—the Bhidya and others. The distinction between 'rivers' and 'rivulets' is based upon the difference of position or of taste.

In actual usage both are treated as one and the same; and the diversity of gender (in that case) is explained as standing on the same footing as that in the case of the synonymous words '*bhāryā*' (feminine) and '*dārā*' (Masculine).

'*Resting place*'—support.

Just as the Ocean is the resting place for all kinds of water, so is the Householder entitled to the performance of all duties—(90)

## VERSE (91)

BY TWICE-BORN MEN BELONGING TO ALL THESE FOUR ORDERS THIS TEN-FOLD DUTY SHALL ALWAYS BE ASSIDUOUSLY OBSERVED. —(91)

### *Bhāṣya.*

This verse introduces what is going to be described below.

'*Ten-fold*'—That which has ten 'folds' or forms.

'*Be observed*'—Always be performed.

Though all these have already been mentioned before, yet they are repeated here in order to indicate their great importance; and this repetition also lends support to the view that it is the

combination of 'Knowledge' and 'Action' that accomplishes the hightest end of man—(91)

### VERSE (92)

(1) STEADINESS (2) FORGIVENESS, (3) SELF-CONTROL, (4) ABSTENTION FROM UNRIGHTEOUS APPROPRIATION, (5) PURITY, (6 CONTROL OF THE SENSE-ORGANS, (7) DISCRIMINATION, (8) KNOWLEDGE, (9) TRUTHFULNESS, AND (10) ABSENCE OF ANGER,—THESE ARE THE TEN-FOLD FORMS OF DUTY.—(92)

*Bhāṣya*

Steadiness and the rest are qualities of the Soul.

(1) '*Steadiness*'—the feeling of contentment even at the loss of property and such things ; expressed by such feelings as 'if it has been lost, what does it matter ? It can be acquired again.' Similarly at separation from a beloved person, the man regains former equaminity by thinking that 'such is the way of the world.'

(2) '*Forgiveness*'—the excusing of wrongs committed; not seeking to do injury to a person in return for an injury that might have been done by him.

(3) '*Self-control*'—absence of haughtiness, renouncing of pride due to superior learning &c.

(4) '*Absention from unrighteous appropriation*' :—this is well known.

(5) '*Purity*'—cleanliness of food etc.

(6) '*Control of the Sense-organs*'—not allowing them to be drawn even towards unforbidden things.

(7) '*Discrimination*'—true knowledge, following upon the refutation of all doubtful and contrary views.

(8) '*Knowledge*' of the Soul. The difference between 'discrimination' and 'knowledge' is that the former refers to *Acts*, and the latter to the *Soul*.

In view of this tautology, some people read '*Dhīvidyā*' (wise discrimination). But this is not right; specially as we have explained the difference between the two.

The rest are well known.

'*Absence of anger*' is not permitting anger to arise when there is an occasion for it, and '*forgiveness*' is not doing harm to others even when they may have done harm to one.—(92).

## VERSE (93).

THOSE BRĀHMAṆAS, WHO PROPERLY STUDY THE TEN FORMS OF DUTY, AND HAVING STUDIED THEM, FOLLOW THEM IN PRACTICE, REACH THE HIGHEST STATE.— 93).

### *Bhāṣya.*

This describes the reward of what has just been enjoind. The mention of the reward of study is meant to eulogise the actual performance.—(93).

## VERSE (94)

THE TWICE-BORN PERSON, PERFORMING, WITH COLLECTED MIND, THE TEN-FOLD DUTY, AND HAVING DULY LEARNT THE VEDĀNTA TEXTS, AND BECOME FREE FROM DEBTS, SHOULD TAKE TO RENUNCIATION.—(94).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Being freed from debts, should take to Renunciation.*'—This text is meant to lay down that Renunciation should come only after the three debts have been paid off. Just as all men are not entitled to go forth as a mendicant at the same period of their life, so with Renunciation also.

'*Having duly learnt the Vedānta texts*'.—There is no renunciation for one who has not learnt what is contained in the *Vedānta* texts. Though the performance of Rites, as well as the learning of the Vedānta, are both implied in the injunction of 'Vedic study'—both kinds of texts being equally 'Veda,'—yet the learning of the Vedānta texts has been reiterated here for

the purpose of laying special stress on it; the sense being that 'the man shall devote himself entirely to it'.

"What is the actual meaning of the injunction.—'*shall take to Renunciation*'? What is this that is called 'Renunciation'?"

'Renunciation' consists of abandoning the notion that 'this is *mine*'.

"What have been referred to above are the '*Renouncers of the Veda*', from which it would seem as if there were 'renunciation' of the 'Veda' or of 'what is contained in the Veda',—and not that of such acts as the *accepting of gifts* and the like, which are done for the purpose of enabling the man to perform the acts enjoined by the Veda."

In verse 84 above it has been declared that the Veda is the 'refuge for those seeking immortality'; so that Vedic study is enjoined even for that stage at which *Knowledge* (and not Action) becomes the predominating factor in one's life. In as much as the *Agnihotra* and other rites are accomplished with the help of material substances, they naturally become *renounced* when there is no sense of property (the notion *of mine*). Such 'renunciation' is meritorious only for one whose wife is dead, or who, having made arrangements for the upkeep of his Fires, concentrates his attention on the Supreme Self. We read in the *Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad*—'when he thinks of going away, he says to his son &c. &c.,' which lays down the handing over of the Fires. This renunciation of the Fires is enjoined also for the decrepit old man—'By decrepitude does he become absolved from this.' Those rites however which do not take the aid of material substances—such for instance as the Twilight Prayers, the daily *Agnihotra* and the like—the performance of these being not forbidden, one remains entitled to it till his very last breath.—(94).

## VERSA (95.)

HAVING RENOUNCED ALL ACTS, AND THROWN OFF THE TAINT OF HIS ACTS, AND STUDIED THE VEDA WITH MIND SELF-CONTROLLED, HE SHALL LIVE AT EASE UNDER THE PROTECTION OF HIS SON.—(95).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Having studied the Veda*';—this implies that the Veda shall not be given up. This has been already explained above.

The right reading would appear to be the present-participial form '*abhyasyan*,' 'studying.'

'*He shall live at ease under the protection of his son*';—i. e. if he has a son born to him; or of any other person who may be in the place of his son; such, for instance as his grandson. They say that in this case also one should retire to another house.—(95).

## VERSE (96).

HAVING THUS RENOUNCED ALL RITES, INTENT UPON HIS OWN DUTY, FREE FROM LONGINGS, HE DESTROYS SIN BY HIS RENUNCIATION AND ATTAINS THE HIGHEST STATE.—(96).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*His own duty*'—meditation on the Soul; he for whom this is the highest duty.

'*Free from longings*'—not entertaining a desire for anything, even in his mind—(96).

## VERSE (97).

THUS HAS THE FOURFOLD DUTY OF THE BRĀHMAṆA BEEN EXPOUNDED TO YOU, WHICH IS CONDUCIVE TO IMPERISHABLE REWARDS AFTER DEATH. NOW LISTEN TO THE DUTY OF KINGS.—(97.)

Thus ends Discourse VI of the Mānava-Dharma-Shāstra.

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Fourfold Duty*'—pertaining to the four life-stages; all this has been expounded for the *Brāhmaṇa*.

"At the outset the text has spoken of the *twice-born person*, in the opening verse—'Having thus lived the life of the Householder, the accomplished *twice-born person* &c. &c.', and it has been decided that the term stands for all the three castes, as there is no sort of incongruity involved in this. Under the circumstances, the term '*brāhmaṇa*' of the present verse should also be taken as

standing for all the three castes. There would be a justification for denying this only if the entire Discourse did not form one organic whole, beginning from the opening verse and ending with the present verse. As a matter of fact, the opening verse is perfectly amenable to being construed with this last verse (the whole discourse thus forming one organic whole); so that it is quite open to us to take this verse as referring to what has been mentioned in the opening verse."

As a matter of fact, the sentence is regarded as having that meaning which is found to be expressed by it, after a thorough consideration of the sentence as a whole. And in this way, it is distinctly more reasonable to take the term 'twice-born person' (of the opening verse) as standing for the *Brāhmaṇa* (rather than the other way). Because every '*Brāhmaṇa*' also is 'twice-born', but every 'twice-born person' is not a '*Brāhmaṇa*'. So that the term 'twice-born' being capable of being directly applied to the *Brāhmaṇa*, it cannot be right to take the term '*Brāhmaṇa*' as indirectly indicating the wider circle of *twice-born* persons.

"But in the *Mahābhārata* we find three life-stages laid down for the *Shūdra* also;—having started with the words 'for the *Shūdra* who has accomplished all his work, there is *attendance*', it goes on to say 'all the life-stages have been prescribed for him, except the *Nirāmiṣa*'—that is Renunciation."

This is not right. Such is not the meaning of the text quoted; what it means is as follows—'the *Shūdra* should not have recourse to the four stages, he obtains the reward of all the stages by means of *service* and the *begetting of children*';—which means that—'during Householdership he obtains, by means of serving the twice-born men, the rewards of all stages, with the sole exception of Liberation, which is the reward of Renunciation.'

From this it follows that the Four Life-stages are meant for the *Brāhmaṇa* only.—(97)

---

Thus ends the *Bhāṣya* on Discourse VI.

---

Printed by Rameshwar Pathak at the Tara Printing Works, Benares.

# DISCOURSE VII

## Duties of the King.

## SECTION 1.

## Important Position of the King

### VERSE (1).

I AM GOING TO EXPOUND THE DUTIES OF KINGS; HOW THE LORD OF MEN SHOULD CONDUCT HIMSELF, HOW HE CAME INTO EXISTENCE AND HOW EXCELLENT SUCCESS ACCRUES TO HIM.—(1).

*Bhāṣya.*

It has already been pointed out that the term '*Dharma*' denotes *what ought to be done, duty*; so what the author promises in the present verse is that he is now going to describe *what ought to be done by the King*.

This duty is of two kinds—(1) pertaining to visible things, such as the 'six courses of action' and the like, and (2) pertaining to invisible things, such as the *Agnihotra* and the like. In the present context it is the former that is chiefly dealt with; and in fact it is only those forms of activity that are generally known as 'kingly duties.'

The term '*rājan*', 'king,' in the present context, does not stand for the *Kṣattriya caste*; it stands for that person who fulfills the conditions of having been anointed, possessing the rights of sovereignty and so forth. It is for this reason that the Text adds—'*How the Lord of Men should conduct himself*.'—The use of the term 'lord of men' indicates that what is stated here is applicable to the person who has sovereignty over the people.

The duties expounded in the present connection are based, not all upon the Veda, but on other sources of knowledge also. Among those based upon other sources of information, those alone are stated here which are not contrary to the *Science of Duty* (*Ethics*). Says *Kātyāyana*—'One shall renounce the Science of Politics and act according to the Science of Duty.'

'*Yathāvṛttaḥ*,' '*how he should conduct himself*';—the compound is to be expounded as '*yadyatprakārakam vā vṛttam yasya*,' a *Bahuvrīhi* compound ; the third factor referred to by it being the King. If the compound were explained in the manner whereby the denotation of the words of the compound itself formed the principal denotation of the compound itself,—then it would have to be an *Avyayībhāva* (in the form '*yathāvṛttam*').—'*Conduct*' stands for the action of protecting the people and also of accomplishing some transcendental ends.

'*Coming into existense*', being created ; as is going to be described under verse 3—'the Lord created the King' and so forth.

'*Excellent*', highest,—'*success*', in the form of undisputed sovereignty.

This verse states the rewards of the due fulfilment of kingly duties (1).

## VERSE (2).

THE PROTECTION OF ALL THIS SHALL BE DONE ACCORDING TO LAW, BY THE KSATTRIYA WHO HAS RECEIVED THE VEDIC TRAINING IN DUE FORM.—(2).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Brahma*' is Veda ; the '*training* under gone according to the Veda is called '*brāhma*' '*Vedic*' ; that which consists in the learning of the meaning of the texts by studying the Veda, and which is accomplished in obedience to the injunction of Vedic study. The Initiatory Ceremony also is rightly called 'Vedic', in view of the fact that it is gone through for the purpose of getting up the Veda ; as the author is going to say later on (verse 43)—'From persons learned in the three Sciences he shall learn the Three-Fold science etc'. If this (learning the meaning of the Vedic texts) were not meant by the present verse, then it would be asserting what is already known ; as in that case the 'sacrament' could only stand for the forty-eight 'sacramental rites' laid down in the Smṛtis, beginning with 'Conception' and ending with the 'Final Sacrifice'.

'*By the Kṣattriya.*'—This indicates that the *Kṣattriya* alone is entitled to Kingship. In the absence of the *Kṣattriya* however, a substitute also may be accepted ; otherwise the people would become exterminated (for want of a protector). Such is the sense of the text.

'*Of all*'—who pay taxes, as well as those who are poor and helpless.

'*This*';—this refers to the people living in his kingdom, in villages as well in cities.

'*According to law*'.—'*Law*' stands for the scriptures, specially the scriptures dealing with 'Dharma' or Duty, and not those relating to 'Artha' or 'Policy' and composed by Aushanas and other writers. 'According to this'—i.e. not acting contrary to it

'*Protection*'—Guarding ; i.e. removing troubles, guarding the weak against the strong, and seeing that they do not act against the law. '*Protection*' means *saving from trouble* ; the transgressing of law brings impercepible trouble ; so that when people do not transgress it, they become saved from that trouble, by the King. It might be argued that the punishment inflicted by the King (for transgressions of the law) is also painful. But the pain caused by such punishment would be infinitesimal, as compared with the terrible sufferings undergone in hell.

'*Shall be done*';—this is the Injunction.

What prompts and entitles the King to do all this is explained in Discourse VIII—(2)

## VERSES (3) & (4)

**AT A TIME WHEN THE PEOPLE WERE WITHOUT A KING, AND WERE UTTERLY PERTURBED THROUGH FEAR, THE LORD CREATED THE KING FOR THE PROTECTION OF ALL THIS;—(3) TAKING OUT THE ESSENTIAL CONSTITUENTS OF INDRA, VĀYU, YAMA, SŪRYA, VARUṆA, CHANDRA AND KUBERA—(4)**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Perturbed*'—troubled, or unsettled.

'*Lord*'—Prājapati.

This is a pure enlogium.—(3)

'*Anila*' is Vāyu.

'*Vittēsha*,—the Lord of Wealth, Vaishravaṇa, Kubēra.

'*Mātrā*'—constituent parts.

'*Eternal*'—i. e. essential.

'*Niṣkṛtya*'—extracting, taking out—(4)

## VERSE (5)

IN AS MUCH AS THE KING WAS CREATED WITH THE CONSTITUENT ELEMENTS OF THESE PRINCIPAL GODS, HE SURPASSES ALL LIVING BEINGS BY HIS GLORY.—(5)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*These*'—Indra and the other chief Gods;—'*with the constituent elements*'—with the particles of their Light constituting their bodies;—*the* '*King was created*';—hence his face becomes terrible to look at;—'*by his glory*'—on account of his glory.

He was created after '*taking out*' the essential constituents. The root '*kṛṣi*' (in the term '*niṣkṛṣya*' (in verse 4) denotes '*creating*. The Ablative (in '*mātrābhyaḥ*') may be explained either on the ground of the 'elements' being the permanent factor out of which the constituents of the King are taken out. Or we may read '*mātrāya*' with the Instrumental ending (which would denote *cause*).—(5)

## VERSE (6)

LIKE THE SUN, HE BURNS THE EYES AND MINDS (OF MEN); NO ONE ON THE EARTH CAN EVEN GAZE AT HIM.—(6)

*Bhāṣya*

'*Burns*,—as if it were; it is so expressed, in view of the fact that people cannot gaze at him; this is what is stated in the

second half.—'*No one on the Earth*'—not even persons belonging to the excellent Brāhmaṇa caste, or endowed with Brahmic glory —'*can gaze at him*'—look at him straight in the face. It is in view of the that it has been declared that 'people shall sit down below while the King is seated on high' (*Gautama*, 11)—(6)

## VERSE (7)

ON ACCOUNT OF HIS PUISSANCE HE IS AGNI, VĀYU AND SŪRYA; HE IS SOMA AND YAMA; HE IS KUBĒRA, HE IS VARUṆA AND HE IS INDRA.—(7)

### *Bhāṣya*

This is said in view of the fact that, being constituted by the component particles of Agni and other Gods, he is equipped with their powers.

'*Puissance*'—supernatural power.—(7)

## VERSE (8)

EVEN THOUGH AN INFANT, THE KING SHALL NOT BE DESPISED AS IF HE WERE MERELY HUMAN; BECAUSE HE IS A GREAT DIVINITY IN HUMAN FORM.—(8)

### *Bhāṣya*

Even an infant King shall not be regarded as merely a human being, and as such despised. In fact he is a great divinity, appearing in the shape of man. For this reason it is not right to show disrespect towards the King, even on account of defects that may be perceived in him.—(8)

## VERSE (9)

FIRE BURNS ONLY ONE MAN WHO MAY HAPPEN TO APPROACH IT CARELESSLY; THE FIRE OF THE KING, ON THE OTHER HAND, CONSUMES THE ENTIRE FAMILY, ALONG WITH ITS CATTLE AND HOARD OF WEALTH.—(9)

*Bhāṣya.*

The following verses are commendatory supplements to the foregoing Injunction. Though the context deals with the 'Duties of Kings', yet what is stated here applies to all men.

When a man touches fire with his hand, or goes too near the fire when it is burning fiercely,—he is said to be 'approaching it carelessly'; and when he is thus careless, he becomes burnt. If, however, the King happens to be angry, he destroys the man along with his wife, children, relations and property. In fact; on account of the fault committed by the master of the house, he destroys all those relations and friends that may happen to be with the family at the time, along with all their goods and chattels.—(9)

## VERSE (10)

FOR THE PROPER FULFILMENT OF HIS DUTY, HE ASSUMES MANY FORMS REPEATEDLY, AFTER HAVING CAREFULLY CONSIDERED THE NATURE OF HIS BUSINESS, HIS POWER AND THE CONDITIONS OF TIME AND PLACE.—(10)

*Bhāṣya.*

One should never think that the King is his relation or friend. 'To whom is the King ever a friend, and who are friends to the King?' (as the saying goes).

Under the exigencies of business, Kings treat a friend as their enemy, or an enemy as their friend. Similarly when they feel that they are not sufficiently strong, they condone faults; and as soon as they feel strong enough, they destroy the culprit. Similarly he acts according to the exigencies of time and place.

Thus *'for the due fulfilment of his duty'*—i. e. for the accomplishment of his business—*'he assumes many forms'*. In a moment he becomes a friend, and in a moment an enemy; the King never remains uniform.

For this reason one should never trust the King; that is, either by reason of friendship, or of kindness, or of good nature, or of

sameness of age, one should not behave towards him as an equal. He should always be treated with caution.—(10)

## VERSE (11)

**HE INDEED CONTAINS IN HIMSELF THE SPLENDOUR OF ALL, IN WHOSE FAVOUR DWELLS THE GODDESS OF FORTUNE, IN WHOSE VALOUR RESTS VICTORY AND IN WHOSE ANGER ABIDES DEATH.—(11)**

*Bhāṣya.*

When he is pleased at service rendered to him, he grants wealth; when he is angry, he inflicts death. Hence he who desires wealth should serve him with care. When he is pleased with a man, he does not merely bestow wealth on him, but also subdues and destroys his enemies. For this reason also, if a man desires the destruction of his enemy, he should try to please the King.

'*Padmā*;'—though this term is synonymous with' *Shrī*' (a name of the Goddess of Fortune, yet in the present text it has been used in the sense of *greatness*; the sense being that the King bestows large wealth.

All these things are obtained from the King, because '*he contains in himself the splendour of all*'—i. e. of the Sun, the Moon and Fire.—(11)

## VERSE (12).

**HE, WHO, THROUGH FOLLY, IS HOSTILE TOWARDS HIM, DOUBTLESSLY PERISHES ; BECAUSE THE KING MAKES UP HIS MIND FOR HIS QUICK DESTRUCTION.—(12).—**

*Bhāṣya.*

The King shall be kept pleased, not so such with a view to obtaining desirable things from him, as for saving oneself from trouble ; this is what is reiterated by the text.

He who is hostile to the King,—i.e. acts against him—'*he doubtlessly perishes*'; '*because, for his quick destruction.*' *etc.*—Other men may forgive a fault, on account of the difficulties involved in complaining of it to the King; which involves expenditure of money, where difficulties crop up again and again by

reason of the freaks of witnesses and so forth; but in the case of the King himself, there is no such difficulty; and when once he makes up his mind to destroy a man, the man is surely ruined; the King being all-powerful ; and further, if he were to appear like making special efforts for chastising such a man, this ( show of weakness ) would militate against his puissance (?).—(12).

## VERSE (13.)

FOR THIS REASON NO ONE SHOULD TRANSGRESS THAT FAVOURABLE DECREE WHICH THE KING SHOULD ORDAIN IN FAVOUR OF HIS FAVOURITES, OR THAT UNFAVOURABLE DECREE THAT HE SHOULD ORDAIN AGAINST THOSE IN HIS DISFAVOUR.—(13).

*Bhāṣya.*

Because the King 'contains within himself the splendour of all,' therefore,—'*in favour of his favourites*'—towards those ministers, priests and others who are in favour,—whenever in course of business, a '*decree*'—an ordinance, in consonance with Law and Custom —is ordained or issued by the King;—no one should transgress such a decree. Such a decree of the King's should not be disobeyed ; such a decree for instance as—'To-day, the city should observe a holiday—there is a marriage in the minister's house,—all men should be present there,—no animals shall be slaughtered to-day by the soldiers,—no birds are to be caught,—for so many days dancing girls shall be entertained by all wealthy men.'

Similarly '*against those in disfavour*',—such a decree as—'no one shall associate with this person,—no one should allow him to enter his house'.

When such decrees are issued by the King by the beat of drum etc. they shall not be transgressed. But the King has no power to control the ordinances pertaining to religious acts, such as the *Agnihotra* and the like, of the orders and castes. Such control would be repugnant to other *Smṛti* texts ; and the present text has its application, without offending against any *Smṛti* text, in cases indicated above.—(13).

## SECTION (2).

## Punishment.

### VERSE (14).

FOR HIS SAKE, THE LORD, AT FIRST, CREATED PUNISHMENT, WHICH IS LAW BORN OF THE LORD HIMSELF, AN INCARNATION OF DIVINE GLORY AND THE PROTECTOR OF ALL CREATURES.—(14).

*Bhāṣya.*

The origin of the King has been described; the origin of Punishment is now described.

'*For his sake*'—for the due fulfilment of the purposes of the King,—'*the Lord*'—Prajāpati—'*created Punishment*'.

"What purpose of the King is served by Punishment ?"

The answer is as follows—It is '*the protector of all creatures*'; —it is Punishment that '*protects*'—guards—all creatures; as without Punishment the King cannot carry on the work of protecting the people. Thus it was for the proper accomplishment of the kingly function that Punishment was created.

(*a*) '*It is Law*, (*b*) *born of the Lord himself*, (*c*) *incarnation of divine glory*'.—(*a*) 'Law' does not consist of sacrifices and gifts; it consists of Punishment. (*b*) Nor should it be regarded as an inferior form of Law, by reason of its depriving men of their life and property;—because it is that Law which is born out of the body of the Lord, Prajāpati, himself. (*c*) Nor is it composed of the five material substances; it is created out of the pure 'glory' of Brahman himself.

'*At first*,'—before the creation of the King himself.—(14)

### VERSE (15)

IT IS THROUGH FEAR OF HIM THAT ALL LIVING BEINGS, MOVABLE AS WELL AS IMMOVABLE, GO TO SUBSERVE THE EXPERIENCES (OF MEN) AND DO NOT SWERVE FROM THEIR DUTIES.—(15)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Through fear of him.*'—As mere relationship in general is meant to be expressed (and Punishment is not meant to be spoken of as the actual *source* of fear), we have the Genitive (and not the Ablative) ending in '*tasya*'. It is through fear of Punishment that immovable beings '*subserve the experiences of men*'—become capable of helping in their enjoyment, by means of flowers, fruits, shade and so forth. The immovable being (tree) that does not bear fruit either dries up; or if it does not dry up, it spreads all over the place and is cut up and made into coal.

By citing the case of the 'immovable things' it is meant that such should be the treatment meted out to the person who is found to be deserving of punishment on account of his having done something wrong to the King; that he should be punished with cutting, uprooting (total destruction) and the like.

The mention of the 'immovable beings' is for the purpose of eulogising, by its example, the Punishment; the sense being that—'Punishment is such a thing that it is inflicted even upon immovable things, what to say of movable ones?'—and it is not meant that Punishment is actually inflicted upon immovable things.

'*Do not swerve from their duty*'—i. e. they do not flower or fruit out of their proper season.—(15).

## VERSE (16)

TO MEN WHO ACT UNLAWFULLY, HE SHALL METE IT OUT APPROPRIATELY, HAVING CAREFULLY CONSIDERED THE TIME AND PLACE, AS ALSO THE STRENGTH AND LEARNING.—(16).

*Bhāṣya.*

Those '*who act unlawfully,*'—i. e. do things harmful to the King.—i. e. such persons as the Chief Minister and others,—it is the punishment to be inflicted upon such men that is described now. As regards persons who behave unlawfully towards one another, the punishment to be inflicted is going to be described under VIII. 126, where it is said—'Having ascertained the motive

&c &c.' ; and the present verse also we have explained under that text. One additional factor introduced in the present text is '*learning*', which stands for *Vedic learning.*

'*Appropriately*'—according as each man may deserve.

'*Mete out*'—inflict, bestow.

Punishment should be meted out after having fully considered all that is here mentioned. If inflicted in any other way, it would bring perceptible trouble to the King.

The two (similar) verses occurring in discourses VII and VIII differ in the following respects—(*a*) one refers to visible (worldly) matters and the other to invisible (super-physical) ones, and (*b*) one refers to the King's servants and the other to his people.—(16).

## VERSE (17).

THAT PUNISHMENT IS THE 'KING', THE 'MAN'; THAT IS THE 'LEADER' AND THE 'RULER' AND THAT HAS BEEN DECLARED TO BE THE 'SURETY' FOR THE LAW OF THE FOUR STAGES.—(17)

### *Bhāṣya.*

That in reality is '*King*';—as it is by reason of Punishment that the King's power holds.

That is the '*Man*';— since it disregards even powerful men and brings them under its power.

That is the '*Leader*';—all business is led, managed, by it.

'*Ruler*'—'Ruling' consists in the King's commands ; and these latter are capable of controlling men only when there is Punishment ; and it is in this sense that the actual act of *ruling* has been figuratively attributed to it.

It is like '*surety*' of '*the Law of the Four Stages*';—*i.e.* Punishment does not allow men to swerve from their duty in the same manner as the surety does not allow the party to deviate from the stipulated conditions.—(17)

## VERSE (18).

**Punishment governs all creatures; Punishment alone protects them; Punishment lies awake while all are asleep; the wise regard Punishment as Law itself.—(18)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

It is not the King that administers the law, relating to the Injunction of what ought to be done and the Prohibition of what ought not to be done; it is Punishment that does this administering.

'*Punishment alone protects*'—the weak against the strong.

'*While all*'—King's officers—'*are asleep*'—it is only through fear of punishment that people desist from doing what they like.

There are two kinds of this Punishment,—(a) that inflicted by the King and (b) that inflicted by the God of Death (in hell).—(18)

## VERSE (19).

**When meted out properly after due investigation, it makes all people happy; but when meted out without due investigation, it destroys all things.—(19)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Meted out*'—inflicted, set up.

'*After due investigation*'—*i.e.* after having duly examined the peculiarities of 'time', 'place' and other details mentioned before (Verse 16).

'*Makes happy*'—incites affection among the people.

When inflicted in a manner contrary to this, it does not only fail in its own purpose; in fact when wrongly administered, it destroys the best interests of the people.—(19)

## VERSE (20).

**If the King did not untiringly mete out punishment to those that deserve punishment, the stronger would have roasted the weaker, like fish, on the spit;—(20)**

*Bhāṣya.*

If punishment were not inflicted, then the '*stronger*'—*i.e.* those possessed of greater strength, or more energetic, or wieding weapons, or being larger in numbers—'*would have roasted the weaker, like fish, on the spit*';—*i.e.* just as fish are roasted on spit for food, so would the less powerful, be treated, by the more powerful, by suffering pecuniarily as well as physically, and also by being deprived of their wives and so forth.

For this reason the King should '*untiringly*' punish those that deserve punishment; and he should not entertain any such notions as—'How can I carry on an investigation into this matter,? I shall not punish any one at all.'—(20)

## VERSE (21).

**THE CROW WOULD EAT THE SACRIFICIAL CAKE, AND THE DOG WOULD LICK THE OFFERING-MATERIALS; RIGHTS OF OWNERSHIP WOULD NOT REMAIN WITH ANY ONE AND THERE WOULD BE A CONFUSION AMONG THE HIGH AND LOW.—(21).**

*Bhāṣya.*

Even such low animals as the crow, the dog and the like would vie with the gods; and they would come to eat the sacrificial cake and other offering-materials that should have been offered to the gods;—if they were not prevented from all this by means of punishment.

Further, 'the *rights of ownership*'—the relation of possessor and possessed—would not remain,—even between father and son, or between husband and wife; the husband would cease to be the husband of the wife, and women would go about independently by themselves.

'*Confusion among the high and low*';—the 'low,' e. g. the *Chaṇḍāla* and the rest, would become 'high'; and the 'high', e.g. the *Brāhmaṇa* and others, would become 'low', succumb to inferiority; Shūdras would come to preach the law, and the Vedic law would cease to be obeyed.—(21).

## VERSE (22).

IT IS BY PUNISHMENT THAT ALL PEOPLE ARE KEPT UNDER CONTROL ; FOR AN ABSOLUTELY GUILELESS MAN IS HARD TO FIND ; IT IS THROUGH FEAR OF PUNISHMENT THAT THE WORLD SUBSERVES THE EXPERIENCES (OF MEN).—(22).

### *Bhāṣya.*

A man who, by his very nature, is '*guile-less*', in matters relating to duty, wealth and pleasures, is '*hard to find*,' can be met with difficulty. In fact, it is '*by punishment*' that a man is '*kept under control*', kept firm in the right path ; through fear of it, he does not give free vent to his desires.

'*The world subserves etc.*'—This has been already explained (under 15).—(22)

## VERSE (23).

IT IS ONLY WHEN PRESSED BY PUNISHMENT THAT DEVAS, DĀNAVAS GANDHARVAS, RĀKṢASAS, BIRDS AND REPTILES SUBSERVE THE EXPERIENCES (OF OTHERS).—(23).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Devas*'—i.e. the God of Rain, of Wind, the Sun and so forth.

'*Subserve the experiences*'—e.g. by periodic heat, cold and rain, help in the development of the herbs and so forth.

All this is due to their being afraid of being punished. If it were not so, why should the Sun and the Moon, or Brahmā and the God of Rain, not swerve from their appointed task? If the Sun were not under some such control, he might not rise at all for two or three days ; from fear of punishment, however, he never transgresses the prescribed limits. Says the Shruti text—'It is through fear that the Sun shines, it is through fear that the Moon shines, and it is through fear that Fire and Wind (function.)'

That the Dānavas and other evil spirits do not go on destroying the Universe all day and night, is due to the power of punishment. That the birds that adorn households—such as the

parrot and the rest—do not take out the eyes of children,—that kites, crows, vultures and eagles do not devour the young children, —this also is due to the same cause.

Reptiles, serpents, abounding as they do, in anger and poison, do not all gather together and sting all living beings,—this also is due to the power of punishment.

For these reasons the text has provided this eulogy on punishment that, when even the extremely powerful gods and the rest, and the non-intelligent things also do not swerve from their appointed path, through fear of punishment,—what to say of human beings!

In this connection the ancients have quoted the following verse—'Seeing the humble position of the wild *Pāṭala*-tree, and the flamboyant floral display of the *Kuṭaja*,—by this subversion of relation he laughed (thinking) that even the low-born strikes at an opening'. (?)—(23)

## VERSE (24).

ALL THE CASTES WOULD BECOME CORRUPT, ALL BARRIERS WOULD BE BROKEN THROUGH, AND THERE WOULD BE DISRUPTION AMONG ALL THE REGIONS,—IF THERE WERE ANY MISTAKES IN REGARD TO PUNISHMENT.—(24).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Mistakes regarding punishment*'—i.e. its non-infliction, or its infliction in an unlawful manner. If there were any such, then '*all the castes would become corrupt*'; as unrestricted intercourse would lead to a confusion of castes.

'*Barriers*'—bounds—'*would be broken through*';—all restrictions would disappear; *Brāhmaṇas* would behave like *Shūdras* and *Shūdras* like *Brāhmaṇas*. In this manner '*there would be disruption among all regions*;—i.e. the three regions would not help each other by imparting rain, heat and the rest.—(24)

## VERSE (25).

WHERE DARK-COMPLEXIONED AND RED-EYED PUNISHMENT STALKS ABOUT, DESTROYING SINS, THERE THE PEOPLE ARE NOT MISLED, PROVIDED THAT THE GOVERNOR DISCERNS RIGHTLY.—(25)

*Bhāṣya.*

These two are most praisiworthy for men (?). The author eulogises punishment by means of an imaginary metaphor.

Punishment is of two kinds—one kind inspires fear, and another brings pain ; the former is indicated by the *'dark complexion'* and the latter by the *'red eyes'*.

The praise of punishment has been furnished.

Punishment should be inflicted, but with due consideration of the exigencies of time, place &c. Apart from this all else is purely commendatory.

*'Provided that the governor'*—he who metes out the punishment—*'discerns rightly'* ; i. e. rules over the people after due consideration of time, place &c. ;—*'the people are not misled*—do not become affected by any evil.—(25).

## VERSE (26)

THEY DECLARE THAT KING TO BE THE JUST GOVERNOR WHO IS TRUTHFUL OF SPEECH, WHO ACTS AFTER DUE CONSIDERATION, WHO IS WISE AND WHO KNOWS THE ESSENCE OF VIRTUE, PLEASURE AND WEALTH.—(26)

*Bhāṣya.*

The justness of the governor consists in the following qualities—(*a*) truthfulness, (*b*) the habit of doing things after due consideration, (*c*) wisdom and (*d*) a true discernment of the three aims of man.

*'Truthful of speech'*—he who, having inflicted the punishment in due accordance with Law, does not enhance it on becoming apprised of the fact of the culprit being a very wealthy person,—or does not reduce it through considerations of friendship towards him.

'*Wise*'—he who fully understands the mutual effects of time, place &c and their special relations ; sometimes the effect of the time is nullified by that of place, and *vice-versa* ; or both these are nullified by considerations of Learning and Power ; and who also recognises the special relations among them, as regards their wider or more restricted application. Under certain circumstances what has been the nullifier before becomes the nullified. So that *wisdom* is necessary for the proper discernment of this ; and also for recognising the relative importance or non-importance of virtue, pleasure and wealth. For instance, if it is found that the acquiring of a little virtue would lead to a great evil (discomfort or loss of wealth), that virtue may be abandoned ; and this abandonment may be expiated by penances.—(26).

## VERSE (27).

THE KING WHO METES OUT PUNISHMENT IN THE PROPER MANNER PROSPERS IN RESPECT OF HIS THREE AIMS ; HE WHO IS BLINDED BY AFFECTION, UNFAIR, OR MEAN IS DESTROYED BY THAT SAME PUNISHMENT.—(27).

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Blinded by affection*'—he who is unduly influenced by love.

'*Unfair*'—inclined to be irascible. The King prospers if he metes out punishment on a friend or a foe in the same impartial spirit.

'*Mean*'—inclined to take undue advantage.

'*Is destroyed by that same punishment*'—either through evil passions aroused among the people, or through some imperceptible effects.—(27).

## VERSE (28).

PUNISHMENT, WHICH IS A TREMENDOUS FORCE, HARD TO BE CONTROLLED BY PERSONS WITH UNDISCIPLINED MINDS, DESTROYS THE KING WHO HAS SWERVED FROM DUTY, ALONG WITH HIS RELATIVES.—(28).

*Bhāṣya.*

Punishment is a tremendous force; and it cannot be properly administered by persons who have not been disciplined by the study of the scriptures and the service of teachers, or by inborn humility.

One should not entertain the idea that 'punishment can be meted out by mere word of command, and there is no difficulty in controlling it; because if a King is not careful with regard to it, and does not devote special attention to it, he commits mistakes, and is, on that account, destroyed by the Punishment, along with his relatives. The King is struck down not only physically by himself, but along with his whole family of sons and grandsons. —(28).

## VERSE (29)

THEN IT WILL AFFLICT HIS FORTRESS AND KINGDOM, THE WORLD ALONG WITH MOVABLE AND IMMOVABLE THINGS, AS ALSO THE SAGES AND THE GODS INHABITING THE HEAVENLY REGIONS.—(29)

*Bhāṣya.*

When Punishment is inflicted without due consideration of time, place &c., there is destruction of the whole kingdom along with the King and together with all animals and immovable things. Hence the King has to be warned of this by his ministers and his people; or these latter should leave the kingdom.

The sages and the gods are also afflicted:—the gods live upon offerings made by the inhabitants of the earth; hence when, on account of the disruption of the kingdom, there is no proper performance of sacrificial acts &c., the gods and the sages are as good as 'destroyed.' Says the author of the Purāṇas—

'Whatever is done by persons of the various castes and stages, that has been declared to be the source of maintenance for persons of divine origin in heaven and the other regions'.

The upshot of all that has been said from the first verse to this is as follows:—'The kingdom has got to be ruled by a Kṣattriya of impartial mind;—this cannot be done without punishment; hence this should be meted out, in his own kingdom as also elsewhere, in strict accordance with the Law, after a full investigation of the exigencies of time and place &c., relating to each case;—if it is inflicted otherwise, there is destruction of both worlds.'

The rest of it all is purely a commendatory supplement.—(29)

## SECTION (8)

## The King's Assistants.

### VERSE (30)

**Punishment cannot be justly administered by one who has no assistant, or who is demented, or who is avaricious, or whose mind is not disciplined, or who is addicted to sensual objects.—(30)**

*Bhāṣya*

The present section is taken up for the purpose of indicating the necessity of associating assistants with one'self.

A King who is not helped by assistants, in the shape of able councillors, army-commanders, administrators of justice,—all which are going to be described,—cannot justly administer punishment alone by himself; even though he be fully endowed with all necessary qualities of justice and expediency. 'Justice' consists in decision that is in due accordance with Law and is in keeping with the peculiarities of time, place &c.

For this reason it is necessary for the King to employ properly qualified assistants.

The meaning is that punishment cannot be justly administered by the King without assistants,—just as it cannot be administered by one who is foolish or demented, or whose mind is not properly trained, or who is addicted to sensual objects, or is avaricious—and hence confiscates people's property in an unjust manner. It can be rightly administered only by persons possessed of qualities that are the reverse of these.—(30).

This same idea is expressed obversely in the next verse.

## VERSE (31)

**PUNISHMENT CAN BE ADMINISTERED BY ONE WHO IS PURE, WHO IS TRUE TO HIS WORD, WHO ACTS ACCORDING TO THE LAW, WHO HAS GOOD ASSISTANTS AND IS WISE.—(31)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Pure*'—not covetous.

'*True to his word*'—who attaches great importance to truth; who, in all his acts, places truth in the fore-front; which means that he has his senses under control; for how can there be any truthfulness in one whose senses are not subdued?

'*Who acts according to the Law*',—'*who has good assistants*'—whose assistants are properly qualified; i. e. assisted by such assistants as are not illiterate, and who are devoted to him.

'*Wise*'—intelligent;—this is the reverse of the 'demented' person mentioned in the preceding verse.

Thus he who is equipped with these five qualities, and free from the corresponding five contrary qualities, is the person entitled to administer punishment, and to partake of the visible (physical) and invisible (moral) results proceeding therefrom. Such is the sense of these two verses.—(31).

## SECTION (4.)

## Duties of the King.

### VERSE (32.)

IN HIS OWN KINGDOM HE SHALL BE OF JUST BEHAVIOUR, AND ON HIS ENEMIES HE SHALL INFLICT RIGOROUS CHASTISEMENT ; WITH LOVED FRIENDS HE SHALL BE STRAIGHTFORWARD AND TOWARDS BRĀHMAṆAS TOLERANT.—(32)

*Bhāṣya.*

The name '*own kingdom*' is based upon the fact of the territory having been inherited from one's forefathers ; e.g. Kāshmira would be 'own kingdom' for the King of Kāshmira, Pāñchāla would be 'own kingdom' for the King of Pāñchāla ; and so forth Therein 'he shall be of just behaviour', i. e. act with justice ;—he who behaves with justice is said to be 'of just behaviour' ; the compound being expounded as a *Bahuvrīhi*.

'*Nyāyavṛttiḥ*' is another reading.

The foregoing clause having reiterated what has been already enjoined before, the Author enjoins 'rigorous chastisement' towards enemies. The sense is that he shall attack the enemy's territories outright, not waiting for any such favourable opportunity as the enemy being beset with difficulties or attacked by other kings. By acting thus, the king acquires a glamour of glory; and to one who has attained this glamour, the enemies bow down.

Towards all *Brāhmaṇas*, he shall be '*tolerant*' ; *i. e.* even when they have committed an offence, punishment shall be meted out to them in a merciful, and not a revengeful, spirit.

When a king is attacking another kingdom, he does not destroy the inhabitants of that realm, if it is at all possible to save them.

Towards '*loved friends*' he shall be '*straightforward*'—free from duplicity. One who helps in the accomplishment of the king's business, and who regards his business as his own and who looks upon his prosperity and adversity as his own, is his 'loved friend' .—(32).

## VERSE (33)

**For the King who behaves thus, even though he may subsist upon gleanings, his fame spreads in the world, like the drops of oil on water.—(33)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

This is a praise of the conduct described.

'*Even though he may subsist on gleanings*'—*i. e.* even though his treasure be empty.

'*His fame spreads*'—becomes well known. And as a result of this, other kingdoms submit to him, and people of his own kingdom, through love for him, cease to deviate from the path of duty.—(33)

## VERSE—(34)

**But for the King who deviates from it having no control over himself, his fame diminishes in the world, like the drop of clarified butter on water.—(34)**

### *Bhaṣya.*

'He who deviates'—swerves—from the aforesaid behaviour—and the reason for this is that he has '*no control over himself*'—*i. e.* who has not disciplined his mind in the manner prescribed in the scriptures.—(34)

## VERSE (35).

**The King has been created the protector of all castes and orders, who, in due order, are intent upon their respective duties.—(35).**

*Bhāṣya.*

The King has been created as the protector of people intent upon their duties ; so that if the King fails to protect those who are engaged in their duties, he incurs sin ; on the other hand, if those who have swerved from their duty happen to be attacked by some person, this would not entail any grievous offence on the part of the King. This is what is meant by the phrase '*respective duties*.'

Or, the passage may be construed as containing a negative particle prefixed to the term '*niviṣṭānām*', which is to be read as '*a-niviṣṭānām*', '*not conversant*.' The meaning in this case would be that 'the king shall not adopt a hostile attitude towards those persons who are not conversant with their duties through the scriptures or through the advice of friends and others'.

The term 'caste' has been added for the purpose of securing protection for women and children also,—these not belonging to any 'order.'

"In that case why should the orders have been mentioned?"

It is for the purpose of indicating their predominance that they have been separately mentioned ; the expression being analogous to such expressions as '*Brāhmaṇa-Vāshiṣṭha* (the Brāhmaṇas and *those of the race of Vashiṣṭha*, where the latter, though included among 'Brāhmaṇas' are mentioned separately with a view to indicate their importance).

Or, the particular form of the expression may have been adopted for the purpose of indicating the motive (of protection) ; the sense being that they should be protected in such a way that they do not deviate from their duties in the shape of proceeding from stage to stage, saying of the Twilight Prayers and so forth ; in the performance of their ordinary duties they shall not be permitted to be struck with a stick etc. by other people, for if this protection were not vouchsafed, there would be no end to troubles and difficulties. This is the 'protection' that is meant here.

Nor should people be allowed to interfere with the fulfilment of such caste-duties as the saying of the Twilight Prayers and the like. Thus a twofold duty rests upon the King; hence the mention of both 'castes' and 'orders.'

This is what is meant by the words of Gautama—'He shall protect according to Law, the castes and orders' (11-9).—(35).

## VERSE (36)

WHATEVER SHOULD BE DONE BY HIM AND HIS SERVANTS, FOR THE PROTECTING OF HIS PEOPLE, ALL THAT I AM GOING TO EXPLAIN TO YOU PRECISELY AND IN DUE ORDER—(36)

### *Bhāṣya.*

This verse is indicative of what is going to be expounded.

By the King and his 'servants'—i. e. his assistants—whatever has to be done for the protection of his people, that is now going to be described.—(36).

## VERSE (37)

AFTER RISING IN THE MORNING, THE KING SHALL WAIT UPON THE BRĀHMAṆAS, WHO ARE ACCOMPLISHED STUDENTS OF THE THREEFOLD SCIENCE AND LEARNED; AND SHALL FOLLOW THEIR ADVICE.—(37)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*In the morning, having risen*'—having left the bed and having said the Twilight Prayers in the prescribed manner,—he shall, first of all, grant an audience to the *Brāhmaṇas*. '*Waiting upon*' stands for making them sit close by and making enquiries regarding their welfare.

The prefix '*pari*' has been added only for the filling up of the metre.

'*Shall follow their advice*'. If they should happen to press for a favour for some one, their motive should not be suspected, nor should anything wrong be done.

'*Accomplished students of the Threefold Science*'. The aggregate of the three Vedas is called 'Threefold Science': those who have studied these are called '*students of the Threefold Science*', i. e. those who have studied the Ṛgveda, the Yajurveda and the Sāmaveda.

'*Learned*'—Those who know what is contained in the Vedas.

The King shall wait upon Brāhmaṇas thus qualified ; and shall act up to their behests.

'*Accomplished*'—those who are the best, possessed of the most excellent qualifications, among them, in regard to the said knowledge and learning.—(37).

## VERSE (38)

EVERY DAY HE SHALL WAIT UPON ELDERLY PERSONS, BRĀHMAṆAS, PURE AND LEARNED IN THE VEDAS; HE WHO CONSTANTLY WAITS UPON ELDERLY PERSONS IS HONOURED EVEN BY RĀKṢASAS.—(38)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Elderly*'—aged—Brāhmaṇas. This alone is something new enjoined here; all the rest of it, 'Brāhmaṇas' and so forth, is what has been already declared before.

'*Pure*'—free from defects. This also is something new ; the meaning being that 'purity' is as good a reason for being honoured as 'knowledge and learning.'

The second half of the verse is purely commendatory.

'*By Rākṣasas.*'—As a rule, *Rākṣasas* are pitiless, very powerful and devoid of all virtues ; and yet even these honour the person who waits upon elderly men.—(38).

## VERSE (39)

**THOUGH HIS MIND BE ALREADY DISCIPLINED, HE SHALL ALWAYS LEARN DISCIPLINE FROM THEM; THE KING WITH A DISCIPLINED MIND NEVER PERISHES.—(39).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The use of waiting upon elderly men is next described.

'*From them*'—from the learned *Brāhmaṇas*—'*he shall learn discipline*'—the proper kingly behaviour.

'*Though his mind be already disciplined*';—though he may be already disciplined by his own will, or by the proper study of political science,—yet he should carefully attend to the advice of elderly persons; because men with practical experience are better experts than those possessing only theoretical knowledge. Or even though highly trained, he shall train his mind under elderly qualified men, for the purpose of making his aptitude keener. Just as gold, even though pure by its nature, becomes purer and brighter to look at when it undergoes purification by being put in fire.

The reward of this discipline is that the King never perishes—(39)

## VERSE (40)

**MANY KINGS, ALONG WITH THEIR BELONGINGS, HAVE PERISHED THROUGH WANT OF DISCIPLINE; WHILE, ON ACCOUNT OF DISCIPLINE, MANY, EVEN THOUGH LIVING IN FORESTS, HAVE OBTAINED KINGDOMS.—(40).**

### *Bāṣhya.*

What has been stated above is further emphasised by means of the next three verses.

Undisciplined kings, have perished '*along with their belongings*'. '*Belongings*' stand for the son, wife, elephants, horses and so forth.

On the other hand, those who are disciplined never lose their kingdom, after having got it; in fact even when living far off in the forest, and hence devoid of any treasure &c., they have obtained kingdoms.—(40).

## VERSE (41)

IT WAS THROUGH WANT OF DISCIPLINE THAT VENA PERISHED, AS ALSO KING NAHUṢA, SUDAS, PAIJAVANA, SUMUKHA AND NIMI.—(41)

*Bhāṣya.*

In support of both assertions they cite instances of well-known Kings. The stories of these Kings are to be learnt from the *Mahābhārata*.—(41)

## VERSE (42)

BUT THROUGH DISCIPLINE PṚTHU AND MANU OBTAINED KINGDOMS, KUBERA OBTAINED THE LORDSHIP OF WEALTH AND THE SON OF GĀDHI ATTAINED BRĀHMAṆAHOOD.—(42)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*The son of Gadhi attained Brahmaṇahood.*'—

*Objection*—"In connection with the subject of Kings and kingdoms, where was the occasion for citing an instance of the attaining of *Brāhmaṇahood*? It was necessary to cite cases of the obtaining of kingdoms only, as was done in the first half of the verse."

Our answer is that as a matter of fact a higher caste is more difficult to attain than sovereignty over riches; because the higher caste carries with it all its privileges.

*Objection*—"But how can, *vinaya*, discipline, be the cause of that? 'Discipline' consists in such qualifications as—the proper employment of the six means of success, alertness, thrift, non-avariciousness, freedom from evil habits, and so forth; and not

one of these can be the cause of bringing about Brāhmaṇahood. In fact Austerity has been declared to be the cause of that, in such texts as-'Vishvāmitra practised austerities with the view that he may not remain the son of a non-sage' and so forth."

Our answer is as follows:—The '*Naya*', 'conduct', here spoken of (as '*Vinaya*', 'discipline'), is not what has been described in the Science of Politics; it is what has been enjoined in the scriptures and is observed in ordinary practice; and in the scriptures it has been laid down that 'by means of Austerity, the higher caste is attained during another life'; while in the case of Vishvāmitra, Brāhmaṇahood was attained during the same life in which he was a *Kṣattriya*, as has been described in the books—(42)

## VERSE (43)

FROM PERSONS LEARNED IN THE THREEFOLD SCIENCE HE SHALL LEARN THE TRIAD; AS ALSO THE ANCIENT SCIENCE OF GOVERNMENT, THE SCIENCE OF REASONING AND THE SCIENCE OF THE SOUL; AND ALSO THE ART OF COMMERCE FROM EXPERTS—(43)

### *Bhāṣya.*

If we read '*vidyām*' with the Accusative ending (instead of '*vidyāt*', the Injunctive verb), it will have to be construed with '*Adhigachchhēt*', 'shall learn' (of verse 39).

In as much as it is laid down that the King is to be anointed only after he has passed through the stage of studentship, during which the Vedas will have been already learnt,—the present injunction is to be taken as pertaining to his continung his study.

'*The three-fold science*' is that science which has three component parts; and he who learns this is said to be 'versed in the three-fold science';—from these he shall learn the '*Triad*',—i. e. the three Vedas, the Ṛk. and the rest. That is, in all doubtful matters, he shall decide with the help of the Vedas; and he shall discuss the exact meaning of Vedic texts with the said learned

persons; and he shall not disregard knotty points thinking himself to be a powerful King and hence influenced by pride and haughtiness.

'*Also the Science of Government*';—the science relating to '*daṇḍa*', and '*daṇḍa*' is *ruling, governing*; that whereby enemies as also people inhabiting his own kingdom, when doing wrong, are kept in check; and this 'governance' consists in the employment of suitable ministers &c. The 'science' of this consists of the rules pertaining to it. This also he shall learn from persons versed in it, and knowing the works of Chāṇakya and other writers.

'*Ancient*';—this is purely eulogistic.

Though with the help of the Science of Government alone he may be enable to know the entire world, yet, in as much as that science is based upon induction, and the Science of Reasoning serves the purpose of bringing intelligence to the dull and corroboration to the intelligent,—it is necessary to supplement the said science with the Science of Reasoning, as also the Science of Politics and so forth; so also the Science of the Soul.

Or the terms '*ānvīkṣikī*' and '*ātmavidyā*' may be construed together; the meaning being—'that Science of Reasoning which is beneficial to one's self';—that he should learn; as it is only such beneficial science that can be useful to him, in subjugating evil habits, misfortunes and mental disturbances. As for the Science of Reasoning propounded by the *Buddhas*, the *Chārvākas* and other atheists, they cannot be of much use to him; on the contrary, they are likely to shake his faith, if he does not happen to be exceptionally intelligent.

When the king learns the Science of Reasoning by itself, then he becomes capable of employing choice language in his communications with envoys;—so that he does not become open to ridicule.

'*The Art of Commerce*' .—The acquiring of the knowledge of market-commodities, and the knowledge of trade-methods, with the help of Bṛhaspati's work, constitutes 'Commerce': and

activity pertaining thereto constitutes the 'Art of Commerce'; that is, learning the theories of commerce and then putting them into practice.

This he shall learn from '*experts*'—i. e. persons making a living by trade; these alone are 'experts' in matters relating to commerce.

The term '*from experts*' may be construd with the two preceding terms ('Science of Reasoning' and 'Science of Soul') also; so that we get at the meaning that all these three are to be learnt from men expert in them.—(43)

VERSE (44)

DAY AND NIGHT HE SHALL PUT FORTH AN EFFORT TO SUBDUE HIS SENSES; BECAUSE HE WHOSE SENSES ARE SUBJUGATED IS CAPABLE OF KEEPING HIS SUBJECTS UNDER CONTROL.—(44)

*Bhāṣya.*

Though the subjugation of the senses has been already enjoined among the 'Duties of Students' as beneficial for all men, yet it is again reiterated among the 'Duties of Kings' with a view to indicate that this forms an important factor in their training.

This is what is meant by the words—'*He whose senses are subjugated &c. &c.*' It is a fact well known to all men that one whose senses are not subdued does not succeed in keeping his subjects under control.

'*Effort*'—intense exertion.

'*Day and night*'—During the day as well as during the night.—(44)

VERSE (45)

HE SHALL SHUN THE TEN RUINOUS VICES SPRINGING FROM LOVE OF PLEASURE, AS ALSO THE EIGHT ARISING FROM ANGER.—(45)

*Bhāṣya.*

This verse adds a further reason for subjugating the senses.

One whose senses are not subdued cannot avoid the vices. '*Durantāni*', '*Ruinous*',—whose end is painful. In the beginning vices bring a certain amount of pleasure, but afterwards they lead to *ruin*; hence they are called 'ruinous'.

Or the term '*durantāni*' may mean *whose end cannot be got at*; i. e. people caught in a vice cannot escape from it.

Those that have their source in 'love of pleasure' are called '*Kāmasamuttha*'—(45)

The author explains the reason for avoiding vices and also their relative importance and unimportance.

## VERSE (46)

THE KING WHO IS ADDICTED TO VICES SPRINGING FROM THE LOVE OF PLEASURE BECOMES DEPRIVED OF WEALTH AND VIRTUE; WHILE HE WHO IS ADDICTED TO THOSE PROCEEDING FROM ANGER BECOMES BEREFT OF HIS VERY SOUL.—(46)

*Bhāṣya.*

The deprivation of the soul is, in the former case, intervened by the deprivation of wealth and virtue.

In the case of those arising from anger, he becomes deprived of everything. This is the difference between the two sets (46)

The said vices are now re-counted by name :—

## VERSE (47)

HUNTING, DICE, SLEEPING DURING THE DAY, CENSORIOUSNESS, WOMEN, INTOXICATION, MUSICAL TRIAD AND LISTLESS WANDERING CONSTITUTE THE TEN-FOLD SET ARISING FROM THE LOVE OF PLEASURE.—(47).

*Bhāṣya.*

Killing of animals for purposes of the chase is '*Hunting*,'.

'*Dice*'—Gambling with dice. That these two lead to evil consequences is well known.

'*Sleeping during the day*'.—*i. e.* not acting at the time at which a certain action should be done. The term '*divā*' here does not stand for the *day* only ; this same idea being expressed elsewhere by means of the phrase 'sleeping at the time of waking.'

Or, the term may be taken in its literal sense; sleeping during the day is positively prohibited, and it stands in the way of all business. This habit causes disappointment to men who want an interview with the king, and also to others ; and as such becomes a source of discontent among the people.

'*Censoriousness*'—the criticising of other people's faults in private. This displeases all men. As for the blaming of persons who do not deserve it, this in itself constitutes a sin.

'*Women*', '*intoxication*'—the fact of these two being evils is well known. '*Musical triad* *i. e.* dancing, singing and instrumental music.

'*Listless wandering*'—walking about hither and thither, either for no purpose, or for a wicked purpose.

'*Tenfold*'—which are ten in number.

'*Arising from the love of pleasure*', '*Kāma*';—'*Kāma*' is desire, from which they arise ;—or they arise from a particular kind of pleasure ;—or '*Kāmya*' may mean *arising from a particular experienced object*.—(47).

## VERSE (48)

**TALE-BEARING, TREACHERY, ENVY, SLANDERING, MISAPPROPRIATION OF PROPERTY, CRUELTY OF SPEECH AND OF ASSAULT ;—THESE CONSTITUTE THE EIGHTFOLD SET BORN OF ANGER.—(48).**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Tale-bearing*'—the disclosing of such secrets as are to be kept from monitors and other official relatives.

'*Violence*'—the employing of superior men in derogatory acts; or hand-cutting or imprisoning men for slight offences.

'*Treachery*'—killing secretly.

'*Envy*'—desire to strike or even take away the life.

'*Slandering*'—not brooking the good qualities of men, and exposing their weak points.

'*Misappropriation of property*'.—not giving;—in fact taking away what belongs to others; also the depriving from public use of what is public property.

'*Cruelty of speech and assault*'—are well known.

'*Anger*'—hate. Those mentioned partake of the nature of Hate.—(48).

## VERSE (49)

WITH GREAT EFFORT HE SHALL SUBDUE THAT GREEDINESS WHICH ALL WISE MEN REGARD AS THE ROOT OF BOTH THESE; BOTH THESE SETS ARISE OUT OF THAT.—(49)

*Bhāṣya.*

It has been said that Greediness is at the root of the set of vices born of love of pleasure; 'love of pleasure' consists in hankering after the objects of enjoyment; and 'hankering,' 'desire,' 'greediness' are synonymous.

"But how can greediness be the root of the set of vices arising from Anger, on the basis of which it is said that *both these sets arise out of that?*"

Our answer is as follows:—What is meant is not that the two sets of vices have Greediness for their cause, but that Greediness is equal to the two sets of vices;—the sense being that greedi-

ness alone by itself—even when appearing in a man free from the vices,—produces all those evils which all the said vices produce; to which end we have the assertion—'greediness destroys all good qualities.' It is in this sense that we have the figurative assertion that '*both these sets arise out of that*.' If there were no Greediness, how could there appear results similar to those of greediness? In fact, it is the defect in the cause that indicates the defect in the effect; hence, if there is any evil in the vices, appearing as the effects of greediness, it follows that there is a like evil in the cause also.

Or, the meaning may be that as a rule it is only the greedy person who becomes addicted to Tale-bearing and other shunable acts. Other persons, even in small matters, become appeased even by slight entreaties. And it is this that is spoken of figuratively by describing the two sets of vices as arising out of greediness.—(49.)

## VERSE (50.)

IN THE SET ARISING FROM LOVE OF PLEASURE,—DRINKING, DICE, WOMEN AND HUNTING ARE TO BE REGARDED AS THE FOUR MOST PERNICIOUS, IN THE ORDER IN WHICH THEY ARE NAMED.—(50)

### *Bhāṣya.*

It is well known that these four are more harmful than 'sleeping during the day' and other vices.—(50)

## VERSE (51)

IN THE SET BORN OF ANGER,—ASSAULT, CRUELTY OF SPEECH AND MISAPPROPRIATION OF PROPERTY,—ARE TO BE REGARDED AS THE THREE MOST PERNICIOUS.—(51).

### *Bhāṣya.*

It is well known that these three are worse than Tale-bearing and other vices.—(51)

## VERSE. (52)

THE SELF-DISCIPLINED MAN SHOULD KNOW THAT IN THIS SET OF SEVEN WHICH SPREADS EVERYWHERE, EACH PRECEDING VICE IS MORE SERIOUS THAN THE SUCCEEDING ONE.—(52)

*Bhāṣya*

Between Drinking and Gambling, Drinking is the more serious; because this entails loss of consciousness; by it the unmaddened man becomes maddened, the living man becomes dead, the man exposes his private parts, loses his friends, is abandoned by good men and becomes associated with bad persons; becomes addicted to singing and other vices, shamelessly gives out his love and other secrets; the respected man becomes an object of obloquy, even the otherwise serious man becomes liable to talk at random, when suffering from intoxication. Such are the evil effects of Drinking. In the case of Gambling on the other hand, the man who knows the art of gambling always wins, and also for one who does not know the art there is only partial loss.

Between Woman and Gambling, the vice of Gambling is more serious. In Gambling what is won by the man becomes poison for himself; winning always gives rise to enmities, since it is only loss that is common to several people; it also leads to the loss of what may have been already enjoyed; then again, on account of the checking of the calls of nature, the body becomes dull and a breeding-ground of disease; so that even slight causes become productive of much pain; (such is the spirit of gambling that) even at the death of his mother the man keeps on his gambling; even when he has attained success, he cannot be drawn away from it even by his well-wishers; he ceases to trust even such persons as avoid other people's belongings like heated iron; he neglects to give food and other things to persons that are hungry and in straitened circumstances; even though endowed with all estimable qualities, he comes to be despised, as a blade of grass. Such are the evils of gambling. In the vice

connected with woman on the other hand, there is this good that the man obtains children, enjoys excellent dinners and nice articles of toilet; so that he secures wealth as well as some virtue. Further, it is possible to employ women on state-business, and also for the purpose of rendering people open to stigma and censure.

Between Woman and Hunting, the vice in connection with women is more serious. Under its influence, the King neglects his business; becoming addicted to women, he acquires distaste for state-business, he wastes time and loses in virtue, becomes addicted to the evils of drinking as also to lying and other pernicious habits. In Hunting on the other hand, there is physical exercise, a lessening of the humours of bile and phlegm, reduction of obesity, markmanship in ariming at moving as well as standing targets, also practice of hitting; the king also aquires a degree of alertness and cultivates the acquaintance of the village-folk.

Thus in the set of four vices proceeding from love of pleasure, that which precedes is more abominable than that which follows.

In the set born of anger also, assaulting is beset with evils, and is followed by addiction to lying and other evil habits. Between Assaulting and Cruelty of speech, Assaulting is more serious. In the case of assault, making up becomes impossible; while in the case of cruel speech the fire of anger and hatred is capable of being appeased by the subsequent bestowals of gifts and honour.

Between cruel speech and misappropriation of property, cruel speech is the more serious. Even high-minded persons become afflicted and perturbed in mind by cruel speech. To this effect we have the following saying :—

'Even a powerful sword, or a black dart, entering the bone may make the body free from pain, when removed, but words never disappear from the heart; that which is pierced by an arrow grows again; the forest cut off by the axe again flourishes; but that which is wounded by rough and indecent speech never flourishes again'.

Misappropriation of property on the other hand is looked upon as an effect of ill-luck and as such high-minded people donot feel keenly about it.

Thus it is shown that in these two sets the preceding vice is more serious than the succeeding one.—(52)

## VERSE (53)

**Between Vice & Death, Vice is said to be more harmful; the vicious man sinks down and down; but the dead man, without vices, ascends to heaven.—(53**

### *Bhāṣya.*

Though both death and vice deprive one of every thing, yet there is this difference between them that death deprives one of everything, only in this world, while vice deprives him of all things in this world as well as in heaven.

'*The vicious man sinks down and down*'—falls into hell.

The term '*vicious*' denotes excessive addiction to the aforesaid sets of vices. Hence it is such repeated addiction that is forbidden; not merely having recourse to them once in a way.

These vices become destructive of virtue, wealth, pleasure and life, even in the case of ordinary men; what to say of Kings? At the same time it would not be right to] abandon drinking etc. entirely; nor would it be possible; hence it is the habit that is forbidden.—(53)

## VERSE (54)

**He shall appoint seven or eight ministers, with respectable status, versed in law, of heroic temperament, experienced in business, born of noble families, and thoroughly tested.—(54)**

*Bhasya.*

'*Of respectable status*' ;—hereditary servants of the king, possessed of many children, and relations and much wealth, openly pos sessing vast numbers of cattle and landed property, inhabitants of the kingdom. '*Mūla*' is *status*; and those possessed of status are '*maula*'.

'*Versed in law*';—'*shāstra*' is *law*, *ordinance*; the law regulating the conduct of servants; hence the term indicates other qualifications also; such as—intelligent, of firm resolve, capable of much hard labour, clever, eloquent, strong, respectable, endowed with courage and energy, able to bear hardships, pure, liberal, equipped with estimable character, free from both tardiness and fickleness, loved by men, not prone to making enemies.

The term '*shūra*', '*of heroic temperament*', indicates one who, in his zeal for the king's work, takes no account of his body, life, children or wealth, and also also not afraid of death, ever ready for battle, and though alone, he is ever ready to engage in a fight with many persons,—capable of striking hard, possessed of strength.

'*Experienced in business*';—this indicates the fact of their having seen much work; those who have actually fought with the sword, who have successfully accomplished their duties, who have had previous experience in ministerial work.

'*Born of noble families*;'—when people are moved by considerations of their noble family, they desist from improper acts.

'*Ministers*'—assistants.

These should always remain at the king's side.

'*Seven or eight*'—This is a restrictive rule; fewer than these are likely to combine,—and this would render the king's consultations one-sided. On the other hand, if they are too many, there is likely to be great diversities of opinion. Hence only seven or eight ministers are to be appointed.

'*Thoroughly tested*'.—This refers to tests relative to (*a*) virtue, (*b*) wealth, (*c*) love and (*d*) fear. For instance, (*a*) The Priest, under the pretext of having been reprimanded in his work, by the king, should approach each of the ministers with large presents sent through trustworthy messengers, with proposals purporting to bring about the king's ruin, saying—'this proposal has been approved by all the ministers, how does it appear to you?'—If the minister thus approached, repudiates the suggestion, he has been 'tested with the test of virtue.'—(*b*) The army—commander, under a similar pretext of having been reprimanded, may approach one of the ministers with large presents sent through trusted messengers, suggesting proposals for bringing about the king's ruin, saying—'this has been approved by all ministers, what do you think of it?'—If the minister should repudiate the suggestion, he becomes 'tested with the test of wealth.' (*c*) A female ascetic who is trusted in the king's harem, shall approach each of the ministers, saying—'such and such a queen is in love with you and has made arrangements for meeting you.' If the man repudiates the suggestion, he becomes 'tested with the test of love.'—(*d*) Some persons, urged by the king himself, should give out the rumour that 'the king is being killed by certain ministers who have made a combination against him'; having heard this numour, a trusted man in the priest's employ should suggest to the ministers the following plan—'on hearing this rumour the king is going to punish you'; one of these men, having previously entered into the plan, should approach each of the ministers and urge them to activity; the ministers who repudiate this suggestion become 'tested with the test of fear.'

Or, he shall appoint such ministers of finance as are '*maula*' i. e. capable of collecting and guarding and rightly spending wealth; that is, those who collect wealth from the villages, and carefully keep and rightly spend what has been collected. The meaning thus is that he shall appoint such finance ministers as are experts in money-matters.—'*Versed in law*'—the councillors that he appoints should be learned.—The army-commanders that he appoints should be '*of heroic temperament.*' '*Experienced*' and the other epithets qualify each of those mentioned above.

Some people hold that the 'testing' of ministers, in the manner related above, is not the right thing to do; they hold that such testing may actually produce unfaithful feelings in the minds of the ministers. Hence some other faithful woman (than the queen herself) should be employed (in the test); and the intrigue too should be proposed against some other person than the King himself.—(54)

## VERSE (55)

EVEN AN UNDERTAKING THAT IS EASY IS DIFFICULT TO BE ACCOMPLISHED BY A SINGLE MAN, SPECIALLY BY ONE WHO HAS NO ASSISTANT; HOW MUCH MORE SO IS THE WORK OF THE KING, WHICH INVOLVES GREAT ISSUES!—(55)

*Bhāṣya.*

The ordinary household work of the householder,—such as looking after cattle, house and the rest—has been regarded as 'easy'; the same man tends the cattle and milks the cow. But even so all this cannot be done by a single man; it is still more difficult if the man happens to have no one to assist him; how can he take the cattle to graze, and at the same time look after his wife? As for '*the work of the king*', it is an important undertaking and leads to important results; its proper accomplishment bears important fruits, and important results accrue to the man who fulfills it. But a single man cannot be expected to know all the six 'means of success'. Hence it it necessary for the king to appoint to the several departments of state trusted assistants, who are possessed of qualifications similar to those of the king himself.—(55)

## VERSE (56)

WITH THESE HE SHALL ALWAYS DISCUSS ALL ORDINARY BUSINESS RELATING TO PEACE AND WAR, AS ALSO THE 'STATE', THE SOURCES OF REVENUE, THE MEANS OF PROTECTION, AND THE CONSOLIDATION OF WHAT HAS BEEN ACQUIRED.—(56)

*Bhāṣya.*

With the aforesaid councillors and finance-ministers he shall discuss the '*ordinary business*'—what may not be of a very confidential nature—'*relating to peace and war*'; he shall consider *peace and war* ; he shall consider the pros and cons of both sides of the question as to whether on a certain occasion peace or war would be the right course to adopt. But the actual decision he should take himself; so that he may not appear to have been guided by other persons.

He should also discuss the '*state*'; this is fourfold, consisting of Army, Treasure, City and Kingdom. Of these the '*Army*' consists in Elephants, Horses, Chariots and Footsoldiers ; and he shall discuss such things relating to them as maintenance, protection, and the appointment of proper commanders ;—as regards the *Treasury*, it should abound in gold and silver in large quantities, which should not be spent ; the cardinal parts of the Treasury shall never be expended; nor should payments to servants be delayed ;—as regards the *Kingdom*, which is the same as *country*, it should be maintained intact against encroachment by others, by the careful looking after of rivers and trees and cattle, the building of protective works against possible attacks by enemies ; it should not be allowed to depend entirely on rain, and in times of distress special penalties and taxes shall be levied (?);—as regards the *City*, the methods of guarding it are going to be described under 7·75.

Or, '*sthāna*', '*state*', may mean not deviating from its own position.

Similarly he shall also discuss the '*sources of revenue*'—such as agriculture, pastures, barriers, trade, fines and so forth.

'*Means of protection*',—of the king's own kingdom, as going to be described later on.

'*Consolidation of what has been acquired*';—the honouring of learned and pious men and the continuance of bounties to

them, the granting of fresh bounties ; and the removal of all restraints ; merciful treatment of the poor and the diseased ; the instituting of fresh public sports and rejoicings and the continnance of those already in vogue. He shall put a stop to all abuses regarding the Treasury and judicial procedure, and introduce sounder methods of work. If there is some improper act done by others he shall stop it ; but he shall not in terfere with any righteons act that may be done by others.

In this manner '*State*' and the rest shall be discussed.—(56).

## VERSE (57)

HAVING ASCERTAINED THE OPINION OF EACH OF THE MINISTERS INDIVIDUALLY AND ALSO COLLECTIVELY, HE SHALL, IN HIS AFFAIRS, DO WHAT IS BENEFICIAL TO HIMSELF.—(57)

*Bhāṣya.*

Having ascertained in private the opinion of each of them—the opinion entertained by them in his heart of hearts—also '*collectively*';—he shall do this because some people are shy in assemblies, but bold in private, while others are more fit in assemblies ; hence he shall question the ministers collectively also.

After that he shall do whatever appears to him to be most proper—'*beneficial to himself*'; be it what one of the ministers themselves may have advised, and had not been opposed by others ; and hence indicated to be free from objections.—(57)

## VERSE (58)

WITH THE LEARNED BRĀHMANA, HOWEVER, WHO IS THE MOST DISTINGUISHED OF THEM ALL, THE KING SHALL DISCUSS THE HIGHEST SECRETS PERTAINING TO THE SIX-FOLD STATECRAFT.—(58)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Learned*'—highly educated, well versed in the science of polity.

'*He shall discuss the highest secret*'—what has to be guarded in absolute secrecy—'*pertaining to the sixfold state-craft.*'

The Brāhmaṇa is, as a rule, possessed of keener intelligence, and being highly virtuous, is absolutely trustworthy.—(58)

## VERSE (59)

HE SHALL ALWAYS, IN FULL CONFIDENCE, ENTRUST ALL BUSINESS TO HIM; AND HAVING, IN CONSULTATION WITH HIM, FORMED HIS RESOLUTION, HE SHALL DO WHAT HAS TO BE DONE. (59)

*Bhāṣya*

Having entrusted the whole kingdom to the said *Brāhmaṇa*, the king shall enjoy royal pleasures in full confidence and trust.

'*In consultation with him, having formed his resolution, he shall do what has to be done*';—such as marching against an enemy, encamping, judicial proceedings, collection of revenue and so forth.—(59).

## VERSE (60)

HE SHALL ALSO APPOINT OTHER MINISTERS, WHO ARE PURE, WISE, FIRM, EXPERTS IN COLLECTING REVENUE AND THOROUGHLY TESTED.—(60)

*Bhāṣya.*

This is an exception to what has been said regarding the appointing of 'seven or eight' ministers (verse 54).

'*Experts in collecting revenue*'—thoroughly experienced in the work of collecting revenue.

'*Tested*'—by the tests (described above).—(60)

## VERSE (61)

**He shall appoint as many industrious, clever and skilful men as may be required for the accomplishment of his business.—(61)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

All these officials to be appointed should be well versed in the art of deliberation, and learned.

'*Skilful*'.—Even when there is ground for fear and bewilderment, they retain their courage.

'*Industrious*'—not slothful. It has been declared in the *Adhyakṣaprachāra* that—'That king alone deserves his kingdom whose minister is intelligent, loyal, industrious, well versed in matters relating to virtue and wealth, pure, clever and of noble family; having entrusted the burden of the kingdom to him, if the king gives himself to pleasure, he does not perish; because even so his kingly duties are duly fulfilled'.—(61)

## VERSE (62)

**From among them he shall employ the brave, the expert, the high-born and the honest ones in work relating to finance,—such as mines and stores—and timid ones in the interior of the palace.—(62)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Arthe*', '*work relating to finance*',—*i. e.* offices pertaining to income and expenditure. In these he shall employ those who are '*honest*'—not covetous of wealth.

Some of these financial offices are indicated by example—'*mines and stores*';—'*mines*' are places where gold, silver and other precious metals are dug out and cleansed, and '*stores*' consist of food-grains, cotton, seeds and so forth.

*'In the interior of the palace'*;—*i. e.* the inner apartments, the kitchen, the bed-room and the ladies' apartments.—In these he shall appoint *'timid'* persons. Because brave persons, if won over by his enemies, might kill the king, when he may be alone.

All of these should be *'expert'*; they are energetic and, not minding any opposition, never allow their master's work to suffer.—(62)

## SECTION. (5)

## The Ambassador.

### VERSE (63)

AS AMBASSADOR HE SHALL APPOINT ONE WHO IS WELL VERSED IN ALL THE SCIENCES, WHO UNDERSTANDS HINTS, EXPRESSIONS AND GESTURES, WHO IS HONEST, EXPERT AND BORN OF A NOBLE FAMILY.— 63)

*Bhāṣya.*

For the Ambassador the further qualification is necessary,—that he should be able to understand '*hints, expressions and gestures*'. When the Ambassador goes to another king and the latter is deliberating with his ministers on questions of peace, there pass among them certain signs ; for instance, the Ambassador is received with studied regard, he is confided in, his entire speeches are frequently praised. [All these he shall take note of.] But of unfavourable signs he shall take no notice.

'*Expressions*'—bodily changes; such as dejected looks, paleness of the face, silence, heaving of sighs, long and hot;—such bodily changes indicate humility, and the clever ambassador infers from these that 'the man has fallen in some dire calamity, that is why he is pale'. On the other hand, when the man talks glibly, his body wears a bloom, the face is happy,—it shows that he is pleased.

'*Honest*'—in his dealings with women ; (this is necessary) since it is through women that secrets generally become divulged and men fall into disgrace.—(63)

### VERSE (64)

THAT ROYAL AMBASSADOR IS COMMENDED WHO IS LOYAL, HONEST, CLEVER, POSSESSED OF GOOD MEMORY, CONVERSANT WITH PLACE AND TIME, HANDSOME OF BODY, FEARLESS AND ELOQUENT.—(64)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Loyal*'—who cannot be won over.

'*Clever*'—does not miss the right time and place.

'*Possessed of good memory*'—who carries his master's messages intact, without forgetting any part of it.

'*Conversant with time and place*'.—knowing the proper time and place, he may say things which he may not have been told if it happens to be opportune.

'*Handsome*'—of goodly appearance. Being handsome to look at, he says things cleverly and in the right manner.

'*Fearless*';—it is only one who is free from fear who can say things in the proper spirit.

'*Eloquent*';—he is capable of replying to what may be said in answer to the message brought by him.—(64)

The author proceeds to explain why it is necessary to seek for the said qualities in an ambassador.—

## VERSE (65)

THE ARMY IS DEPENDENT UPON THE MINISTER (OF WAR); ON THE ARMY RESTS THE ACT OF RULING; THE TREASURY AND THE REALM ARE DEPENDENT UPON THE KING, AND UPON THE AMBASSADOR DEPEND PEACE AND ITS OPPOSITE.—(65)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Upon the minister*'—*i.e.* on the commander—'*is dependent the army*'—composed of the elephant and the rest; since it is according to his wishes that it operates.

'*On the army rests the act of ruling*';—since the person, be he an inhabitant of the king's own realm, or of another kingdom, who is to be '*ruled*' has got to be punished; and the act pertaining thereto is called the 'act of ruling'.

*'The Treasury and the Realm are dependent upon the king'*—'*Treasury*' is the place of accumulation; and '*realm*' is the country; and these two should not be made over to the charge of any other person; the king should look after them himself.

*'Upon the ambassador depend peace and its opposite.'*—'Peace' is obtained by the use of agreeable word and showing off what is done by his master; the opposite of this leads to 'war'; both of these thus are dependent upon the Ambassador.—(65)

The work of the ambassador has thus been eulogised. The same fact is again reiterated:—

## VERSE (66)

FOR IT IS THE AMBASSADOR ALONE WHO BRINGS TOGETHER ALLIES AND ALSO ALIENATES THEM; THE AMBASSADOR TRANSACTS THAT BUSINESS BY WHICH PEOPLE BECOME DISUNITED—(66)

*Bhāṣya.*

The Ambassador brings about the alliance of kings, and also disunites those already allied. He does the former by saying even such agreeable things as he has not been commssioned to say; and the latter by describing even such unfriendly acts as may not have been done; by not paying the presents of gold and other things that he may have brought with him. In this way be disunites allies.

This business, just spoken of, is transacted by the Ambassador, and by it kings become disunited.

It is only persons with disagreeable speech that do this—(66)

Another work of the Ambassador is next described:—

## VERSE (67—69)

IN CONNECTION WITH THE BUSINESS OF THE FOREIGN KING, HE SHOULD EXPLORE, BY MEANS OF SECRET HINTS AND TRANSACTIONS, THE EXPRESSION, THE HINTS AND THE TEANSACTIONS AMONG HIS SERVANTS, AS ALSO THE INTENTIONS OF THE KING HIMSELF.—(67)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*He*'—the ambassador;—'in connection with the business of the king', who is going to be marched against by his employer.—(67)

## VERSES (68—70)

HAVING LEARNT ALL THE PRECISE INTENTIONS OF THE FOREIGN KING, HE SHALL TAKE SUCH STEPS THAT HE MAY NOT BRING TROUBLE TO HIMSELF.—(68)

HE SHALL TAKE UP RESIDENCE IN A COUNTRY WHICH IS OPEN, FULLY SUPPLIED WITH GRAINS, INHABITED ALMOST ENTIRELY BY MEN OF GENTLE BIRTH, FREE FROM DISEASES, PLEASANT, WHERE THE VASSALS ARE OBEDIENT AND WHERE LIVING IS EASILY FOUND.—(69)

## SECTION 6.

## Fortification.

### VERSE (55).

**He shall live in a city, taking up his residence either in a 'bow-fort', or in an 'earthen fort', or in an 'aquatic fort,' or in an 'arborial fort,' or in a 'human fort,' or in a 'hilly fort.'—(70)**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Bow-fort*'—surrounded by a strongly-built wall, built of bricks, double-storeyed, more than 12 cubits high, with its base like the palm and its top like the monkey's head.

'*Earthen fort*'—surrounded by earthen embankments.

'*Aquatic fort*'—surrounded by unfathomable water.

'*Arborial fort*'—surrounded, to a distance of four miles, with densely-packed large trees.

'*Human fort*'—garrisoned by an army of four divisions, and filled with arms and heroic persons.

'*Hilly fort*'—inaccessibly high, with a single pathway leading to it, supplied with water from an underground stream.—(70)

### VERSE (71 & 72).

**By all meens in his power he shall take shelter in a 'hilly fort'; because among all these (forts) the hilly fort is distinguished by many good qualities.—(71).**

**The first three of these are inhabited by deer, by animals living underground and by aquatic animals, and the last three by monkeys, men and gods.—(72).**

*Bhaṣya.*

'*The first three*'—the 'bow-fort' and the rest.

'*Inhabited*'—taken shelter in.

'*Animals living underground*'—the *garyara* (a kind of fish,) the mungoose and the like.

'*Aquatic animals*—alligators, tortoise and so forth.

This means that the King suffers the good and bad effects that are suffered by the animals inhabiting these places of shelter.

'*The last three*'—'*Plavaṅgama*' is the monkey.—(72)

## VERSE (73 .

JUST AS ENEMIES DO NOT HURT THESE BEINGS SHELTERED IN THEIR FORTRESSES, SO ALSO THE ENEMIES DO NOT INJURE THE KING PROTECTED BY HIS FORT.

*Bhāṣya.*

This verse explains the use of making forts; the sense being that since even extremely weak persons, if sheltered by forts, cannot be easily injured by powerful enemies, it is advisable to take shelter in a fort.—(73)

## VERSE (74)

A SINGLE BOW-MAN, STANDING ON A RAMPART, CAN FIGHT AGAINST A HUNDRED; AND A HUNDRED CAN FIGHT AGAINST TEN THOUSAND; IT IS FOR THIS REASON THAT FORTIFICATION HAS BEEN ENJOINED.—(74).

*Bhāṣya.*

This use of the fort is well known.

Some people have held that the example of the 'rampart' indicates that this refers to the 'hill-fort'. But this is not right;

because ramparts are possible in 'earthen forts' also. Hence the use here described must refer to all kinds of forts.—(74)

## VERSE (75)

IT SHOULD BE FULLY EQUIPPED WITH WEAPONS, WITH MONEY AND GRAIN, WITH CONVEYANCES, WITH BRAHMAṆAS, WITH ARTISANS, WITH MACHINES, WITH FODDER AND WITH WATER.—(75)

### *Bhaṣya.*

'*Weapons*'—swords, javelins &c.

'*Equipped*'—supplied.

'Weapons' include also armour, helmet and other accoutrements of war.

'*Money*'—gold, silver &c.

'*Conveyances*'—chariots, horses &c.

'*Artisans*'—men capable of working at machines, *i. e.* carpenters and so forth.

'*Fodder*'—

'*Brāhmaṇas*'—ministers and priests, as well as others. These may come useful if certain religious acts have got to be done for the allaying of sudden portents etc.

As the list is not meant to be exhaustive, the king should get together also physicians and other persons likely to be of use.

## VERSE. (76)

IN THE CENTRE OF THE FORT, HE SHALL GET BUILT FOR HIMSELF A SPACIOUS PALACE, WELL GUARDED, EQUIPPED WITH ALL SEASONS, RESPLENDENT, AND SUPPLIED WITH WATER AND TREES.—(76)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Spacious*'—as large as may be necessary for the king, his sons, his treasury, armoury, stables and other necessities.

'*Well guarded*'—with several compartments.

Such a palace he shall get built for himself.

'*Equipped with all seasons*'—adorned with flowers and garlands of all seasons: thus all the seasons would be present there. The term '*seasons*' stands for the *products* of the seasons, in the shape of flowers, fruits etc.

If we read '*Sarvartugam*'—it means 'the place where all the seasons are present'. The sense remains the same in both cases. When a thing is *present* in a place, the place is said to be *equipped* with it.

'*Resplendent*'—whitewashed with lime.

'*Supplied with water and trees*'—equipped with fountains, gardens and parks.—(76)

## SECTION (7)

## Domestic Duties.

### VERSE (77) *

**HAVING OCCUPIED IT, HE SHALL WED A WIFE OF THE SAME CASTE AS HIMSELF, WHO IS EQUIPPED WITH AUSPICIOUS SIGNS, BORN IN A NOBLE FAMILY, CHARMING, AND POSSESSED OF BEAUTY AND EXCELLENT QUALITIES. (77)**

*Bhasya.*

'*Having taken up his residence in it*'—the said palace—he should, for the purpose of helping himself, marry a wife from some '*noble family*'; such an alliance being conducive to his welfare.

'*Of the same caste as himself*' &c.—what is meant by all this has been already explained before (3-4).

'*Charming*'—pleasing; endowed with brightness and loveliness of complexion.

'*Beauty*'—of good bodily shape.

'*Excellent qualities*'—speech, conduct and so forth.

'*Possessed of*'—Endowed with.—(77)

### VERSE (78).

**HE SHALL APPOINT A HOUSEHOLD PRIEST AND SELECT OFFICIATING PRIESTS; THEY SHALL PERFORM HIS DOMESTIC RITES, AS ALSO THE FIRE-SACRIFICES.—(78)**

*Bhāṣya.*

Even though the Accusative case-ending has been used, yet the singular number (in '*purohitam*', 'priest') should be regarded as significant; specially as the singleness of the household priest has been declared elsewhere also; the present construction being

analogous to that in the case of such sentences as 'he cuts *a post*', 'one should obtain *a wife*', and so forth.

'*He shall select officiating priests.*'—The exact number of these should be ascertained from Vedic texts. Their qualifications are—'They should be neither too fat nor too lean, neither too tall nor too short, neither too old nor too young, having at least six ancestors on both sides famed for learning, austerity and actions, their Brāhmaṇa-hood should be above suspicion and they should themselves be learned'; and so forth.

'*Domestic rites*'—those that are performed for the allaying of evil portents and for the securing of welfare.

'*Fire sacrifices*'—sacrificial rites performed in connection with the Three Fires.—(78)

## VERSE (79)

THE KING SHALL OFFER VARIOUS SACRIFICES AT WHICH LARGE SACRIFICIAL FEES ARE PAID; AND FOR THE PURPOSE OF ACQUIRING MERIT, HE SHALL PROVIDE FOR BRĀHMAṆAS LUXURIES AND RICHES.—(79)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*At which large sacrificial fees are paid*'—*i.e.* the *Pauṇḍarīka* and other elaborate sacrifices.

'*Luxuries and riches*'.—Clothes, scents, unguents, and rich food constitute the 'luxuries'; and '*riches*' consist in silver and gold.

Some people hold that these gifts' are obligatory, and not voluntary. This is what is meant by the assertion that this is 'for the purpose of acquiring merit'.—(79).

## VERSE (80)

HE SHOULD CAUSE THE YEARLY REVENUE TO BE COLLECTED BY TRUSTED MEN. IN HIS BUSINESS HE SHALL STICK TO THE SCRIP-

TURES ; AND TOWARDS THE PEOPLE HE SHALL BEHAVE LIKE A FATHER.—(80)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Revenue*'—the tax, in the shape of the sixth part of the produce of grains.

*By trusted men*'—by men who have been tested by means of tests.

'*He shall stick to the scriptures*'—as detailed above. That is, he shall have recourse to such sciences of reasoning &c. as depend mostly upon the scriptures. Or, it may mean that he shall receive only such part of the produce as 'tax' as may be sanctioned by established usage, never more than that.

'*Towards the people he shall behave like a father*'.—That is, he shall behave lovingly towards those who pay the taxes, as also towards others.—(80)

## VERSE (81)

HERE AND THERE HE SHALL APPOINT SEVERAL PROFICIENT INSPECTORS ; THEY SHALL SUPERVISE ALL THE ACTS OF MEN WORKING FOR HIM.—(81)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Inspectors*'—duly authorised supervisors—'*he shall appoint.*'

'*Several* '—of various kinds ; *i.e.* kind-hearted, hard-hearted, righteous and experts in collecting wealth.

'*Here and there*',—in the treasury containing gold, in the collecting of customs and taxes in cash and kind, in looking after the navy, the elephants, the chariots, the horses and the foot-soldiers. To all this he shall appoing '*proficient*' men. All these should be endowed with all the qualities of ministers ; as has been declared in the *Adhyakṣaprachāra*—'Those inspectors shall supervise all the works of men who transact the king's

business as his agents,—*e. g.* elephant-keepers in the keeping of elephants, masters of the horse in looking after horses, and keepers of cattle in looking after ploughing and such works'.—(81)

## VERSE (82)

**He shall do honour to those Brāhmaṇas who have returned from their teacher's house; for kings, this is interminable; and has been called 'Brahmic treasure'.—(82)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

He shall honour with gifts those Brāhmaṇas who have learnt the Veda and studied what is contained in it in their teacher's house and are desirous of proceeding to Householdership.

This act of giving also is abligatory on the King. Hence it is said that—'*for the king this is interminable*',—i. e. obligatory, hence interminable, life-long. If it were voluntary, its necessity would cease as soon as its fruits had been attained. This is exactly what is going to be described under 11. 1.

Others however hold that what is enjoined under 11. 1 is the giving of gifts to persons seeking for it, while the present context refers to persons not seeking for gifts; hence all that is meant is that they shall be duly honoured with such presents as those of a pair of cloth and the like, just in obedience to the injunction laying down such honouring. It is in view of this that the text has said 'he shall do honour to the Brāhmaṇas.'

'*Brahmic*'—entrusted to the Brāhmaṇas.—(82).

## VERSE (83)

**Neither thieves, nor enemies take it away; nor does it perish; hence this inexhaustible treasure shall be deposited by the king with the Brāhmaṇas.—(83)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The wealth that is given away to *Brāhmaṇas*, that 'no thieves'—forest-robbers—can take away; enemies also cannot

take it. Nor does it become lost—either in the form of treasure buried underground, of which the exact position cannot be recalled, or in the form of security.—(83)

## VERSE (84)

**WHAT IS OFFERED INTO THE MOUTH OF THE BRĀHMAṆA, WHICH IS NEITHER SPILT NOR SPOILT, NOR WASTED, IS FAR SUPERIOR TO THE FIRE-OFFERINGS.—(84)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

That the act just mentioned *must* be performed is asserted again in another form: What is offered into the Fire is sometimes '*spilt*'—it flows out, when it is poured out ; sometimes it becomes spoilt—as in the case of the cake—by becoming over-burnt. Similarly it becomes 'wasted'—in the eyes of all cultured men—by reason of defects in the ritualistic detail. None of these defects is possible in the case of what is given to Brāhmaṇas.

It is in view of this that the text asserts that this is '*superior to the Fire-offerings*'—*i.e.* to the offerings poured into fire. Or, the term '*Agnihotra*' may be taken in its literal sense of the name of the Rite; and in that case we have to supply the term '*et cetera*.'

'*Offered into the mouth.*'—The hand of the Brāhmaṇa is his 'mouth'; according to the declaration—'The Brāhmaṇa has been described as having his hands for his mouth.'

'*Superior*'—more excellent.

This is purely commendatory ; and should not be taken as actually detracting from the value of the Fire-offerings.—(84)

## VERSE (85)

**THE GIFT TO A NON-BRĀHMAṆA IS EQUABLE ; THAT TO A NOMINAL BRĀHMAṆA IS TWOFOLD ; THAT TO THE TEACHER, A HUNDRED-THOUSAND-FOLD AND THAT TO A PERSON THOROUGHLY LEARNED IN THE VEDA, ENDLESS.—(85)**

*Bhāṣya.*

*Objection:*—"As a matter of fact, it has been laid down in the present context that gifts should be made to *Brāhmaṇas* (82); and before this also (under 3.96) it has been declared that gifts should be made 'to a Brāhmaṇa who knows the real meaning of the Veda.' Then again, it cannot be reasonable to accept the words of the text in the literal sense—that the various kinds of gifts actually bring about the rewards in the manner stated. For instance, of what sort is the *equableness* (between the *gift* and the reward accruing thence, to the giver)? Is it in (a) kind, or (b) quantity, or (c) utility? If it be held to be in *kind*, then, in a case where, on the occasion of drinking a medicinal drug, the patient makes a gift of those drugs (?) to temple-worshippers, the gift would be conducive to pain. Because medicinal drugs as a rule are bitter, hot and pungent and tend to move the bowels. If, again the 'equableness' meant were in regard to *quantity*,—and there also the equality were only in *quantity*, irrespective of the character of the *substance*,—then a gift of *gold* might bring, as its reward, an equal quantity of *copper*, or some such things as a clod of earth or a piece of wood and the like. If again, the 'equableness' meant were both in regard to *kind* and *quantity*, then also there would be the same difficulties as those just pointed out. If lastly, the 'equableness' meant were in regard to *utility*,—then also, if the use also were of the same kind, in that case, the use of the medicinal drugs consisting in the curing a certain disease,—if the reward were to be of the same kind, then it would be as good as nonexistent, if the man did not happen to suffer from the same disease; so that the gift of those drugs would have to make the giver subject to that disease again, or some other disease of the same degree of seriousness. For these reasons, the declarations contained in the present verse should not be regarded as distinct sentences standing by themselves. Just as in the case of the Vedic declarations—'The *Nivīta* form is for human beings and the *Upavīta* for divine beings; so that when the man adopts the *Upavīta* form, he takes upon himself a mark of the gods',—what

is said in regard to the *Nivīta* and the rest is not taken as distinct from what is said regarding the adopting of the *Upavīta* form."

The answer to the above is as follows :—In the present text we do not find any verb in any of the sentences, every one of which, therefore, stands on the same footing. If it is a commendatory description, then this can apply only to the statement 'that to the man learned in the Veda, endless.' If again, it is an Injunction, then all the sentences should be regarded as equally injunctive ; there is nothing to indicate that any one of them is subservient to any other. In the case of the passage regarding the '*Nivīta*' &c; on the other hand, we find a verb in the term '*upavyayatē*' ('adopts the *upavīta* form') ; so that the sentence containing it fulfilling the conditions of an Injunctive sentence, it is only right that the others should be taken as subservient to it.

As for the argument that no gifts to a Non-Brāhmaṇa can be possible,—this must be due to the objector having forgotten that gifts to the poor and helpless of all castes have been enjoined. In fact it is only in regard to gifts to be made by Kings *to Brāhmaṇas* that we have the sentences in the present verse.

As regards the argument that "there is no possibility of rewards accruing in the manner stated in the text, on account of all the various methods indicated being open to objection,"—our answer is as follows :—The mode of expression adopted here is that of ordinary parlance. In ordinary parlance, what is not *very good* is called 'equable'; *e. g.* in such expressions as 'the Saktu contains an equable supply of salt.' As for the reward being '*two-fold*', the two-foldness meant is in regard to *utility* ; the meaning being that the reward is doubly as useful as the original gift. It is not meant either that the same *kind* of substance is obtained in return, or that the *utility* is of the same kind ; all that is meant is that the degree of *happiness* produced is twice as much. Further, as a matter of fact, the verse is not meant to be an 'injunction of rewards'; so that there is no room for the raising of any such questions as to whether it is the *same substance*, or another substance, that is obtained in reward. Specially as in cases where no rewards are mentioned, the attainment of Heaven is

always regarded as the reward. Then again, in connection with the giving of sesamum, the obtaining of children has been declared to be the reward; and certainly in such a case there can be no possibility of the reward being of the same *kind* as the gift. Thus all that is meant here, and also in the subsequent passages, is that the excellence of the recipient adds to the excellence of the gift. This is exactly what is emphasised in the next verse.

In the term '*brāhmaṇa—bruva*' ('nominal Brāhmaṇa')—the particle '*bruva*' has a derogatory sense; it stands for one who is Brāhmaṇa by caste only, and is wholly devoid of learning and other qualities.

'*Teacher*'—the Initiator.

'*A person thoroughly learned in the Veda*,'—one who has, by learning and study, got to the end of the Veda.—(85)

## VERSE (86)

FOR ONE OBTAINS, AFTER DEATH, THE REWARD, SMALL OR GREAT, OF HIS GIFTS,—ACCORDING TO THE PECULIAR CHARACTER OF THE RECIPIENT, AND ALSO ACCORDING TO HIS OWN FAITH.—(86)

### *Bhāṣya.*

The term '*pātra*' etymologically signifies either (a) 'one who saves from sinful deeds', or (b) 'one who saves and protects himself';—i.e. the *recipient*; or the *recipient* is called '*pātra*' in the same sense in which the vessel containing clarified butter is called its '*pātra*'; the substance given away is deposited in the *recipient* in the same manner in which the butter is deposited in the vessel. This is what has been declared above (82)—"For kings this is interminable, and has been called *Brahmic treasure*.'

The '*peculiar character*' of the recipient consists in his possessing or not possessing, proper qualifications. It is by reason of these qualifications that rewards of gifts are obtained.

'*Or small*'.—When the gift is made to one who is possessed of excellent qualifications, in the shape of character and Vedic

learning, it brings a '*great*' reward, and when made to one who has no qualifications, it brings a *small* reward.

'*According to his own faith.*' To this effect we have the following text:—

THAT SUBSTANCE IS CONDUCIVE TO MERIT WHICH IS GIVEN TO A PROPER RECIPIENT, IN GOOD FAITH AND IN DUE ACCORDANCE WITH TIME AND PLACE AND FORM.

Here '*place*' stands for the 'right place', which is that which is other than the village inhabited by the giver himself; people away from their homes are likely to be subject to many inconveniences and wants, which may be removed by the gift;—'*Time*';—when some one who is performing a sacrifice happens to run short of necessary supplies; or when an eclipse takes place; '*Form*'—the pouring of water, the pronouncing of the syllable '*Svasti*'. by the recipient, the proper preparation of the substance given away, the sweetness of disposition with which the gift is made; and so forth;

'*Substance*'—cow, land, gold and so forth.

'*Faith*'—a keen desire for fulfilment, the determination as to 'how this may be accomplished.'

'*After death.*'—This only indicates that the reward does not always follow immediately after the act of giving; it does not mean that it accrues always during the next life; specially as all that is meant in the case of all acts enjoined in the Veda is that they must bring their reward (and nothing is indicated regarding the time at which the reward is to accrue).—(86)

## SECTION (8)

## Duties in Battle.

### VERSE (87)

WHILE PROTECTING HIS PEOPLE, IF THE KING IS CHALLENGED BY ENEMIES, EITHER EQUAL IN STRENGTH, OR STRONGER, OR WEAKER, HE SHALL NOT SHRINK FROM BATTLE, BEARING IN MIND THE DUTY OF THE KṢATTRIYA.—(87)

*Bhāṣya.*

War has been enjoined as the last resource for the king, when all other means nave failed ; and when once war has been entered into and the king has reached the battle-field, and has been challenged by his enemy,—he shall not show any sort of indifference; this is what is meant by the present verse ; which means that he shall not entertain any such notion as—'I shall not strike at a weak enemy.'

Or, when robbers and others, in sheer disregard for the established law, attack the people,—or join the king's enemies,—if such persons cannot be subdued without war,—then the king must go to war with them, even though they be weak. Though in a case like this, the king is not actually 'challenged' by the robbers in so many wards, yet, for all practical purposes, he is as good as 'challenged'.

It is '*the duty of the Kṣattriya*' that whenever he is challenged, he must fight, whoever the challenger may be, and he shall take no account of the caste or age or training or ambition etc. of the other party. This duty the King has to bear in mind.—(87)

### VERSE (88)

NOT SHRINKING FROM BATTLE, PROTECTING THE PEOPLE, AND ATTENDING ON BRAHMAṆAS,—IS THE BEST MEANS OF SECURING HAPPINESS FOR KINGS. —(88)

*Bhāṣya.*

This verse is meant to show that the three duties here mentioned bring equal rewards.—(88)

## VERSE (89)

KINGS, SEEKING TO SLAY EACH OTHER IN BATTLE AND FIGHTING WITH GREAT ENERGY, WITHOUT TURNING BACK, PROCEED TO HEAVEN.—(89)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Āhava*' is that where heroes are *challenged* by one another to fight, i. e. the battle; vying with one another and '*seeking to slay each other*';—'*fighting*'—striking—'*with great energy*'—to the utmost of their power. It is on account of metrical exigencies that in place of '*parayā*' (as qualifying '*shaktyā*') we have the form '*param*'.

'*Without turning back*';—this is to be construed with '*fighting*';—*proceed to heaven.*'

*Objection*—"As a matter of fact, the action taken by kings is instigated by a love for territorial expansion; so that an ordinary physical reward being possible, why should Heaven be mentioned as the reward ?"

Heaven is mentioned as the reward in connection with the observance of the rules of war going to be described; for the observance of these rules there can be no other motive. Even the king who has renounced his kingdom may observe the rules laid down in the next and following verses, and by surrendering to the powerful enemy he would become entitled to the trancendental reward (Heaven; there being no possibility of his winning any territories). Or again, when a king, on suffering defeat in battle, enters the fray (in sheer desperation), this act can only lead to Heaven. And on the strength of the present verse, such desperate fighting could not fall within the purview of the prohibition of self-immolation.

'*Kings*'—Rulers of provinces; not those under them; as the action of these latter is prompted by the interest of their masters

and not by any interest of their own; under the circumstances, how could there be any rewards for them ? In fact, their case is analogous to that of the Priests whose services have been secured by means of a stipulation regarding fees; so that in the case of the king's underlings also, in as much as their service has been secured by means of wages, how could there be any reward in the shape of Heaven or the like ?

"But under 5-97, it has been declared without any reservation that the sacrifice is immediately accomplished for the *Kṣattriya* who is killed by means of uplifted weapons, in due accordance with the duties of the Kṣattriya; and again—'those two persons pierce through the solar orb—the Renunciate in meditation and the hero killed in the forefront of battle';—further, in the Mahābhārata, it has been declared that Heaven is attained even by those who witness the battle. There are Vedic texts indicative of the same fact; e. g. 'Those brave men who fight in battles and give up their bodies there, as also those who pay a thousand as the sacrificial fee, go to the Gods,'—which shows that great rewards accrue to those sacrificers who pay a thousand as sacrificial fees,—'as also those brave persons who give up their lives in battle'. Further, the text speaks of 'those who fight,' and not 'those who have sold themselves for dying (for others);' specially as there is no such stipulation made at the time that the man's services are engaged. In the case of the officiating priests, the *Hotṛ*, the *Udgātṛ* and the rest, their appointment is for the express purpose of performing those priestly duties that are indicated by their titles. From all this it follows that even in the case of a man dying in serving his master, there is transcendental reward. Nor is there any such hard and fast rule as that there can be no reward in the case of an act prompted by the purposes of another man. In fact the slayer of a Brāhmaṇa becomes purified by bathing at the Final Bath of the *Ashvamēdha* sacrifice, where he is not the performer of the sacrifice."

The answer to the above is as follows:—As a matter of fact, the giving up of his life by the king for the benefit of his

people is actually conducive to merit. As regards what has been said regarding the losing of one's life in battle being tantamount to the accomplishment of a sacrifice,—this must refer to the man whose services have been engaged on a salary and who, not being his own master, enters the battle simply on the word of command to 'march forward'. This is the person meant by the expression 'who is killed in the fore-front of battle.'

Or, the 'piercing of the solar orb' by the man fighting in battle would mean only *being saved from hell.* In a case where a king's realm is attacked and pillaged by another king, and his people are being massacred, if the former undertakes to fight against him and loses his life in the fray, this would be conducive to merit. If he does not fight, he falls into 'blind darkness', which means *Hell*, on account of the total absence of light there. What the 'piercing of the solar orb' means is that the man reaches the regions beyond the solar regions; *i. e.* he does not fall downwards. When a man has accepted service on pay, under a master, if he fails to fight for his master in battle, and abandons him, his fall into hell is certain. On the other hand, if the man has fought his master's battle and has become free from the debt of the wages he has received from him,—if he is not bowed down by his sins,—it is only natural that he should attain heaven, by virtue of his own meritorious acts. It is in view of this that it has been declared that 'his sacrifice becomes immediately accomplished'. Thus also the passage in the Mahābharata becomes reconciled, where it is said that persons who have accepted service in the army attain heaven. As for the mention of Heaven being attained by persons 'witnessing the battle', this must be regarded as a commendatory exaggeration.

Or, the meaning of all this may be that, there being many means of livelihood, living by military service is sure to lead to heaven.

As regards the argument that it is not for dying that the men are engaged in military service,—in reality when soldiers are paid their wages, it is for no other purpose than for fighting;

specially as no other purpose has been mentioned. The men are engaged by the master with the view that 'they shall be ready for all kinds of work and shall help me in all my undertakings.' So that when a war breaks out, it becomes their duty to do everything for their master, even up to the giving up of the body; and thus alone is he able to repay his master. When, however, there is no war, if the servant happens to die, then he dies a servant (and not one freed from bondage); as the repayment of his debt is accomplished only if he accomplishes some purpose of his master, similar to that for which he has been engaged. As for the texts quoted as indicating the attainment of heaven by men dying in battle,—these also become reconciled in the above manner.

What has been said regarding the murderer becoming freed from sins by bathing at the Final Bath of the *Ashvamēdha* is accepted on the strength of the direct assertion to that effect, contained in such texts as—'Hence on their association etc. etc.'; while in the present instance going upward is stated to be the result of fighting;—and this constitutes a difference between the two cases (which, thus, cannot be regarded as analogous).—(89)

## VERSE (90)

WHILE FIGHTING HIS ENEMIES IN BATTLE, HE SHALL NOT STRIKE WITH CONCEALED WEAPONS; NOR WITH ARROWS THAT ARE POISONED, OR BARBED, ON WITH FLAMING SHAFTS. (90)

### *Bhâṣya.*

The author proceeds to indicate such rules as appertain to superphysical results.

*'Concealed'*—those that have a wooden exterior, but sharpened weapons within.

*'Barbed'*—those arrrows that are supplied, either at the base or in the middle of their shafts, with ear-shaped barbs, which, once they enter the flesh, can be withdrawn with difficulty; and

even when withdrawn they lascerate even those parts of the body that may not have been wounded by weapons.

'*Poisoned*'—besmeared with poison.

Those whose shafts are '*flaming*', i.e. consisting of fire. He shall not fight with such weapons.—(90)

## VERSE (91).

HE SHALL NOT STRIKE ONE WHO IS STANDING ON THE GROUND, NOR ONE WHO IS A EUNUCH, NOR THE SUPPLICANT WITH JOINED PALMS, NOR ONE WITH LOOSENED HAIR, NOR ONE WHO IS SEATED, NOR ONE WHO SAYS 'I AM YOURS;'—(91)

### *Bhāṣya.*

The man on the chariot should strike only him who also is on a chariot ; so that one standing on the ground shall not be struck.

'*Eunuch*'—who is devoid of masculinity ; or who is without manliness.

'*He who is seated*'—unconcerned, elsewhere ; or on his chariot, or on the ground.

He shall not strike also one who says 'I am yours'. No stress is meant to be laid upon the exact words to be used. What is meant is that he shall not strike the poor supplicant who addresses to him such words as 'I am yours', 'I seek your shelter', and so forth ;—(91)

## VERSE (92)

NOR ONE WHO IS SLEEPING, NOR HIM WHO IS WITHOUT HIS ARMOUR, NOR ONE WHO IS NAKED, NOR ONE DEPRIVED OF HIS WEAPONS, NOR ONE WHO IS ONLY LOOKING ON AND NOT FIGHTING, NOR ONE WHO IS ENGAGED IN FIGHTING WITH ANOTHER PERSON ;—(92)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Naked*'.—'*Bhagnam*', 'broken', 'defeated', is another reading. Fighting with one without his arrows having been forbidden,

there is no possibility of any one engaging a '*naked*' person. Hence 'nakedness' should be taken as refering to that *partial* nakedness which consists in *being deprived of the turban or some such part of his armour.* As regards the '*broken*' or 'defeated' man also,—since fighting with 'one who has turned to flight' is also forbidden (in 93),—it means that when the enemy who, though still facing his victorious foe, says 'I shall not fight with you any longer', he shall not be pressed to continue the fight.

'*Nor one who is only looking on and not fighting*' ;—the mere on-looker should not be struck ; this prohibition however does not apply to the man who looks on, as well as fights.

'*One engaged in fighting with another person*' ;—a man who is fighting one person should not be struck by another.—(92)

## VERSE (93)

NOR ONE WHO HAS FALLEN IN DIFFICULTIES REGARDING WEAPONS ; NOR ONE IN DISTRESS, NOR ONE SEVERELY WOUNDED, NOR ONE WHO IS FRIGHTENED, NOR ONE WHO HAS TURNED BACK ;—THE KING REMEMBERING THE DUTIES OF HONOURABLE MEN.—(93)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Difficulties regardiag weapons*'—such as the breaking of weapons, the sword becoming crooked, the snapping of the bow-string and so forth.

'*In distress*'—on having lost his son or brother or some other relative.

'*Frightened*'—showing such signs of fear as the paleness of face and the like, even though still facing his foe.

'*Turned back*'—starding with his face turned away.

These are positive rules to be observed. If they are to be regarded as prohibitions, the non-observance of them would be sinful ; [which would mean that their observance would simply save the man from that sin, and in that case] the declaration regarding the attaining of Heaven would be purely commendatory.

What then is the right view to take regarding these rules ?

They are prohibitions set up for the man's benefit, standing on the same footing as the prohibition of eating the flesh of the animal killed by a poisoned arrow. It is only when we take the rules thus that the negative word retains its primary meaning.

'*Remembering the duties of honourable men*'—the sense of '*anu*' is that such is the usage of all cultured men.—(93

## VERSE (94)

BUT THE KṢATTRIYA WHO, FRIGHTENED AND TURNED BACK, IS SLAIN BY THE ENEMIES, TAKES UPON HIMSELF ALL THE SIN THAT THERE MAY BE OF HIS MASTER.—(94)

*Bhāṣya.*

It should not be thought that 'if the man is killed after having turned back, he does not die after having committed a sinful deed'; because the offence lies in his having *turned back*. Further, the man should not entertain the notion that 'by becoming wounded I have repaid my debt to the master ; and have fulfilled my duty towards him'; because such wounds serve no useful purpose at all. This is what is indicated by pointing out the gravity of the offence involved. What is said in the present verse regarding the master's sins falling upon the servant, as also what follows in the next verse regarding the master taking off the merit of the servant,— all this is purely commendatory; for the acts of one man, either good or bad, cannot accrue to another ; nor can there be a total annihilation of a meritorious act. All that is possible is that, when there is an obstruction caused by a grievous sin, the fruition of the meritorious act is delayed. This is all that is meant in the present context.—(94)

## VERSE (95)

AND WHATEVER MERIT THE MAN SLAIN AFTER HAVING TURNED BACK MAY HAVE EARNED FOR THE NEXT WORLD,—ALL THAT HIS MASTER TAKES OFF.—(95)

*Bhāṣya.*

Whatever merit the man may have, all that his master takes off.

'*Earned for the next world.*'—This shows that there is some purpose served. The term '*amutrārtham*' is formed with the '*ach*' affix, according to the rule governing the '*arshas* group'. The meaning is—'what has been earned for some purpose to be fulfilled in the next world, becomes lost (nullified) for him'.

Or, the compound may be expounded as a *Bahuvrīhi*—'that whose purpose or use pertains to the next world'. This explanation would be justified by the sense and also by its usefulness.—(95)

## VERSE (96)

CHARIOTS AND HORSES, ELEPHANTS, UMBRELLAS, WEALTH, GRAINS, ANIMALS, WOMEN, ALL GOODS AND BASER METALS BELONG TO HIM WHO WINS THEM.—(96)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Baser metals*'—utensils of copper etc. as also beds and chairs etc.

'*Belong to him who wins them.*'—The king being the master of all, he might take away all the spoils of war; hence the text mentions a few exceptions.

Gold, silver, lands, buildings and so forth accrue to the King; hence the necessity of enumerating those that do not go to him.

Arms and conveyances also accrue to the King.

'*Grains*' and other things being mentioned separately, the term 'wealth' stands for cows, buffalos etc.

It is in view of all this that there is the popular saying—Half belongs to the King'.—(96)

## VERSE (97)

'THEY SHALL PRESENT TO THE KING THE CHOICE PORTION',—SUCH IS THE VEDIC DECLARATION. WHAT HAS NOT BEEN WON

INDIVIDUALLY SHALL BE DISTRIBUTED BY THE KING AMONG ALL THE SOLDIERS.—(97)

*Bhāṣya.*

A particular detail is laid down in connection with the rule that 'what has been won by one man shall be taken by him.'

The soldiers shall, of their own accord, '*present to the king the choice portion*' ; i. e. they shall select their best object and present it to the king; and they shall not take all the booty themselves.

'*Such is the Vedic Declaration.*'—The Vedic passage starting with the words '*Indro vai vṛttram hatvā*' (Indra having killed Vṛttra), goes on to say—he having become great said to the Gods *present to me the choice portion.*' (*Aitareya Brahmaṇa*, 3, 21).

In a case where the booty has been won by the King himself, or where it has not been won by any soldier individually, where no such distinction is possible as 'this village has been won by this man and that by that man', and where the enemy and his allies have been annihilated by all combined,—the division among his servants is to be made by the King, in accordance with the maxim of 'bestowing on worthy recipients.'—(97)

## VERSE (98)

THUS HAS BEEN DECLARED THE BLAMELESS ETERNAL LAW OF WARRIORS; THE KSATTRIYA, STRIKING HIS ENEMIES IN BATTLE, SHALL NOT DEVIATE FROM THIS LAW.—(98)

*Bhāṣya*

This sums up the section.

'*Warriors*'—soldiers; the '*law*' of these men;—'*blameless*'—never criticised or altered; hence '*eternal*';—the law made by man would be liable to be altered.

'*Shall not deviate*'—fall off;—he shall always follow. The '*Kṣattriya*' has been specially mentioned with a view to show that fighting is a duty that devolves primarily upon him ; and not to any one who may happen to take his place.—(98)

## SECTION (9)

## Art of Government

### VERSE (99)

**He shall strive to obtain what has not been obtained; what he has gained he shall preserve with care; he shall augment what has been preserved and what has been augmented he shall bestow upon suitable recipients—(99)**

### *Bhāṣya*

The Kṣattriya shall not rest contented, in the manner of the *Brāhmaṇa*; he should on the contrary, make attempts to acquire what he does not possess. What he has acquired he shall '*preserve*'; what has been preserved he shall 'augment'; i. e. lay by as treasure; then he should bestow gifts upon suitable recipients. He should not spend all that he gets; as it has been said that 'one's expenditure should be very much less than his income.'—(100)

### VERSES (100—101)

**He shall recognise the four kinds of the means for accomplishing the purposes of man; and he shall always diligently and properly carry them into execution; (100)**

**What has not been gained he shall seek to obtain by means of force; what has been gained he shall save with careful attention; what has been saved he shall augment by adding to it; and what has been augmented he shall bestow on suitable recipients.—(101)**

### *Bhāṣya*

The means of accomplishing the purposes of man are of four kinds. That is, the following four steps should be taken towards that end :—viz: acquiring, saving, augmenting and giving.

The term *'artha'*, 'purpose', stands for what is helpful; the meaning therefore is that what is mentioned here is the means for accomplishing what is helpful for man; these four shall be always put into practice : (100-101)

## VERSE (102)

**He shall have his force always operative; his manliness always displayed, his secrets constantly concealed, ever following up the weak points of his enemy.—(102)**

### *Bhāṣya*

He who has his force operative, is called *'Udyatadaṇḍaḥ'*; i. e. having his force in operation. For instance, the elephants and other constituents of the army he shall train by constant exercise; i. e. they shall all be disciplined by being regularly driven and trained; the exercise shall be regular; their clothing and accoutrements shall be kept in train. This is what is meant by the force being 'operative'; if this is done, it shows to the people in his kingdom that he is equipped with prowess and energy.

Similarly he shall have *'his manliness displayed'*; he should show, render manifest, his powers; *i. e.* at boundary-posts, and forests he should keep watch-men, imbued with courage, fully armed and armoured.

*'His secrets ever concealed'*;—he shall determine what should be concealed, and then keeping that to himself, he shall conceal it, with due care by guarding it against prying and thwarting by others.

He shall always follow up the weak points of his enemies; shall find out their intentions and try to thwart them.—(102)

## VERSE (103)

**Of him who has his force constantly operative, the whole world stands in awe. He shall, therefore, subdue all men by means of force—(103)**

*Bhāṣya.*

This verse describes the effect of what has been just laid down in the foregoing verse.

'*The whole world stands; in awe*'—is afraid; and his glory becomes proclaimed.

'*Therefore all men*'—his own subjects, as well as others—'*he shall subdue by means of force*'.

The enemies of the king who acts thus bow down to him without any effort on his part.—(103)

## VERSE (104)

HE SHALL ALWAYS BEHAVE WITHOUT GUILE, AND NEVER WITH GUILE; WELL PROTECTED HIMSELF, HE SHALL FATHOM THE GUILES EMPLOYED BY HIS ENEMIES.—(104)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Māyā*', '*guile*', is Treachery; with that he shall never behave; as by doing so, he would not be trustworthy. Nor shall he try to alienate the subjects of other kings, until their inclinations have been ascertained. But '*the guiles employed by his enemies he shall fathom*' and understand in their true character; and having found out the guiles, he should proceed to win over the enemy's men.

The *modus operandi* of this is fourfold—as through (*a*) the angry, (*b*) he covetous, (*c*). the frightened and (*d*) the ill-treated. (*a*) When a man has done some artistic work, or some one has done something beneficial to the king,—such persons are either (1) cheated, or (2) presented with reward, or (3) ill-treated, and at this other artists and helpers also become angry—at the thought that—'this king does not appreciate our art or help'. Such persons are fit for being approached for alienation. Similarly when a person, hitherto honoured and treated with affection, comes to fall off from honour and office, his friends

and relations banished, himself imprisoned along with his family, his entire property confiscated,—and another person with similar qualifications becomes honoured in his place,—then the former and others like him constitute the '*angry*'.

(*b*) When a wicked act has been done by some person, and he has been punished, other persons, who have committed the same offence are in constant dread of that same punishment; similarly persons in high office, who may have failed in their duty, and others in like position constitute the '*frightened*' set.

(*c*) The poverty-stricken, the miserly, the profligate, the man immersed in debt and so forth constitute the '*covetous*' set.

(*d*) When the self-respecting person, seeking honour at the hands of the King's enemy, is (on the contrary) struck by him, he, being of a fiery temper and brave, becomes highly incensed at such treatment;—such persons constitute the '*ill-treated*' set.

The King shall attempt the alienation of all such persons from the other King; and at the same time he shall take care regarding similar people on his own side.—(104)

## VERSE (105)

HIS ENEMY SHOULD NOT KNOW HIS WEAK POINTS, BUT HE MUST KNOW THE WEAK POINTS OF THE ENEMY; HE SHOULD HIDE THE DEPARTMENTS (OF GOVERNMENT) AS THE TORTOISE DOES ITS LIMBS; AND HE SHOULD GUARD HIS OWN WEAK POINTS.—(105)

### *Bhāṣya.*

The same idea is further reiterated.

The king shall so act that while he becomes apprised of the enemy's weak points, his own remain carefully guarded. When he finds out, through his trusted spies, that any of his own people belongs to one of the aforesaid four sets of the 'angered' and the rest, he should try to conciliate them.

His departments he shall hide, like the tortoise, and he shall also guard his weak points. The guarding of one's own weak

points against the enemy's approaches is highly important;—this is what is meant by the present verse.—(105)

## VERSE (106)

HE SHALL PONDER OVER HIS PLANS LIKE THE HERON, AND LIKE THE LION HE SHALL EXERT HIS POWER; HE SHALL SNATCH LIKE THE WOLF, AND LIKE THE HARE HE SHALL DOUBLE IN RETREAT.—(106)

### *Bhāṣya.*

When large bodies of fish are hidden within their fortress in the water, the heron, with a view to catch them, adopts the plan of appearing indifferent, as if rapt in contemplation, and thereby succeeds in getting at them; in the same manner, even things difficult of attainment are attained by much care and attention being devoted to them. With this idea in his mind, the King should not give up hopes regarding the things sought to be attained.

Then again, the hare, being small of body, is capable of doubling back in retreat even from among a host of pursuers; similarly even though alone and helpless, having all his feudatory chiefs risen against him and being incapable of making a stand against them, the King should allow his enemies to enter the fortress, and then double back in retreat, with a view to seeking refuge under a powerful ally.

Further, the wolf, with a view to seizing its prey, finding the keepers of the sheep careless, snatches it away; in the same manner the King shall not give up the idea of pouncing upon his enemy, under the impression that the latter is watchful of his own safety; because the time may come when he may be able, like the wolf, to get at him.

Lastly, the lion kills even such large-bodied animals as the elephant and the rest, by virtue of its valour and strength; similarly the King should not be frightened by the enemy simply because the latter has a large army; because even a weak person, if imbued

with courage, sometimes succeeds in killing a powerful person.—(106)

## VERSE (107)

WHILE HE IS THUS ENGAGED IN CONQUEST, IF THERE SHOULD BE ANY OPPONENTS FOR HIM, ALL THESE HE SHALL BRING UNDER SUBJUGATION BY MEANS OF CONCILIATION AND OTHER EXPEDIENTS.—(107)

*Bhāṣya.*

Those persons only who come forward to oppose him should be brought under subjugation, and not those who behave favourably towards him. But even the former shall first be tried to be won over by means of conciliation, and not all at once by force.—(107)

## VERSE (108)

IF HOWEVER THEY SHOULD NOT BE STOPPED BY MEANS OF THE FIRST THREE EXPEDIENTS, THEN HE SHALL GRADUALLY BRING THEM UNDER SUBJECTION BY FORCE.—(108)

*Bhāṣya.*

Those who are beyond the reach of conciliation and the other expedients should be brought under subjection by means of force; and this shall be done, not suddenly, but gradually; force being employed by degrees, and not all on a sudden.—(108)

## VERSE (109)

FOR THE PROSPERITY OF KINGDOMS THE WISE ONES ALWAYS RECOMMEND CONCILIATION AND FORCE FROM AMONG THE FOUR EXPEDIENTS, CONCILIATION AND THE REST.—(109)

*Bhāṣya.*

From among the four expedients, Conciliation and the rest, Conciliation and Force are described as superior. While there is

Conciliation, there is no disturbance; and when Force is employed, everything becomes accomplished.—(109)

## VERSE (110)

JUST AS THE WEEDER PLUCKS OUT THE WEED AND PRESERVES THE CORN, SO SHALL THE KING PRESERVE HIS KINGDOM AND DESTROY HIS OPPONENTS.—(110)

### *Bhāṣya.*

When certain persons plot against the King, the friends and relations of such persons, as also those that seek to enter into relationship with them, should not all be ruined,—if they are not in the secret of their machinations; those alone shall be proceeded against who are actually wicked, and not his relations; this is what is shown by means of the instance of the 'weeder.'

Though the corn and the weed grow together and are in close touch with one another, yet the weeder cleverly preserves the corn and plucks out the weeds; in the same manner from among the plotters and their friends, those alone should be punished who have actually committed the offence, and not those who are only related to them. Thus with due discrimination between the good and the wicked, the former shall be preserved and the latter punished.—(110)

## VERSE (111)

THE KING, WHO, THROUGH FOLLY, THOUGHTLESSLY OPPRESSES HIS KINGDOM, BECOMES, 'ALONG WITH HIS RELATIONS', DEPRIVED, WITHOUT DELAY, OF HIS KINGDOM AND LIFE.—(111)

### *Bhāṣya.*

If a King, not making the aforesaid discrimination, happens, '*through folly*', and '*thoughtlessly*', to '*oppress his kingdom*'—by employing force,—'*he becomes deprived of his kingdom*'—by the ill-feeling of his subjects,—'*and also of his life*'; *i.e.* he is slain

even by single men, who happen to be possessed of daring and unmindful of their own life.—(111)

## VERSE (112)

AS THE LIVES OF LIVING BEINGS PERISH BY THE EMASCIATION OF THEIR BODIES, SO DO THE LIVES OF KINGS PERISH BY OPPRESSING THEIR KINGDOM—(112)

*Bhāṣya.*

In his own kingdom the King should very carefully cultivate the good feelings of his people; since the kingdom occupies the position of body in relation to the King; when the body becomes emasciated by such causes as the eating of indigestible and unwholesome food and the like, the life goes out of it; similar results follow from the oppression of the Kingdom.

## SECTION (10)

## Internal Administration.

### VERSE (113)

IN THE ADMINISTRATION OF HIS KINGDOM HE SHALL ADOPT THE PROCEDURE DESCRIBED BELOW; FOR THE KING, WHOSE KINGDOM IS PROPERLY ADMINISTERED, PROSPERS EASILY.—(113)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Administration*'—method of governing.

'*He whose Kingdom is properly administered*'—*i. e.* rightly brought under sway and looked after,—"*prospers easily*";—(113

### VERSE (114)

IN THE MIDST OF TWO, THREE, FIVE OR HUNDRED VILLAGES HE SHALL APPOINT AN ADMINISTRATOR OF STATE SUPPLIED WITH A PICKET OF GUARDS.—(114)

*Bhāṣya.*

In the midst of two villages he shall establish a '*picket of guards*',—*i. e.* a police-outpost;—and he shall appoint an '*administrator*' supplied with such guards. The term '*saṅgraha*' stands for the administrating officer.

Similarly in the midst of three or five villages.

Or '*Saṅgraha*' may be taken as standing for the place for collecting of monies due to the king.—(114)

### VERSE (115)

HE SHALL APPOINT THE LORD OF ONE VILLAGE, AS ALSO THE LORD OF TEN VILLAGES, THE LORD OF TWENTY, THE LORD OF HUNDRED AND THE LORD OF THOUSAND VILLAGES.—(115)

*Bhāṣya.*

To each village he shall appoint one lord;—above him, the 'lord of ten villages'; and so on.—(115)

## VERSE (116-117)

TROUBLES ARISING IN THE VILLAGE, THE VILLAGE-LORD SHALL HIMSELF GENTLY REPORT TO THE LORD OF TEN VILLAGES; AND THE LORD OF TEN VILLAGES TO THE LORD OF TWENTY;—(116)—THE LORD OF TWENTY SHALL COMMUNICATE IT ALL TO THE LORD OF HUNDRED; AND THE LORD OF HUNDRED HIMSELF SHALL REPORT IT TO THE LORD OF THOUSAND.—(117)

*Bhāṣya.*

Those village-troubles that the Village-lord cannot settle himself,—he shall report to the Lord of Ten villages; and when this latter is unable to cope with them, they shall, in due course, be reported to the Lord of Thousand villages.—(116-117)

## VERSE (118)

THE VILLAGE-LORD SHALL GET DAILY THOSE THINGS THAT OUGHT TO BE FURNISHED TO THE KING BY THE VILLAGERS, IN THE SHAPE OF FOOD, DRINK, FUEL AND THE REST.—(118)

*Bhāṣya.*

This lays down the means of subsistence for the Village-lord.

'*Village-lord*'—the officer in charge of one village,—'*shall get*'—obtain—'those things' for his subsistence, which '*ought to be furnished to the King by the villagers.*'

'*Food etc*'— *i. e.* the sixth or eighth part of the corn produced;—as is going to be prescribed under 10. 120 *etc.*—(118)

## VERSE (119)

THE LORD OF TEN VILLAGES SHALL ENJOY ONE KULA AND THE LORD OF TWENTY VILLAGES TWENTY KULAS; THE LORD OF

HUNDRED VILLAGES ONE WHOLE VILLAGE AND THE LORD OF THOUSAND VILLAGES ONE TOWN.—(119)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Dashī*' is the person in charge of Ten villages; so '*Vimshī*' also. The forms of the words are Vedic.

'*Kula*'—part of a village; known in some places as '*haṭṭa*' and in others as '*uṣṭa*'.

Five times this land appertains to the Lord of Ten villages; and an entire village to the Lord of Hundred villages; and the '*Town*'—city, to the Lord of a Thousand villages. The system is that the living should be determined in accordance with the position and duties of the officers.—(119)

## VERSE (120)

THE AFFAIRS OF THESE OFFICERS PERTAINING TO THE VILLAGES, AS ALSO THEIR INDIVIDUAL AFFAIRS ANOTHER MINISTER OF THE KING SHALL INSPECT, WHO IS LOYAL AND NEVER IDLE.—(120)

*Bhāṣya.*

There may be differences of opinion among these officers regarding the affairs of the villages.

'*Another*'—some one other than those under whose sphere of duties those affairs fall;—'*minister*'—of superior status;—'*loyal*'—free from undue love and hate,—should be appointed for inspecting those affairs.—(120)

## VERSE (121)

IN EACH TOWN HE SHALL APPOINT ONE SUPERINTENDENT OF ALL WORKS, OF HIGH STATUS AND AWE-INSPIRING APPEARANCE;—HE BEING LIKE A PLANET AMONG STARS.—(121)

'*Of high status*'—*i. e.* at the head of others.

'*Of awe-inspiring appearance*'—of commanding presence.

*'Like a planet among stars'*—*i. e.* like the planet Mars.

He shall also be equipped with an army consisting of elephants, horses and the rest.—(121)

## VERSE (122)

**THIS OFFICER SHALL ALWAYS PERSONALLY SUPERVISE IN TURN ALL THOSE OFFICERS, AND THOROUGHLY ACQUAINT HIMSELF, THROUGH THE KING'S SPIES, WITH THEIR BEHAVIOUR IN THEIR RESPECTIVE JURISDICTIONS. —(122)**

### *Bhaṣya*

The officer delegated to the town shall 'supervise' those lords of villages, and in case of need, shall help them with his forces.

He shall also *'thoroughly acquaint himself with'*—find out all about—the behaviour of those officers;—through whom ?—*'through the King's spies'*, disguised as a pilgrim etc.—(122)

## VERSE (123)

**AS THE KING'S SERVANTS, APPOINTED TO PROTECT THE PEOPLE, GENERALLY BECOME KNAVES, BENT UPON SEIZING THE PROPERTY OF OTHERS,—HE SHALL PROTECT HIS PEOPLE AGAINST THEM—(123)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

*'Bent upon seizing the property of others'*—those who are in the habit of taking what belongs to others.

*'Knaves'*—addicted to wicked deeds.

Persons appointed are likely to become such; even though before appointment they may be quite honest and hence inclined to protect the wealth of other persons. Hence the King should not leave them alone, relying upon their former character ; he should be ever watchful of their conduct.

*'He shall protect the people against them'*—By ignoring them, it is not only the King's own interest that suffers ; the people also become reduced to poverty.—(123)

## VERSE (124)

THOSE EVIL-MINDED PERSONS WHO WOULD TAKE MONEY FROM MEN ENGAGED IN BUSINESS—OF THESE THE KING SHALL CONFISCATE THE WHOLE PROPERTY AND ORDAIN BANISHMENT.—(124)

### *Bhāṣya.*

Those officers appointed for protecting the people who—'*from men engaged in business*'—those who do business and are in trade—'*take money*'—*i.e.* impose fines on the people, in connection with ploughing &c.,—these men shall be banished and their property confiscated by the king.—(124)

## VERSE (125)

FOR WOMEN EMPLOYED IN THE KING'S SERVICE AND ALSO FOR MENIAL SERVANTS, HE SHALL FIX DAILY WAGES, IN PROPORTION TO THEIR POSITION AND WORK.—(125)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Employed*'—appointed;—'*women*'—slave-girls and others working in the inner apartments;—'*of menial servants*'—such as bearers of palanquins and the like;—'*he shall fix daily wages*',—and not fix an annual maintenance, in the form of villages, in whole or in part.

'*In proportion to their position and work*'. '*Position*' stands for the principal duty, responsibility,—such as keeping guard over the bed and so forth; and '*work*'—*i.e.* physical labour involved; the wages given should be in proportion to these. If the responsibility is great, even though the physical work involved be little, the wages should be high; and if the responsibility is not great, even though the physical labour involved be great, the wages shall be low. This is what is meant by the wages being '*in proportion to the position and work*'.—(125)

## VERSE (126)

**One paṇa shall be paid as the wages of the inferior, and six to the superior servant; as also clothing every sixth month and a Droṇa of grain every month.—(126)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

To the '*inferior servant*'—*i.e.* to one who is employed in such work as sweeping and cleaning; for his living one *paṇa* should be paid.

To the superior servant shall also be given '*clothing every sixth month*'; and also '*a Droṇa of grain*'; a '*droṇa*' is equal to four *Ādhakas*.

The exact measure of the '*paṇa*' the author is going to describe later on (8.136).

These verses are meant to prescribe the wages of the servants.—(126)

———:o:———

## SECTION (11)

## Customs-Duties.

### VERSE (127)

HE SHOULD MAKE THE TRADERS PAY DUTIES, AFTER DUE INVESTIGATION OF THE DETAILS OF BUYING AND SELLING, THE JOURNEY INVOLVED, FOODING ALONG WITH ITS ACCESSORIES, AND THE MEASURES OF SAFETY.—(127)

*Bhāṣya.*

Now follows the system of realising duties.

At what price the merchandise has been bought—what price it will fetch when sold—what time it will take in selling—what deterioration, if any, it is likely to suffer—the consideration of all this constitutes the '*investigation of the details of buying and selling*'.

'*Journey*'—whether it takes much or little time to obtain it.

'*Fooding*'—Flour, Rice &c.

'*Accessories*'—*e.g.* butter, pulse, vegetables; as also fuel and such things.

'*Measures of safety*'—*i e.* when passing through forests whether or not things were secure against molestation by kings and robbers.

Having duly investigated all these,. the King shall realise duties from the traders.

The right reading is '*vaṇigbhir dāpayēt karān*'; because according to the *sūtra* '*gatibuddhi &c.*' (Panini), there is nothing to justify the Accusative case in '*vaṇijaḥ*,' Or, the root in '*dāpayēt*' may mean 'fine', and hence like the root '*daṇḍi*', it may take two objects (which would justify the said Accusative ending).—(127)

## VERSE (128)

**As the water-insect, the calf and the bee eat their food little by little, so little by little should the King draw from his kingdom the annual taxes.—(128)**

*Bhāṣya.*

This text is meant to assert that only a small tax shall be levied upon the person whose agricultural holding is not prosperous.

'*Water-insect*'—leech.

'*Ṣatpada*'—The black bee.

Just as these derive full nourishment by taking in only a little food, similarly the King should not uproot his people (by overtaxing them).—(128)

This same idea is further reiterated in the next verse.

## VERSE (129)

**After due investigation the King shall always levy taxes in his kingdom in such a way that he himself and the man who carries on the business shall both receive their reward.—(129)**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*The person engaged in business*'—the trader—'*and the king*'—may receive their reward;—in such way should the taxes be levied; and there is no ground for fixing the amount of the tax; in fact where the profit made has been large, the King should charge heavier taxes—even exceeding the proportion fixed.—(129)

## VERSE (130)

**In the case of cattle and gold the fiftieth part shall be taken by the King; and in the case of grains, the eighth, sixth or twelfth part.—(130)**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*In the case of cattle and gold*'—which are of high value—'*the fiftieth part shall be taken by the King*'.

'*In the case of grains*'—the exact share to be taken is to be determined in accordance with the greater or less labour involved in the producing of each kind.

'*Pañchāshah*'—the fiftieth; the affix being '*tamaṭ*'. If the reading be '*pañchāshadbhāgah*,' it would be similar to such expressions as '*dvibhāga*' ('two-parts') and the like; and in that case it would stand for a totally different number (meaning 'fifty parts').—(130)

## VERSE (131—132).

HE SHALL TAKE THE SIXTH PART IN THE CASE OF TREES, MEAT, HONEY AND CLARIFIED BUTTER, OF PERFUMES, MEDICINAL HERBS AND POISONS, OF FLOWERS, ROOTS AND FRUITS;—(131) OF LEAVES, VEGETABLES AND GRASSES, OF SKINS AND CANE, OF EARTHENWARE VESSELS, AND OF ALL THINGS MADE OF STONE.—(132)

*Bhāṣya.*

The term '*dru*' stands for trees. The rest is all clear.

Out of the profit on all these articles, the sixth part shall be taken by the King.—(131—132)

## VERSE (133)

EVEN THOUGH DYING, THE KING SHALL NOT LEVY A TAX ON THE SHROTRIYA; AND NO SHROTRIYA LIVING IN HIS KINGDOM SHALL SUFFER FROM HUNGER.—(133)

*Bhāṣya.*

The King shall so manage that no *Shrotriya* in his kingdom shall suffer from hunger.—(133)

## VERSE (134)

The kingdom of that King in whose realm the Shrotriya suffers from hunger, shall, ere long, pine with hunger.—(134)

### *Bhāṣya.*

This is the result of disobeying the injunction just mentioned above.—(134)

## VERSE (135)

Having ascertained his learning and character, he shall provide for him a fair living; and he shall protect him against all things, even as the father protects his lawful son.—(135)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Fair living*'—so that his household duties do not suffer.

Having provided a living '*he shall protect him against all things*'—from thieves and others, as also against his own extravagance.—(135)

## VERSE (136)

Protected by the King he performs meritorious acts day after day; and by that the King's life, wealth and Kingdom become augmented.—(136)

### *Bhāṣya.*

The augmentation of 'life, wealth and kingdom' is the reward of harbouring the meritorious *shrotriya*.— (136)

## VERSE (137)

The King shall make the other people living by business pay during the year something under the name of "tax".—(137)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Living by business*'—such as agriculture, money-lending, buying and selling and so forth.

'*Other people*'—than the Brāhmaṇa-Shrotriya.

'*Make them pay tax*'.—'*under the name of tax*'—i.e. which bears the name of 'tax'.—(137)

## VERSE (138)

**Mechanics and Artisans, as also Shudras who subsist by bodily labour,—the King shall make each of these work for one day every month.—(138)**

*Bhāṣya.*

Those who live by any kind of art he shall make work for him one day each month;—as also those who '*subsist by bodily labour*'—i. e. those shudras who carry loads &c.—(138)

## VERSE (139)

**He shall not cut off his own root, nor that of others, through excessive greed; by cutting off his own root he causes suffering to himself as well as to others.—(139)**

*Bhāṣya.*

The 'cutting off of his own root' consists in not realising taxes and duties; and excessive taxation constitutes the 'cutting off of the root of others'; and as a matter of course, the latter is due to excessive greed; and this is what is reiterated in the text.

The 'cutting off of his own root' causes suffering to the King himself, by the depletion of his treasury. From the same cause others also come to suffer. For if a war were to break out, and the King's finances happened to be low, his defeat and destruction would be certain; and this would constitute a great suffering for the people.

On the other hand, if the King were to realise taxes at all times of the year, this also makes the people wretched.—(139)

## VERSE (140)

THE KING SHALL BE SEVERE AND MILD, AFTER HAVING DULY EXAMINED THE WORK (OF EACH MAN); IT IS ONLY THE SEVERE-MILD KING WHO IS HIGHLY RESPECTED.—(140)

### *Bhāṣya.*

Severity and mildness shall be always practised. Such a King becomes '*highly respected*'—honoured—of his people.—(140)

## VERSE (141)

WHEN TIRED WITH LOOKING AFTER THE AFFAIRS OF MEN, HE SHALL PLACE IN THAT PLACE HIS CHIEF MINISTER, WHO IS CONVERSANT WITH THE LAW, WISE, SELF-CONTROLLED, AND BORN OF A NOBLE FAMILY.—(141)

### *Bhāṣya.*

When he is tired with looking after the affairs of his subjects, he shall depute to that work of 'looking after affairs' a minister who is endowed with the knowledge of law and other qualifications, and is fit for bearing all responsibilities.—(141)

## VERSE (142)

HAVING THUS ARRANGED ALL HIS BUSINESS, HE SHALL PROTECT HIS PEOPLE, EVER INTENT AND WATCHFUL.—(142)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Thus*'—refers to the *appointing of assistants* and all the rest that has been described above.

'*Arranged*'—accomplished.

'*Business*'—all that is useful is called 'business'.

*'Intent'*—engrossed; hence *'watchful'* or *'watchfulness'* may stand for infallibility of intellect. In this way shall he protect his people.—(142)

## VERSE (143)

**He, from whose territories people are carrled off, screaming, by robbers, while he himself, along with his servants is looking on, is dead, not alive.—(143)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

This text describes the evil arising from neglecting the watchfulness laid down in the preceding verse.

If the king is not awake to the necessity of establishing out-posts, then his subjects are carried off by robbers, who are ever on the look out for such loopholes; and what can the King do for the subjects? Such a King would be as good as dead. His very living is death itself. For this reason the King should be ever watchful.

*'Screaming'*—crying—*'are cairred away'*;—*'while, along with his servants the King is looking on.'* The evil is bound, under the circeemstances, to be simply looked upon helplessly; the King's servants can only look on, they cannot chase the robbers and free the people from their clutches; all these are as good as dead.

## VERSE (144)

**The protection of the people is the Kṣatriya's highest duty; the King, who enjoys the fruits mentioned, becomes endowed with merit.—(144)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The King who enjoys the fruit as it comes to him, *'becomes endowed with merit'*. Otherwise, if he did the protection of only those who helped him, he would incur sin.—(144)

———:o:———

## SECTION (12)

## Daily Routine of Work

### VERSE (145)

HAVING RISEN DURING THE LAST WATCH OF THE NIGHT AND PERFORMED HIS ABLUTIONS, WITH COLLECTED MIND, HAVING POURED LIBATIONS INTO THE FIRE, AND HONOURED THE BRĀHMAṆAS, HE SHALL ENTER THE AUSPICIOUS HALL OF AUDIENCE.—(145)

*Bhāṣya.*

The '*last watch*' stands for the '*Brāhma-muhūrta*', the 'time sacred to Brahman'; that it is so is indicated by the terms '*having performed his ablutions*', and '*with collected mind*'.

'*Having poured the libations into Fire*';—the performance of this act of Homa-offering is not to be done during the '*Brāhma-muhūrta*'; since at that time *four muhūrtas* (3 hours, 12 minutes) of the night would be still left, while the Homa-offering has been laid down as to be done when the night has dawned. So what all this means is simply—'having accomplished all that is to be done at dawn'.

'*Having honoured*' worshipped—'*the Brāhmaṇas*'—'*he shall enter the auspicious Hall of Audience*'—equipped with auspicious marks.—(145)

### VERSE (146)

STAYING THERE, HE SHALL WELCOME ALL HIS SUBJECTS AND THEN SEND THEM AWAY. HAVING SENT OFF ALL THE PEOPLE, HE SHALL TAKE COUNSEL WITH HIS MINISTER.—(146)

*Bhāṣya.*

'There'—in that hall—'*staying*',—'*he shall welcome*'—gratify with proper forms of address, looks, marks of respect and salutation—'*the subjects*'—who happen to come to see him,—'*and then send them away*',—permit them to go as they had come.

Then, after the people have been sent off, '*he shall take counsel with his ministers*',—discussing what should be done in connection with matters relating to his own kingdom and that of other Kings. The five requisites of 'Counsel' are now described.

Those requisites of 'counsel' are as follows:—The means of undertaking a project, (2) the supply of men and material, (3) due apportionment of place and time, (4) remedy for miscarriage, and (5) success of the project.

What the verse means is that the King shall not trespass upon the time for listening to the prayers of the people. It is possible that the sitting of the council may be prolonged; and of this he shall not speak to the men; he shall keep his counsel secret.—(146)

## VERSE (147)

HAVING ASCENDED THE TOP OF A HILL, OR A HOUSE, AND RETIRING INTO SOLITUDE,—OR IN A DESOLATE FOREST HE SHALL HOLD COUNSEL, UNOBSERVED.—(147)

### *Bhāṣya*

This lays down the *place* where the council is to be held.

'*Retiring into solitude*'—seated in a place where there are no men.

'*Unobserved*';—he shall arrange it so that men may not be able to infer that such and such a thing is going on there.

'*Desolate*', '*nishshalākam*',—'*shalākā*' is *tall grass* hence the epithet means a place where even grass does not grow, and hence there is no possibility of any person going there.—(147)

## VERSE (148)

THAT KING, WHOSE SECRET PLANS OTHER PEOPLE, COMING TOGETHER, DONOT KNOW, ENJOYS THE WHOLE EARTH, EVEN THOUGH HE BE POOR IN TREASURE.—(148)

*Bhaṣya*

This verse is meant to lay down that secret plans shall not be disclosed.

'*Other men*'—those who are not councillors, outside the pale of those who are in the King's secret.—(148)

VERSE (149)

**AT THE TIME OF TAKING COUNSEL, HE SHALL SEND AWAY THE IDIOT, THE DUMB AND THE DEAF, ANIMALS, VERY AGED PERSONS, WOMEN, FOREIGNERS, THE SICK AND THE MAIMED.—(149)**

*Bhāṣya.*

When he is holding counsel, the King shall remove every kind of living being from the place; he shall send them all away from there, for fear of his secrets leaking out.

Among *animals* also, parrots and such others often disclose secrets; cows and horses also, under the influence of some magical art, have been heard to have their shape transformed and thereby made carriers of good and bad news; and we hear of such Kingly arts as those of making animals to disappear and so forth.

The 'idiot' and the rest being already included under the 'maimed', the separate mention of all these is analogous to the expression '*go-balīvarda*' (where even though the *balīvarda*, ox, is included under the '*go*', yet it is mentioned separately ; and the 'maimed' have been mentioned separately with a view to preclude the notion being entertained that 'the maimed person, being without hands and feet, cannot go out, he must stay locked up on, so that how could he divulge our secret?'

Or, the verse may mean that the persons specified shall not be made councillors, on account of the possibility of their intellect being defective,—and hence they should not be confided in either; so that it becomes necessary that they shall be sent away.—(149)

VERSE (150)

**PERSONS WHO HAVE BEEN DISGRACED, ANIMALS, AND PARTICULARLY WOMEN BETRAY SECRET PLANS; HENCE HE SHALL BE CAREFUL WITH REGARD TO THEM.—(150)**

*Bāṣhya.*

'*Disgraced*,—fallen from honour. Such despicable persons, as also other paltry men, even when not disgraced, might hear something, and might be able to utter a few syllables; and this would lead to the disclosure of the secret; as, from the slightest hints, clever men are capable of drawing important inferences.—(150)

## VERSE (151)

**AT MID-DAY OR AT MID-NIGHT, FREE FROM FATIGUE AND DULNESS, HE SHALL DELIBERATE ON MATTERS RELATING TO MORALITY, PLEASURE AND WEALTH, EITHER WITH THEM, OR ALONE BY HIMSELF;—(151)**

*Bhāṣya.*

He shall ponder over conflicts among the demands of morality, pleasure and wealth. If any one of them were to supervene, success would follow if all the others also were to rise in proportion.—(151)

## VERSE (152)

**—ALSO ON THE ATTAINMENT OF THESE, MUTUALLY IRRECONCILABLE AS THEY ARE, ON THE GIVING AWAY OF DAUGHTERS AND ON THE GUARDIANSHIP OF SONS;—(152)**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*The attainment*',—bringing together—'*of these, mutually irreconcilable*'—*i.e. of morality, pleasure and wealth*,—or of the *ministers*;—'*the giving away of daughters*';—all this should be deliberated upon, in connection with the success of his business; also the *guardianship of his sons*', the princes.

The princes should be made to accept morality and wealth, by the king saying such words as 'I am your own'. When they come by money for the first time, they spend it just as they happen to be advised, and they generally waste it; and evil-minded men take from them whatever they ask for;—if they happen to associate with wicked men, they imbibe

their character; and being thus poisoned with evil tendencies, they cannot be kept away from vices; for, as has been said—'it is impossible for the colour of saffron to be put upon a cloth already tinged with blue'. For this reason the princes have to be constantly instructed. Among them again, those that are possessed of better qualities, should receive advancement; the others receiving comparatively little for their share. The eldest of them, who is highly qualified and free from jealousies, should be installed as heir-apparent. In this manner the king shall always take care to guard the princes.—(152)

## VERSE (153)

—ON THE SENDING OF AMBASSADORS, THE REMAINING DETAILS OF UNDERTAKINGS, ON THE AFFAIRS OF THE HAREM, AND ON THE WORK OF SPIES;—(153)

*Bhāṣya.*

He shall deliberate upon the sending of ambassadors to the king with whom he intends to enter into alliance, or on whom he is going to declare war.

He shall also deliberate upon the '*remaining details*' of such undertakings as have been already taken in hand,—with a view to complete them.

Protected by a trusted body-guard, he shall enter the harem situated in another apartment of his palace; and there he shall visit the senior and absolutely pure and trusted queen, and not one who is not pure and free from suspicions. For one Bhadrasena, the king's brother, hidden in one of the rooms and under the bed of his mother, once killed the king;—a queen struck the king of Avanti on his abdomen with her anklet besmeared with poison, through her association with another man; another queen struck the King Viduratha of Sauvīra with a weapon hidden in her hair. So all these secret places the king shall examine with care; and he shall prohibit the association of the maids of his harem with strangers with shaved head or with matted locks, or with maid-servants from outside.

He shall deliberate also upon the work—the transactions of his spies, who may have gone to work as beggars with bowls and under other disguises.—(153)

## VERSE (154)

—ALSO UPOṆ THE ENTIRE 'EIGHT-FOLD BUSINESS,' AND ON THE 'FIVE-FOLD GROUP' IN ITS REAL CHARACTER, ON AFFECTION AND DISAFFECTION, AND ON THE CONDUCT OF HIS 'CIRCLE':—(154)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Eight-fold business*'.—Either (A)—(1) undertaking of what has not been done, (2) the doing of what has not been done, (3) the refining of what has been done, (4) the acquiring of the fruits of the act, (5) conciliating, (6) alienating, (7) giving and (8) employing force;—or (B)—(1) Trade, (2) building of embankments and bridges, (3) fortification, (4) repairing of fortifications, (5) elephant-catching, (6) mine-digging, (7) colonising uninhabited places and (8) clearing of forests. Others quote the following two verses of Shukra, in explanation of what constitutes the 'eight-fold business'—"(1) Acquiring and (2) spending, (3) dismissing, and (4) forbidding, (5) propounding of the right course of conduct, (6) investigating cases, (7) inflicting punishments, and (8) imposing purificatory penances;—the king, ever intent upon these, is said to carry on his 'eight-fold business'; he who duly performs this eight-fold business is honoured by his enemies and goes to heaven. In this quotation—(1) 'acquiring' means the receiving of revenues; (2) 'expenditure' stands for gifts to servants; (3) 'dismissing' for getting rid of wicked servants; (4) 'forbidding' for the checking of the improper activities of his officers; (5) 'propounding of the right course of conduct' for the checking of improper conduct; (6) 'investigation of cases' for the settling of doubts arising in regard to the duties of the several castes and orders; (7) 'inflicting of punishment,' for what is done in the case of disputes among his subjects; and (8) 'purificatory penances' for those that have to be done in connection with

mistakes due to want of care. All this constitutes the 'eight-fold business'.

'*Five-fold group*'.—This stands for the five kinds of spies, disguised as—(1) a scholar, (2) a fallen ascetic, (3) a householder in distress, (4) a merchant in trouble, and (5) a hermit.

The term 'scholar' here stands for forward students advertising themselves as knowing the highest law; the spy who goes about thus disguised should be honoured by the minister with presents and marks of honour, and addressed thus—'Putting your trust upon the king and on myself, you should report whatever wrong you happen to discover.'

(2) The '*fallen ascetic*' is one who has fallen off from the state of the true Renunciate; he is one who is endowed with intelligence and purity; and he should take up service as a body-servant in a place where there is plenty of gold and where there is every possibility of vast gifts of food-grains being made; he shall also carry the fruits of agriculture to all wandering mendicants, enough to supply them with food, clothing and home; among these those that might be seeking a livelihood, these he should alienate; and in this manner the work of his employer, the king, should be done. Such a spy shall present himself at the time of the distribution of fooding and wages; and all wandering mendicants would, in this fashion, become alienated from their duties.

(3) '*The householder in distress*',—is the agriculturist reduced to poverty, who is clever and pure. He should do the work of cultivation on a piece of land, such as described above.

(4) The '*merchant in trouble*' is the trader, clever and pure, but reduced to proverty; he should do the work of trading, in a place, such as described above.

(5) The disguised '*ascetic*' is one who is either completely shaven or wears matted locks, and goes about seeking a living. He should take up lodgings close by the city, accompanied by a large number of clean-shaven disciples,

openly living upon a handful of herbs or barley-corn, taken at the interval of thirty days, but secretly eating to his heart's content; his disciples, also disguised as ascetics, shall proclaim to the people that he is possessed of great occult powers, and thereby obtain presents of money; and under his influence the king's confidential ministers would disclose to him projected burnings, danger from thieves, the projected killing of wicked persons or news from foreign countries,—saying 'this will happen either to-day or tomorrow', 'the king is going to do this and that', and so forth.

Under the other king there would be certain persons studying the science of genealogy, the *Saṅgavidyā* (?), the science of putting to sleep (*Jambhakavidya* ?), the processes of magic, the duties of the several orders, the science of omens; and all such persons the king shall get over to his own kingdom through the above-mentioned five kinds of spies. Among the ministers, priests, army-commanders, princes, wardens, inner guards and others belonging to the other king,—he shall, under the disguise of ordinary citizens, introduce his own trusted ministers, who are experts in tricks, disguises, arts and languages; similarly he shall also depute the humpbacked, the dwarf, the forester, the dumb, the idiot, the deaf, the blind, the actor, the dancer, the singer and others, as also women capable of entering the harem; along the forests foresters should be appointed, and in villages villagers, all ostensibly engaged in their own business and wholly immersed in these; and all these shall be in constant communication with persons of their own kind. Similarly with persons capable of moving in water, who should go about secretly, and hold secret commissions.

Having appointed this 'five-fold group', he shall, through these, learn all about 'affection and disaffection' among the people of the other king, as also among his own priests and ministers.

He shall also ponder over the 'conduct of his circle',—i. e. the tendency to peace and war of his provincial governors.—(154)

## VERSE (155)

**—ON THE CONDUCT OF THE 'INTERMEDIARY' ON THE DOINGS OF THE KING BENT UPON CONQUEST, ON THE ACTION OF THE NEUTRAL KING, AS ALSO THAT OF HIS ENEMY, WITH SPECIAL CARE.—(155)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

Of the said 'circle' the following are the four principal components—(1) the King bent upon conquest, (2) the Enemy, (3) the Intermediary and (4) the Neutral. Of these the King, who has people on his side and who has made up his mind to conquer a certain part of the world, is called 'bent upon conquest,' by reason of his being endowed with courage and strength.—The 'Enemy' is of three kinds—(*a*) born, (b) natural and (*c*) acquired.—The 'Intermediary' is the king whose territory is co-terminous with that of the king in question.—The 'Neutral' is one who is capable of defeating each of the two—'one who is bent upon conquest' and his 'enemy'—singly, but not conjointly; and also each of the three—'he who is bent upon conquest,' the 'enemy' and the 'intermediary'— singly, but not conjointly.—(155)

## VERSE (156)

**THESE FOUR COMPONENTS ARE, IN BRIEF, THE ROOT OF THE CIRCLE; EIGHT OTHERS ALSO HAVE BEEN DESCRIBED; THESE BEING THE TWELVE THAT HAVE BEEN SPOKEN OF.—(156)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*That have been spoken of*';—these have been described as the 'root' or basic components of the circle; and there are '*eight others*' also,—*i. e.* each of these four have two belonging to each, in the shape of the 'ally' and the 'enemy'. The four original components, together with these eight, constitute the 'twelve'.—(156)

## VERSE (157)

**THERE ARE FIVE OTHERS, (1) THE MINISTER, (2) THE KINGDOM, (3) THE FORTRESS, (4) THE TREASURY AND (5) THE ARMY—DESCRIBED**

IN CONNETION WITH EACH (OF THE ABOVE TWELVE); THESE THEN, BRIEFTY, BEING SEVENTY-TWO.—(157)

*Bhāṣya.*

The 'minister' and the rest are five other components of the circle, pertaining to each of the twelve aforesaid components. The total thus comes to be *six* times *twelve*, i.e. *seventy-two.*—(157)

### VERSE (158)

HE SHALL REGARD, AS 'ENEMY', HIS IMMEDIATE NEIGHBOUR, AS ALSO THE PERSON WHO HELPS HIS ENEMY; THE IMMEDIATE NEIGHBOUR OF HIS ENEMY HE SHALL REGARD AS HIS 'FRIEND'; AND AS 'NEUTRAL' THE KING WHO IS BEYOND THOSE TWO.—(158)

*Bhāṣya.*

One who is the immediate neighbour of the king bent on conquest shall be regarded as his enemy; as also the enemy's ally. Similarly he shall regard as his friend the immediate neighbour of his enemy. The King who is beyond these two is '*neutral.*'

These same characteristics of the 'friend' and the 'enemy' are to be found in the 'born' and 'acquired' ones also.—(158)

### VERSE (159)

ALL THESE HE SHALL WIN OVER BY MEANS OF CONCILIATION AND THE OTHER EXPEDIENTS, SEVERALLY AS WELL AS COLLECTIVELY, AS ALSO BY PROWESS AND POLICY.—(159)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Win over*'—bring under his sway.

'*Prowess and policy*' are the same as conciliation and war; and it has been declared that 'they recommend conciliation and war'.—(159)

### VERSE (160)

ALLIANCE, WAR, MARCH, HALT, BIFURCATION AND SEEKING SHELTER —THESE SIX MEASURES OF POLICY HE SHALL CONSTANTLY PONDER OVER.—(160)

*Bhāṣya.*

Presents of gold and other things with a view to secure the good will of both parties constitute '*alliance*'; and the opposite of this is '*War*';—going forward with a single purpose is '*March*';—ignoring of the enemy leads to '*Halt*';—putting forward terms of peace as well as of war constitutes '*Bifurcation*';—and the surrendering of oneself to another is '*Seeking Shelter*'. These are the six 'measures of policy'; and from among these he shall have recourse to that one by means of which, he feels, he would be enabled to erect fortifications, capture elephants, dig mines, carry on trade, cut down forests, raise embankments round fields in tracts not irrigated by rain, to win the wealth of other people, and so forth.—(160)

## VERSE (161)

He shall have recourse to Halting, to Marching, to Alliance, to War, to Bifurcation or to Seeking shelter, after having fully considered his business.—(161)

*Bhāṣya.*

Having entered into alliance with one party, he shall declare war upon another, even under false pretences. Similarly he shall resort to Halting after having entered into alliance and declared war. All this he shall do after having fully considered his business. There can be no fixed time for all this; he shall resort to a certain measure at the time at which he may think it to be most opportune.

*Objection*—"If any rules regarding time cannot be indicated, why should there be any teaching regarding the subject at all?"

*Answer*—Who says that the time *cannot* be indicated? What is meant is that any minute details regarding the time are hard to indicate; a general indication is easy enough; and even a general indication comes useful to those who are not learned.—(161)

## VERSE (162-163)

BUT THE KING SHALL KNOW THAT ALLIANCE AND WAR ARE OF TWO KINDS; SO ALSO BOTH MARCHING AND HALTING; AND SEEKING SHELTER ALSO HAS BEEN DECLARED TO BE OF TWO KINDS.—(162)

ALLIANCE, ENDOWED WITH FUTURE POSSIBILITIES, IS OF TWO KINDS —(1) THAT IN WHICH THE ACT OF MARCHING IS UNDERTAKEN IN COMMON AND (2) THAT IN WHICH IT IS OTHERWISE.—(163)

### *Bhāṣya.*

(1) '*That in which the act of marching is undertaken in common*',—in which the agreement entered into is in the following form:—'Let us march at the goal conjointly, having equal shares in it, and I shall not be passed over by you; whatever we gain shall belong to both of us';—(2) Or that 'You march one way, I go the other'; where the action is not joint, it is '*otherwise*'—(162-163)

## VERSE (164)

WAR HAS BEEN DECLARED TO BE OF TWO KINDS:—(1) THAT WHICH IS WAGED, IN SEASON OR OUT OF SEASON, BY ONESELF, FOR HIS OWN PURPOSE, AND (2) THAT WHICH IS WAGED ON SOME WRONG DONE TO AN ALLY.—(164)

### *Bhāṣya.*

The 'season' for the king himself declaring war is that time when he is full of confidence in his own strength and is imbued with courage for reducing his enemy, when his subjects are united and prosperous, fully endowed with the rewards of agriculture and other kinds of business, and ready to deprive the enemy of all this business,—and when the enemy's subjects are in reduced circumstances and covetous, and as such easily capable of being alienated from him and won over to the other side,—this is the 'season' for war to be

waged by the king himself. And it is 'out of season' when conditions are the reverse of this.

Further, war is also waged, by reason of some wrong inflicted on one's ally. If the enemy has done some injury to his ally, then, taking this into consideration, the king shall wage war, even though it be out of season. Though he himself may be an ally of the injured king only in the sense that he is the neighbour of the king who has inflicted the wrong (and from whom he himself might expect an attack), yet, with the help of the ally (whose injury he is going to avenge) he would be able to check that enemy. It is true that the enemy's neighbour is his ally; but the enemy's enemy has his realm further removed.

Another reading is '*mitrēṇa chaivāpakṛtē*'; which means that if the king happens to be attacked by his ally, he may wage this war even out of season.

The two kinds of war thus are—(1) that waged for one's own sake, and (2) that waged for the sake of the ally; or one kind of war is that which is prompted by one's own prosperity, and another kind is that which is waged when one has been wronged by his ally and is on that account, in trouble.—(164)

## VERSE (165)

MARCHING IS SAID TO BE OF TWO KINDS—(1) THAT UNDERTAKEN BY THE KING BY HIMSELF ALONE, ON THE SUDDEN APPROACH OF AN EMERGENT OCCASION, AND (2) THAT UNDERTAKEN BY HIM ACCOMPANIED BY HIS ALLY.—(165)

### *Bhāṣya.*

The two-foldness of Marching is based upon its being undertaken by the king alone by himself or accompanied by his ally. The king can march alone by himself only when he has the requisite strength; otherwise he can march only when accompained by his ally.

'*Emergent occasion*';—e. g. when some trouble befalls the enemy, he becomes the fittest object of attack at that same moment; otherwise, if time is allowed to lapse, he would recover his strength and thus become difficult to destroy.—(165)

## VERSE (166)

HALTING HAS BEEN DECLARED TO BE OF TWO KINDS:—(1) THAT WHICH IS NECESSARY FOR ONE WHO HAS BECOME GRADUALLY WEAKENED, EITHER BY CHANCE OR THROUGH PREVIOUS ACTS, AND (2) THAT WHICH IS NECESSITATED BY CONSIDERATIONS FOR HIS ALLY.—(166)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'Halting' means the *withdrawing of oneself*. This also is of two kinds—(1) When the king is "*weakened*'—in force and in money,— even though he be prosperous, he has to ignore his enemy; and another kind of Halting is that which is done in consideration of the ally. If the relations of his ally, who is weak, with the enemy is not such as to make it safe for his ally to rise against that enemy,—then, in consideration of the delicate position of his ally, the king should '*halt*'.

The said '*weakness*' arises from two causes:—it may be due to '*chance*' or to '*former acts*'. This only describes the actual state of things. The strength and weakness of all kings are due to these two causes. '*Chance*' here stands for the man's want of care, e.g. extravagance, inalertness regarding the army and so forth; and '*former acts*' means the demerit caused by evil deeds in the past. Or the explanation of the two terms may be reversed ('former acts' standing for *carelessness*, and 'chance' for *past misdeeds*).

'*Mohāt*' ('through folly') is another reading (for '*daivāt*', '*by chance*'); but what is meant is expressed by the term '*daiva*',—(166)

## VERSE (167)

WHEN, FOR THE ACCOMPLISHMENT OF SOME PURPOSE, THE MASTER TAKES UP ONE POSITION AND THE FORCE ANOTHER,—THIS IS WHAT IS DESCRIBED AS 'BIFURCATION' BY THOSE CONVERSANT WITH THE DETAILS OF THE SIX MEASURES OF POLICY.—(167)

### *Bhāṣya*

When different positions are taken up by the Master and his Army,—the Master, with a small force, remains in the fort, while the Commander, with a larger force proceeds elsewhere. Or, some sort of 'bifurcation' is resorted to by way of favouring the different divisions, in the way of allowing all the divisions opportunities for securing booties of gold and other things.

*Objection.*—"The measure here described is *Bifurcation*; and of this there can be only one form—different positions being taken up by the Master and his Forces. There is no reason why any other kind of division should be mentioned; the only bifurcation that need be mentioned is that consisting in different positions being taken up by the Master and his Forces."

The answer to this is that it is by implication that we get at the other two kinds of 'bifurcation'—(1) one being that which is done for one's own sake and (2) that done for the sake of others.—(167)

## VERSE (168)

'SEEKING SHELTER', WITH NOBLE PEOPLE, HAS BEEN DECLARED TO BE OF TWO KINDS:—(1) THAT WHICH IS DONE FOR THE SAKE OF ACCOMPLISHING A USEFUL PURPOSE, WHEN HARASSED BY ENEMIES, AND (2) THAT IN THE FORM OF A STATUS.—(168)

### *Bhāṣya.*

When a king is harassed by his enemies, he seeks shelter, for the purpose of accomplishing some useful purpose.

The 'purpose' to be served is the ceasing of the harassment; and for the attaining of this purpose one should seek shelter with a powerful supporter; e. g. giving up his own territory he should go over to the realms of that supporter.

'*Status*'.—Even though not actually harassed, he shall seek shelter with another king for the purpose of acquiring a status; that would save him from future harassment. The advantage that is secured is that he acquires a status in the eyes of men who realise that 'he has got such and such a king for his protector, and hence cannot be harassed by others'. The 'seeking shelter' for the purpose of acquiring status has been called 'status', by regarding the two as co-ordinate.

'*Vyapadēshārtham*' is another reading, ('for the purpose of acquiring status').

In answer to the question—With whom should he seek shelter?—the text has added—'*with noble people*'. Shelter should be sought with one of those kings that are noble, at whose hands no ill-treatment could be feared. The term '*noble*' connotes such qualities as *capacity to protect others from harassment*, and so forth.—(168)

## VERSE (169)

WHEN HE KNOWS THAT HIS SUPERIORITY IS CERTAIN IN THE FUTURE, AND AT THE TIME THERE IS BUT LITTLE HARM DONE —THEN HE SHOULD RESORT TO PEACE.—(169)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'Future' is time to come.

When he knows that 'this king is equal to me in strength —or I may be weaker now, but in time, by creating disunion among his people, or by entering into powerful alliances, I shall be able to defeat him',—then he should make peace.

'*Superiority*' means *possession of superior force.*

'*Certain*'—sure.

'*At the time*'—this phrase denotes the *present time.*—(169)

## VERSE (170)

**BUT WHEN HE THINKS ALL HIS PEOPLE TO BE HIGHLY CONTENTED, AND HIMSELF TO BE EXCEEDINGLY PROSPEROUS,—THEN HE SHALL MAKE WAR.—(170)**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Contented*'—full of ambition and affection for the king, highly satisfied with gifts and honours;—when he finds his own '*people*'—ministers and others—to be so;—and '*himself to be exceedingly prosperous*'—rich in treasure, in elephants and horses, and other things;—then, at such a time, he shall break the treaty under some pretext and have recourse to war.—(170)

## VERSE (171)

**WHEN HE THINKS THAT HIS OWN ARMY IS HAPPY AND STRONG IN CONDITION, AND THAT OF THE ENEMY IS THE REVERSE, THEN SHALL HE MARCH AGAINST THE ENEMY—(171)**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Condition*'—is the cause of happiness and strength; *e.g.* having received much wealth, the harvest having been good, and so forth are the causes that are conducive to happiness and strength.

'*Army*'—consisting of elephants, horses and foot-soldiers.

'*And that of the enemy is the reverse*',—'*then shall he march against the enemy*'—*i. e.* attack him. The causes that prompt actual marching against the enemy are not the same that lead the king to make war; in fact, these latter, as also the loss of happiness and strength of the enemy's people, are the causes that should prompt actual marching.—(171)

## VERSE (172)

**BUT WHEN HE HAPPENS TO BE WEAK IN CONVEYANCES AND SOLDIERS, THEN HE SHALL SIT QUIET, GRADUALLY CONCILIATING HIS ENEMIES WITH SPECIAL CARE.—(172)**

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Conveyances*'—elephants and horses;—'Soldiers'—foot-soldiers. The distinction between the two being analogous to the '*go*' and the '*balīvarda*.'

When his soldiers are weak, he shall sit quiet, conciliating his enemies. 'Conciliating' consists in making them pleased with peaceful overtures and gifts.—(172)

## VERSE (173)

WHEN THE KING THINKS HIS ENEMY TO BE STRONGER IN EVERY RESPECT, THEN HE SHOULD BIFURCATE HIS FORCE AND THUS ACCOMPLISH HIS OWN PURPOSE.—(173)

*Bhāṣya.*

When a man has been attacked by a strong enemy, recouping is impossible ; what is beneficial is resorting to a fortress ; and this means garrisoning, which involves 'bifurcation'; this has been already explained above. As a matter of fact, it is found that, under ordinary circumstances, it is only the more powerful king who divides his forces, when under difficulties.—(173)

## VERSE (174)

WHEN HE HAPPENS TO BE VERY MUCH OPEN TO ATTACK BY THE ENEMY'S FORCES, THEN HE SHALL SEEK SHELTER WITH A RIGHTEOUS AND POWERFUL KING.—(174)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Very much open to attack*';—when he finds that while in the fortress, he is very liable to be assailed,—then quickly he shall give up the fortress and take refuge with another '*righteous king*,' at whose hands he does not fear ill-treatment, who is famed for his calm and dispassionate nature.

What is meant by the epithet '*powerful*' is shown in the next verse.—(174)

## VERSE (175)

**That king who does the chastisement of his people as also of his enemy's army,—him he shall ever serve with every effort, like a preceptor.—(175)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

It has been said that the other king should be '*powerful*'; the question arising as to what amount of strength would mark him out as 'powerful',—the present verse supplies the answer.

With that king alone he shall seek shelter who is capable of chastising the enemy's forces, as also the disloyal subjects of the king seeking his shelter.

And such a king shall be served like a preceptor; and in so doing the king shall not consider his dignity at all; he should have no such notion as 'he also is a great king, so I shall treat him as my equal'; in fact he shall be attended upon, like a master.

'*With every effort*'—by all such means as saying agreeable things, attending on him, and so forth.—(175)

## VERSE (176)

**If even there he should perceive something wrong on the part of his shelterer, then, even in that condition he shall, without hesitation, resort to war.—(176)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

If even in that seeking of refuge he should '*perceive*' —feel—'*something wrong on the part of his shelterer*'; &c. &c. The signs indicating such 'wrong' are the following:—

'Repentance after having given the shelter, *Kṛtapurvahomam* (?), showing disrespect, describing misdeeds, inattention, disagreeable speech,—these are the acts of the unfavourable man,

Thus when the shelterer is found to be unfavourably inclined,—although the shelterer be, in reality, free from anything actually wrong,—this is what is implied by the term '*api*', '*even*',—at such a time he shall, without any hesitation, have recourse to war. Nor is it necessary that the man should suffer destruction after having been reduced to a condition necessitating his taking shelter; because even a stronger man is sometimes found to be defeated by the weaker. In any case, the final result is bound to be favourable: if he wins, he regains his kingdom, if he is defeated. he is sure to attain heaven. We are going to show later on the excellence of war.

From among the six 'measures of policy' the king may resort to one or the other, and regulate his marches according to his capacity.—(176)

## VERSE (177)

BY MEANS OF ALL THE EXPEDIENTS, THE POLITIC KING SHALL ACT IN SUCH A MANNER THAT HIS ALLIES, NEUTRALS AND ENEMIES DO NOT BECOME SUPERIOR TO HIMSELF.—(177)

*Bhāṣya.*

The mention of 'expedients' in general implies that use may be made of these either severally or collectively; and the epithet 'all' indicates that he may resort to whatever expedient he can; even such, for instance, as the formation of cliques and the like.

'*Act in such a manner*'—try to manage his affairs in such a way.

'*Politic*'—well versed in the science of government, naturally possessed of keen intelligence, as also conversant with the art of politics.

'*Superior*'—in the three elements of strength;—so that his allies and others may not be so, he shall act in all things,—in the undertakings of his people— in such a way as to make himself greater than all of them.

In view of metrical exigencies the author has omitted to mention the 'intermediary'. But he also is to be watched, and not ignored, because friendly. There is no such thing as a 'friend', without some motive of his own; in fact when a friend becomes great, he also, for some purpose of his own, becomes an enemy; as says Vyasa—'No one is anybody's friend, nor is any body any body's enemy; friends and enemies are to be regarded as such only in accordance with the powers that they possess.'

By means of these expedients, the king shall deliberate upon his whole circle.—(177)

## VERSE (178)

He shall fully think over the future and the present condition of all undertakings, as also the good and bad points of all past ones.—(178)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Undertakings*'—Business affairs. When any work is going to be undertaken, he shall consider its '*future*'— i. e. its developments to come,—and also its '*present condition*',—i. e. its condition at the beginning,—'*fully*'—in all its real details. As a matter of fact, undertakings have several offshoots, and undergo transformation in a moment; so that if both ends (future and present) of an undertaking are not clearly grasped, it is difficult to ascertain in what manner it shall be proceeded with; hence the necessity of consideration, which the present text enjoins.

'*Also the good and bad points of all past ones*'—shall then be pondered over. Here also having thought over the good and bad points of past actions, one has to make up his mind to undertake first those which are found to have only good points; and herein lies the use of thinking over the good and bad points of past acts,—which are enjoined in the present text.—(178)

## VERSE (179)

HE, WHO IS ALIVE TO THE GOOD AND BAD POINTS IN REGARD TO THE FUTURE, IS QUICK IN HIS DECISIONS RELATING TO THE PRESENT, AND UNDERSTANDS THE CONSEQUENCES OF HIS ACTS IN THE PAST, IS NEVER OVERPOWERED BY HIS ENEMIES.—(179)

### *Bhāṣya.*

Thus if a king knows the good and bad points of an act, likely to appear in the future, he would act with deliberation; and would undertake only such acts as are likely to develop good points, and avoid those likely to lead to evil. It is for this reason that the knowledge of the likely developments of an undertaking is necessary.

'*Relating to the present*';—he who takes quick decisions, and does not delay their execution, is said to be '*quick in his decisions*'; such a person is quick to act, and does what leads to good, and not what leads to evil:

'*In the past*';—when an act has been done, if the man judges the act by its end only, he becomes great by reason of his undertaking only such acts as lead to good;—and he is '*never overpowered by his enemies*'.

As a matter of fact, it is not possible for the Six Measures of Policy to be dealt with in detail in a work dealing with *Dharma*; hence the subject has been treated of only briefly.—(179)

## VERSE (180)

HE SHALL ARRANGE EVERYTHING IN SUCH A MANNER THAT HIS ALLIES OR NEUTRALS OR ENEMIES MAY NOT GET THE BETTER OF HIM; THIS IS THE SUM-TOTAL OF STATE-POLICY.—(180)

### *Bhāṣya.*

He should act in such a manner that others may not get the better of him by means of the several expedients. This is the sum-total of state-policy. This is a summing up.

In the manner shown above there is no inconsistency in the employment of the 'Six Measures'. It has to be borne in mind that if a king succeeds (1) in keeping his plans secret, (2) in adopting remedial measures at the advent of troubles, (3) in keeping his own circle contented, and (4) in duly employing the measures and expedients,—then he attains success in his affairs.—(181)

———:o:———

## SECTION (13)

## War.

### VERSE (181)

When the king undertakes an expedition against the enemy's kingdom, he shall advance slowly towards the enemy's capital, in the following manner.—(181)

*Bhāṣya.*

The text now describes what is to be done by one who is going to undertake an expedition.

When he wishes to undertake an expedition against the enemy's kingdom, then he should advance, in the following manner against his capital, without hurry.

This verse serves as an introduction to what is going to be described, and serves the purpose of making it more easily intelligible.—(181)

### VERSE (182)

The king shall start on his expedition in the auspicious month of Mārgashīrṣa, or towards the months of Phalguṇa and Chaitra, according to the condition of his forces.—(182)

*Bhāṣya.*

When he is going to undertake an expedition involving a campaign that might be a long one, in consideration of his own forces and also in that of the king against whom he is marching,—he shall march against the hostile kingdom in the month of *Mārgashīrṣa*, when his forces are fully equipped and when his stores are fully replenished with the autumn-harvest. Starting about this time, he can easily carry with him the autumn-fruits garnered in the house and is cheered by the prospects of the spring-harvest. The time is quite fit for

the work of laying siege to fortresses and so forth; and the path also is not beset with deviations and diversions due to the overgrowth of grasses or the over-flowing of rivers; and the season is neither too hot nor too cold. At any other time of the year food-grains, even though sufficient, cannot be of sufficiently diverse quality, the season of the three harvests being far off; so that the enemy would be likely to take shelter under a powerful king, which would lead to the unnecessary expenditure of the stock of food-grains of both parties, and the attacking king's own forces also would become weakened.

If however the king is desirous only of inflicting some injury on the enemy's territory, or when the expedition is expected to take a short time, and his force is sufficiently strong, then he may start also during the months of *Phālguna* and *Chaitra*, specially against a country which is rich in spring-harvests. At this time of the year also, he can obtain fodder and at the same time inflict an injury upon the other party, by destroying the crops standing in the fields.

'*According to the condition of his forces*';—he should regulate his marches according to the strength of his army.—(182)

The following is an exception to the rule laid down above—

## VERSE (183)

AT OTHER TIMES ALSO, IF HE PERCEIVES CERTAIN VICTORY, THEN HE SHALL PICK UP A QUARREL AND MARCH FORWARD; ALSO WHEN SOME TROUBLE HAS ARISEN FOR THE ENEMY.—(183)

### *Bhāṣya.*

Even apart from the seasons mentioned in the preceding verse, '*at other times*'—during the rains and other seasons also,—if he thinks that his victory is '*certain*'—sure to come—then '*he shall march forward*';— if he has a strong force, during the rains,—has his elephants and horses in full strength, then, by virtue of the strength of his forces, his victory is certain.

*'Trouble'* for the enemy, in connection with his army and treasury &c.; when such trouble has arisen, then he may march against him, even irrespectively of the condition of his own forces; since the army, suffering from its own internal troubles, becomes easily reducible; in fact he perishes, even like a log of wood which perishes by the mere touch of .........(?).

*'He shall pick up a quarrel'*;—he must march forward; after having attacked and challenged the enemy he shall advance, when he knows the other party is in great trouble.—(183)

## VERSES (184—185)

HAVING DULY MADE ARRANGEMENTS AT THE BASE, AS ALSO THOSE PERTAINING TO THE EXPEDITION, HAVING SECURED A BASIS, AND HAVING DULY DEPUTED HIS SPIES,—HAVING CLEARED THE THREE KINDS OF ROADS, AND HAVING EQUIPPED HIS OWN SIX-FOLD FORCE,—HE SHALL ADVANCE AGAINST THE ENEMY'S CAPITAL IN THE MANNER PRESCRIBED FOR WARFARE.—(184—185)

### *Bhāṣya.*

*'At the base'*—in his own kingdom and in his own fort—he shall establish a rear-guard by way of *'arrangement'* i.e. as a precautionary measure; that is, he shall supply the fort with a large supply of food-grains &c. and with fitted up machines and defences and ditches &c. The kingdom also he shall leave protected by companies of soldiers. Having made the Commander thoroughly contented by means of honours and presents, he shall appoint him in charge of outposts in his rear along the boundaries of his territory; and a fully-equipped army shall be left under him, within his own territories.

*'Those pertaining to the expedition'*—i.e. the preparations for the expedition, consisting in providing weapons of offence and defence for the elephant—corps, the cavalry and other branches of the army.

*'Duly'*—i.e. according to the instructions contained in works dealing with the art of war.

'*Basis*'—foot-hold ; from where the temper of the people other than his enemies might be duly watched ;—having '*secured*' —made his own—such a ground.

For the purpose of learning the condition of things in the enemy's kingdom, having '*deputed*'—appointed—spies ; for the purpose of finding out whether the enemy has begun to get together his forces, or to rouse his opponent's circle to rebellion, or to take shelter with a neutral or indifferent king ; and he should also seek to ascertain whether the enemy is going to check his very first advance directly, or to cut off his communications, and all other allied matters.—(184)

'*Three kinds of roads*'—i.e. those passing (1) through the open country, (2) through marshy ground, and (3) through forests. Some people read '*vana*' in place of '*āṭavika*', and thus make up the 'three'. Others again describe the '*three kinds of roads*' as (1) high, (2) low and (3) level.

'*Having cleared*';—cutting off the trees, thickets and creepers obstructing the path, and levelling the undulations of the ground, preparing fords in rivers and ravines, destroying the wild animals besetting the path, winning over the path-finders to his side, and getting together supplies of food and fodder &c.

'*Six-fold force*'—according to some the six factors are—(1) Elephants, (2) horses, (3) chariots and (4) footsoldiers—these four constituting the 'army'—and (5) Treasury and (6) Mechanics. Others read 'fixing of rates' in place of 'treasury'. According to others again, the six factors are—(1) the hereditary soldiers of the king, (2) mercenaries, (3) groups, (4) friendly (5) unfriendly and (6) foresters.

'*In the manner prescribed for warfare*';—'*Sāmparāyikam*' means *pertaining to* '*samparaya*' or *war*;—i.e. that which has been laid down for the purpose of war; in that manner,—i.e. in the manner prescribed for advancing against a fort,—he shall advance against the enemy.

The disposition of the army shall be in accordance with the nature of the ground ; palisades being set up with dry or living

pillars, with several openings, and made of sticks, planks and branches of trees and so forth. Special care has to be taken regarding this during the time that the army is on the march.—(185)

## VERSE (186)

HE SHALL BE VERY MUCH ON HIS GUARD AGAINST AN ALLY WHO MAY BE SECRETLY SERVING THE ENEMY, AS ALSO AGAINST ONE WHO HAS GONE AWAY AND RETURNED ; AS HE IS THE MORE DANGEROUS ENEMY.—(186)

*Bhāṣya.*

'Who is serving his enemy secretly,'—hidden';—against such an '*ally*', as also against '*one who has gone away and returned*'—'*he shall be very much on guard*'; he shall be careful, watchful, in regard to them ; i.e. he shall not trust them. Because such a person is '*the more dangerous enemy*'—worse than one who is openly hostile to him.

The use of the epithets '*very much on guard*' and '*more dangerous*' implies that the person who has gone over to the other side and returned again should not be received back.

Such a person is of four kinds :—(1) He who has gone away for some reason, and comes back for some reason contrary to the reason for which he had gone, e.g. he went away on account of some defect in his chief, and comes back on having thought of his good qualities ; (2) he who has come back for some reason ; from among these the person who comes back for some reason shall be dismissed, as being fickle-minded and careless in his acts, and hence no confidence can be reposed in him ;—(3) he who has gone for some reason, and returns also for the same reason ; e.g. he goes on account of some bad quality of his chief, and returns also on account of some bad quality in his new chief ; such a person shall be received with honour, and if his return is found to be due to his attachment to the former chief, he shall be taken back; (4) on the other hand, if he be found to have been deputed by the enemy of his chief with a view to cause some injury to his former chief, then he shall not be taken back,—(186)

When the king has started on his expedition against a hostile kingdom.—

## VERSE (187)

**He shall march on this road arraying his army in the form of a staff, or in that of a cart, or a boar, or an alligator, or a needle or the Garuḍa-bird.—(187)**

*Bhāṣya.*

When the army is arranged in the shape of a staff, it is said to be '*arrayed in the form of a staff*'; similarly when in the shape of the cart, it is 'arrayed in the *form of a cart*'; and so on with the rest.

(A) In the fore-front, there is the Commander of the entire force,—then the king in the centre,—then the army-commander, —on his two flanks, the elephants,—close to them the horses,— then the footsoldiers; the whole of this array being, like the staff and operating in a straight line.

(B) Operating on both sides is the '*needle-array*', in which the soldiers operate in a solid mass, the bravest being in the forefront; it constitutes a very much-lengthened line, all operating simultaneously.

(C) The '*alligator-array*' is broad at the front face and at the two flanks (thighs), and highly recommended; as nowhere in this array is there any weak point; and even when pressed by braver enemies, it leads to the breaking up of the enemy's forces; and in the end its purpose is entirely and surely accomplished. The rest of the army is to be thrown into the middle of the array.

The above-mentioned dispositions of the army are to by resorted to in accordance with the end in view; on even ground the advance should be made either in the 'staff' or the 'needle or the '*garuḍa*' array; but on uneven ground, and on ground beset with obstructions, etc. that of the 'cart' or the 'alligator' or the 'boar'.—(187)

## VERSE (188)

FROM WHERE HE APPREHENDS DANGER THERE HE SHALL EXTEND HIS FORCES; AND HE HIMSELF SHALL ALWAYS ENCAMP IN THE 'LOTUS-ARRAY'—(188)

*Bhāṣya.*

On the road there may be certain points where there may be apprehension of molestation from persons inclined to help his enemy ; and at these points, when marching from his preceding encampment, he shall extend his forces to the extent of two miles or a little more ; i.e. at these points the army is to consist of dense masses of elephants and chariots and cavalry extended forward and fully equipped with offensive and defensive weapons and supplied with large quantities of food and fodder.

The '*lotus array*' is that disposition of the army where the master is stationed at the centre and his officers all round him in a circular form. In this array he shall himself always '*encamp*', —i. e. march forward from a town or a village.—(188)

## VERSE (189)

THE COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF AND THE GENERAL HE SHALL STATION IN ALL DIRECTIONS ; THE QUARTER FROM WHICH HE APPREHENDS DANGER, THAT HE SHALL REGARD AS THE 'EAST' (FRONT).—(189)

*Bhāṣya.*

The '*Commander-in-Chief*', the controller of the entire force and its supplies, and the '*General*'—each of these being one only, and not many, it would be impossible to station them '*in all directions*'; hence the two names should be taken as standing for the subordinates of the two officers ; and when their subordinates have been stationed and put in charge of all directions, the two officers themselves become so 'stationed.'

Thus having stationed them in battle-array, with distinct army-corps—each consisting of elephants and horses—alloted to each of them, and having placed a mountain or a ditch in his

rear, kept in charge of a separate officer,—he shall regard that direction as the 'East' or 'front' from where he apprehends danger. In this manner he shall arrange his camp, prepared to march forward, in the manner of learned men moving forward.—(189)

## VERSE (190)

ON ALL SIDES HE SHALL STATION RELIABLE PICKETS, WITH WHOM SIGNALS HAVE BEEN ARRANGED, WHO ARE EXPERTS IN STANDING FIRM AS ALSO IN CHARGING, FEARLESS AND LOYAL.—(190)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Pickets*'—troops of men; some of them supplied with conches and drums, while others are not so supplied. These shall be stationed at those points where if any mishap were to occur, it would lead to grave peril.

The qualifications of these men are now stated— (a) '*Reliable*'; '*āpta*' is a *relative*, and 'reliable servants' are as good as relatives.

(b) '*With whom signals have been arranged*,'—with whom signs for communication have been fixed upon; such as—'when the battle has begun, when you hear the sound of conches, trumpets, drums and other instruments, in such and such a way, then you shall understand that there are signs of wavering and retreat, and then you shall do such and such an act',—or 'when the flag is taken down, or hoisted up, you shall stand apart from one another; if it is hoisted in this way you shall charge in a mass; you shall turn back, when it is raised in such and such fashion'.

(*c*) '*Experts in standing firm*',—who are determined to stand together in proper formation even when charged by the canons of the enemy attacking them in dense masses; '*as also in charging*'—i. e. while not quite expert in pursuing the fleeing enemy, they are adepts in charging *en masse* into the thickest of the enemy and engaging in fierce combat his rear-guard and taking captives hundreds of those trying to run away.

(*d*) '*Fearless*'—hence prone to spreading themselves and yet operating in combination.

(e) '*Loyal*'—identifying themselves entirely with the interests of their chief.

In this fashion he shall establish several pickets '*on all sides*'—i. e. on three sides— extending to two miles each way; but the position of these shall be altered everyday. When the fears of the chief are allayed by the alertness of these, his people gain confidence in him. And the king shall address the following words to his men—'In as much as, at the end of the war, presents, honours and appreciations shall be distributed among all, it is the interest of all of you, along with the ministers, that it be waged in the proper manner,—I am *king* only in name—in reality all of us are equal sharers in all prosperity that may come to us,—if we win, we acquire a kingdom, and if we lose we attain heaven,—it is with this view that all of us have come together'.—(190)

## VERSE (191)

He shall make a small number of men fight in close formation; but a large number he may extend as he likes. He shall make them fight, arraying them in the form of the 'needle' and the 'thunderbolt.'—(191)

### *Bhāṣya.*

If the men do not fight in a close formation, and extend themselves over a large space,—then, happening to be opposed by a larger force, they are apt to be overtaken in small detachments and thus, by sheer impact, become annihilated. For this reason, when the number of men is small, they should be made to fight in close formation, so that fighting with mutual support, they do not become completely annihilated; and also when fighting close by one another, through mutual rivalry and attachment they are enabled to fight the stronger enemy.

'*As he likes*'—as much as he may wish, in view of the end to be served,—'*he may extend a large number of men*'—i. e. make them fight in small detachments.

If the king thinks that when ordered to fight in small detachments, they may be struck with fear,—or that fear might arise in their minds on seeing the larger numbers of the enemy—then he shall array his men in the form of the '*needle*' described above. The 'thunderbolt array' is that particular form in which the men are divided into three parts—one in the front, another in the rear and the rest on the two sides (of the king). In this 'needle-array' or 'thunderbolt-array' having arrayed his men, he shall make them do battle. Of all arrays these two have been singled out for mention, as these two are best able to sustain a charge as well as to push home an attack. When he finds these same formations on the enemy's side, then he shall resort to the opposite formation.

In the event of both belligerents being equal in number, the particular formations and their effectiveness shall depend upon the physical strength, loyalty and efficiency of the men engaged.

The term '*shall make to fight*' implies that the king himself shall direct the operations from his quarters in a fortress or in some other comparatively safe spot forming the rear of the army. Says a work on the subject—'The king shall go back to a distance of 200 *bows* (1200 feet) and stay there as the he engage in battle *rear guard*, for the purpose of rallying the men that may be routed; and in no case shall he be without such a rearguard.—(191)

## VERSE (192)

ON EVEN GROUND HE SHALL FIGHT WITH CHARIOTS AND HORSES; ON MARSHY GROUND WITH BOATS AND ELEPHANTS; ON GROUND COVERED WITH TREES AND THICKETS WITH BOWS; AND ON FIRM GROUND WITH SWORDS AND SHIELDS AND OTHER WEAPONS.—(192)

### *Bhāṣya.*

This verse describes the nature of the ground on which the army has to operate.

On even ground, he shall fight with chariots and horses; as there is no obstruction for them on such ground.

'*Marshy ground*'—ground abounding in water. On such ground, if the water is shallow, he shall fight with elephants, but with boats, if it is deep ; these can move easily on such ground.

On ground convered with trees and thickets, with bows. This includes also such ground as is cut up with pits and ditches ;—the effect of these being the same as that of trees etc.

'*Firm ground*'—ground free from stones, trees, creepers, pits and the like; on such ground he shall fight with swords and such other weapons as are held in the hand—such as the lance; since these can be used in fighting at close quarters, which shows the fighting-capacity of the combatants.—(192)

Further—

## VERSE (193).

MEN BORN IN THE COUNTRIES OF KURUKṢETRA, MATSYA, PAÑCHĀLA, AND SHŪRASENA.—HE SHALL MAKE THESE FIGHT IN THE VAN-GUARD ; AS ALSO THOSE THAT ARE TALL AND LIGHT.—(193)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Kurukṣetra*'—is well known.

'*Matsya*'—is the name of the *Virāṭa* country, near Nāgapura.

'*Pañchāla*'—includes both the Kānyakubja and the Ahichhchatra.

'*Born in Shūrasena*'—i. e. in Mathurā.

Some of these words are denotative of origin ; but the necessary affix has been dropped.

The people of these countries are mostly huge-bodied, powerful, broad-chested, brave, proud, irrepressible; and as such, when placed at the forefront of the battle, strike terror in the hearts of the enemies.

From among the people of other countries those have to be similarly stationed who are '*tall*'—,and having large bodies,

are endowed with long breaths. Those that are '*light*' are fearless, on account of being comparatively free from danger, being hidden by others and without being struck themselves, continue to strike and thus, without suffering injury, set an example to others—(193).

## VERSE (194)

HAVING ARRAYED HIS FORCES, HE SHALL ENCOURAGE THEM AND THOROUGHLY TEST THEM; EVEN WHILE THEY ARE ENGAGING THE ENEMY, HE SHALL MARK THEIR BEHAVIOUR.—(194).

### *Bhāṣya*

'*Having arrayed his forces,*' and thereby displayed his strength, he shall encourage his men with such words as—'what is there to win? Our enemies are already as good as defeated by your prowess,'—'If you win you gain much wealth, and thereby bring happiness to your dependents and others; if you are slain in battle, you gain heaven, and pay off the debt owing to your employer; on the other hand, if you are defeated, you lose all these three advantages;' and so forth, addressing them such words as may be suitable to the occasion.

He shall also '*thoroughly test them*'; he shall get some one to address them such words as—'Do not submit to the restrictions laid down by the king,—we could bear all these if the king and the commander exposed themselves and their relations also to the same danger as ourselves,—the king under the pretence of keeping the rear-guard, is keeping himself in a safe place; being a coward he does not wish to enter the fray' and so forth. On hearing all this some of the men would reply as follows:—'It is not as you say,—this war is our very own,—and for us, who live by the use of weapons, being killed in battle is a highly desirable end,—not fleeing from battle is the highest duty of warriors, and the abandoning of our duty would be a source of sin,—the king also should be guarded by all means in our power;—when we are done, he shall certainly provide rest and other favours for us,—in

fact, that is why he is staying with us';—those who respond thus he shall treat with special consideration. When they gain a victory, they should be enlogised and presented with robes of honour, and their attachment should be strengthened by means of embraces, decorations and presents.

While they are engaging the enemy, *'he shall mark their behaviour'*; i.e. find out how his men are behaving and how his treasury is faring. Some men are likely to be half-hearted, while others go to it whole-heartedly,—all this has to be carefully watched, on account of human nature being extremely fickle; and even those who help generally do so for some selfish end.

Having tested his men, he shall place the unreliable ones in the midst of reliable ones, so that they may all reach the enemy's stronghold.—(194)

The author proceeds to lay down the means of getting at the enemy's stronghold in the next verse.

## VERSE (195)

**After having besieged the foe, he shall halt, and proceed to harass his kingdom and continually vitiate his supply of fodder, food, water and fuel.—(195)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

The siege has to be laid in such a manner that no one is allowed to enter nor any one allowed to get out.

*'Kingdom'*—i. e. territories outside the fortress occupied by the enemy.—This shall be *'harassed'*;—by kidnapping the inhabitants and persecuting them in various ways.

The *'vitiating'* of fodder etc. consists in spoiling them by mixing undesirable things with them.—(195).

## VERSE (196)

**He shall destroy the tanks, as also walls and ditches; he shall assail the enemy and shall frighten him —during the night.—(196)**

*Bhāṣya.*

The '*tank*' stands for all kinds of water-reservoirs. The *tank* is 'destroyed' by its source of supply being cut off by means of embankments. The *wall is* 'destroyed' by being breached by means of machines, or being undermined. The '*ditch* is 'destroyed' either by being filled up or by having an outlet made in its banks.

He shall *assail the enemy*, in the fort, at the breaches in the walls, which should be attacked by brave soldiers; '*and he shall frighten him during the night*'—by means of men holding on their heads jars of flaming fire, and crying like the jackal. People seeing such portents would keep up during the night; and being fatigued by the waking would be easily reducible.—(196).

During all this time—

VERSE (197)

HE SHALL ALIENATE ALL WHO ARE ALIENABLE, KEEP HIMSELF INFORMED OF THE ENEMY'S DOINGS, AND WHEN FATE IS PROPITIOUS, HE SHALL FIGHT, DEVOID OF FEAR AND DETERMINED TO CONQUER.—(197).

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Those who are alienable*'—i.e. such members of his family as are angry with the enemy, and desirous of obtaining his Kingdom;—all such '*he shall alienate*'; i.e. instruct them as to what they should do. The act of 'alienating' consists in estranging the dependent from his chief and inciting him to seek his own advantage at the cost of the latter.

Through his spies he shall also keep himself informed of the '*enemy's doings*',—to find out all that the beleagured enemy does in the way inciting his own soldiers and foresters in his rear, and forming alliances with the intermedearies and neutrals.

'*When fate is propitious*',—when it is favourable to the besieging king ; i.e. when the stars and planets bear a favourable aspect, when dreams and other omens are found to be auspicious, and when there are other signs visible, in the form of favourable winds and so forth,—then being '*determined to conquer*' and '*devoid of fear*,' he shall march forward as before and attack various points in the enemy's stronghold.—(197)

VERSE (198)

BY CONCILIATION, BY GIFTS AND BY DISSENSION,—EITHER SEVERALLY OR COLLECTIVELY,—HE SHALL TRY TO CONQUER HIS ENEMY,—NEVER BY WAR.—(198).

*Bhāṣya.*

He shall not go to war in a hurry. (*a*) At first he shall try '*Conciliation*'—i.e. friendly meeting, sitting together, conversing, seeing each other's wife and so forth;—then (*b*) '*gifts*'—the presenting of gold and other things in token of affection, for the purpose of creating mutual attachment ;—then (*c*) '*dissension*'—the winning over of his family-members. This last means also the arousing of fear in his mind and so forth.—(198).

VERSE (199)

SINCE BETWEEN TWO COMBATANTS VICTORY IS FOUND TO BE UNCERTAIN, AS ALSO DEFEAT,—THEREFORE HE SHALL AVOID FIGHTING—(199).

*Bhāṣya.*

Because it is not always founed to be the case that he who gains the victory is necessarily the stronger of the two combatants,—or that he who is defeated by him is necessarily the weaker,—therefore '*victory is uncertain*'.—(199).

VERSE—(200)

BUT IN THE EVENT OF THE THREE AFORESAID EXPEDIENTS FAILING, HE SHALL FIGHT IN SUCH A MANNER AS TO CONQUER HIS ENEMIES COMPLETELY.—(200).

*Bhāṣya.*

Conciliation and the rest having failed,—even though victory be uncertain, and equally possible for both combatants,—he shall fight in such a manner that his victory become certain ; and if he wins, he gains a kingdom, while if he is slain, he gains heaven; so in either case victory would be his. He shall not create imaginary difficulties, and he shall also eschew all treacherous ways of fighting, as also all such operations as would bring about either the utter annihilation of the enemy or too much harassment. Says Vyāsa—'O Arjuna, even Indra himself dare not stand before men who have become desperate and given up all hope of their lives'. When victory appears to be doubtful, retreat is the proper thing to do ; for when life has gone out, the man is unable to accomplish his purpose ; it is only while alive that he passes through pleasing experiences, whereas if he dies, he only gains heaven.—(200).

———:o———

## SECTION (14)

## Consolidation of Conquered Territory.

### VERSE (201)

HAVING GAINED VICTORY, HE SHALL WORSHIP THE GODS AND THE RIGHTEOUS BRĀHMAṆAS, GRANT REMISSIONS AND PROCLAIM AMNESTIES.—(201).

*Bhāṣya.*

After the enemy has been defeated and quiet has been restored in the captured city, and among the people—'he shall worship *the gods and the righteous Brāhmaṇas*'—i. e. those who perform all the acts that are enjoined for the Brahmaṇa, and who, as much as lies in their power, avoid all that is forbidden. He shall make offerings of sandal-paint, flowers, incense and so forth, with due apportionment and after proper purification of the things offered.

'*Grant remissions*'.—For the safety of householders, in order that their livelihood may not suffer, he shall remit such portions of the taxes as may be too burdensome for them, not realising them for one or two years.

'*Proclaim amnesties*'.—He shall make it known among the people of the city and the villages—by means of the beat of drum or the felling of the mace and such other means—that what they had done by virtue of their loyalty to their former master had been forgiven and that henceforward every one of them was free to take to his own calling.—(201).

If even after the bestowing of such fauours he finds that the citizens and the people are still so loyal to their former master that they still cherish feelings of attachment towards his dynasty, and that any government of his own would not be lasting,—then, he shall do as follows:—

## VERSE (202)

HAVING BRIEFLY ASCERTAINED THE WISHES OF ALL THE PEOPLE, HE SHALL SET UP THERE A MEMBER OF THE SAME FAMILY AND THEN CONCLUDE THE TREATY.—(202)

*Bhāṣya.*

Having briefly ascertained that such and such is the wish of the citizens and other people—'they do not wish to be governed in such and such a manner, they wish to have a king of the same family as their former ruler,'—*he shall set up a member of the same family*,' who may be mild-tempered, and happy in his family-surroundings;—and then conclude a treaty with the king thus set up along with his assembled subjects and ministers;—the terms of the treaty being—'you and I shall have equal shares in your income, you shall consult me in all that you do or not do, at the proper time you shall come and help me with your treasury and force' and so forth.—(202).

## VERSE (203)

HE SHALL MAKE AUTHORITATIVE ALL THAT IS DECLARED TO HAVE BEEN LAWFUL (IN THE KINGDOM), AND SHALL HONOR WITH PRECIOUS GIFTS THE KING ALONG WITH THE LEADING MEN.—(203).

*Bhāṣya.*

All the customs relating to the property of Brāhmaṇas or temples, and to the duties of the people that may have been prevalent in the kingdom from before,—all those he shall confirm, '*make authoritative*'. By so doing, they become attached to him;—and the 'leading men' that may be there,—their importance being due to their being rich in their belongings and in the size of their family and such other qualifications,—along with these, the new king shall be honoured with presents of weapons, money, grains, ornaments, conveyances, umbrella, throne, crown and so forth.—(203)

The next verse explains why precious gifts are to be made to the people.

VERSE (204)

THE SEIZING OF DESIRABLE PROPERTY IS PRODUCTIVE OF DISPLEASURE, AND THE GIVING OF IT IS PRODUCTIVE OF PLEASURE; EACH IS COMMENDED IF DONE AT THE PROPER TIME.—(204).

*Bhāṣya.*

The non-giving of what should be given to the new king, or to any other person, is '*productive of displeasure*'; it causes displeasure; and the giving of it is '*productive of pleasure*'. Both these facts are well known;—that the giving of what is desired causes pleasure, and the witholding of it causes pain.

'*Each is commended when done at the proper time*';—at one time any gift however small causes pleasure, while at another time a poor gift, or a small one, causes no pleasure at all. Hence the seizing and giving away of property should be done after full consideration of the peculiarity of the time.—(204).

All that has gone before and what is going to be described below,—all this is 'dependent' &c. &c. (says the next verse.)

VERSE (205)

ALL THIS UNDERTAKING IS DEPENDENT UPON THE ORDERING OF DESTINY AND OF HUMAN EXERTION; OF THESE TWO, DESTINY IS INCOMPREHENSIBLE, AND ACTION IS POSSIBLE ONLY IN REGARD TO HUMAN EXERTION.—(205)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Undertaking*', action done for the purpose of bringing about a desirable result,—'*all this*' is dependent upon something.

'*Vidhāna*', '*ordering*', is that which *ordains*, the effect of actions. That which *ordains* an act also *qualifies* it;—'*of Destiny and of Human Exertion*',—'*Destiny*' consisting in Merit &c., resulting from previous acts, in the shape of doing what is prescribed and also what is forbidden. The doing of an act has its

motives noticeable in morality or immorlity. *Says* the *Shruti*—"*Vidhi*, (creator)' Vidhāna (ordinance) *Niyati* (Destiny), *Svabhāva* (Nature), *Kāla* (Time), *Brahma*, *Ishvara* (God,) *Karma* (Deed), *Daiva* (Fate), *Bhāgya* Luck), *Puṇya* (Merit) *Bhutāntaryoga* (co-operation of Beings)—these are the synonyms of '*Previous Act*";—and the *Smṛti* also "*Destiny* should be understood as what is done by the man himself in his previous body; and *Human Exertion* is what he does during this life". From this it is clear that as between 'Destiny' and 'Human Exertion', the latter becomes, after death, the cause of the former.

It is on this 'effect' that every undertaking and its result are 'dependent'. Destiny by itself, apart from Human Exertion, does not bring about any results; it must need the help of Human Effort; and Human Effort must need the help of Destiny. If results followed from mere Destiny, independently of Human Exertion, then it would be possible for results to accrue to the embryo also; since however there are no such results, it has to be inferred that results follow from Destiny only when it is accompanied by Human Exertion; similarly, if Human Exertion were productive of results, independently by itself, then all kinds of results would accrue to all kinds of men. As a matter of fact, no such thing ever actually happens. Hence it follows that causal efficiency belongs to both conjointly. So says Vyāsa—'All human undertakings are the effects of twofold *Karma*,—Destiny and Human Exertion; apart from these two there is nothing else.' (*Mahābhārata*, *Sauptika-parva*, 2.2); and in the *Samānatantra* (?) also—'Destiny and Human Exertion maintain the moral and immoral activities of men.'

Those who hold that Destiny is the sole cause of things argue as follows:—"Destiny is the only cause. As a matter of fact, we find that idiots, eunuchs, cripples, lame persons and others, though absolutely unable to put forth any exertion, are still happy; though entirely helpless, yet they obtain the good results of past acts. On the other hand, it is often found that persons with enough means at their command, able-bodied, brave and clever and versed in the scriptures, are unhappy, even though putting

forth all their efforts ; and people go on experiencing gains and losses, brought about Destiny alone, independently of all efforts of their own. It is only under this theory that all activities tending to bring about results in the other world come to have their use ; the idea in the mind of the actors being—'we are experiencing in this world the results of past deeds and in the other world we shall experience those of our present deeds'; and it is when they know this that they engage themselves in meritorious deeds, and it is on this account that doubts also arise in the minds of people. (In support of the fatalist's stand-point) they quote the following saying—'I know what is righteous, and yet I do not act up to it ; and I know what is unrighteous, and yet I do not desist from it ; I do exactly as I am prompted to do by God ; apart from Him there is no other guide'."

On the other hand, those who would depend entirely upon Human Exertion argue thus :—"Human Exertion is the sole cause of all activities. It is only when the man laboriously exerts towards agricultural operations that he obtains the fruits of cultivation in the shape of good harvest. To this end it has been declared that—'In this world, it is only one who resorts to activity and performs acts that enjoys their results'. Even when food is there, people do not have their hunger satisfied unless they actually do the eating ; so that it stands to reason that since the result of the act of eating accrues to the man only after he has done that act, it should be attributed to the act (and not to any thing else). It is only thus that all injunctions regarding the doing of acts become useful. To this end they say—'The wise man sometimes sets aside even Destiny itself, just as he keeps off heat and cold and brings on as well as drives off rain.' "

From all these arguments it follows that causal efficiency belongs to both, Destiny and Human Exertion ; specially as it is found that in the absence of either of the two, proper results do not appear. In some cases, one, and in others, the other, happens to be chiefly conducive to a particular result, and hence comes to be regarded as the cause of that result. It often happens that human exertion, even though put forth, is baffled when over-

powered by a more powerful Destiny ; just as wet fuel, even though put in fire, does not burn, if the fire is weak. And even if Destiny be weak, if it is helped by strong human effort, it succeeds in producing its results ; just as even wet fuel burns when put in powerful fire, and it does not quench the fire. To this end there is the following saying—'Destiny, when weak, is set aside by Human Exertion, and even intelligent effort is baffled by more powerful Destiny.'

It is in view of all this that the Author says—'*of these two Destiny is verily incomprehensible*'; the term '*tu*' denotes emphasis; the meaning is that the real character of Destiny cannot be comprehended. It cannot be even thought of at what time it will bring about its results ; specially as apart from the scriptures, we cannot form any conception of it, we cannot fathom in what way it comes into existence and how it operates.

As regards Destiny then, any enquiry concerning it would be futile among human beings. Hence it is Human exertion, in the form of Action, that is going to be described, forming, as it does, the subject-mater of the treatise. And it is only in regard to 'Human exertion' that '*action is possible*'. In connection with agricultaral operations, it is possible for us to form some idea, such as—'I should carry on such and such operations, by means of such and such appliances, and in this manner I shall obtain such and such results'. In fact people undertake only that action of which the beginning, the middle and the end can be perceived. As regards 'Destiny', it is absolutely unthinkable in what manner even men in trouble should act, until the result is actually perceived. Thus Destiny being '*incomprehensible*', it is not necessary to devote much attention to it. It is *human activity* which we can think over and then do what has to be done ; in fact the man who acts in a happazard manner, without thinking of what he does, always comes to grief.

When the king is equipped with all the three 'powers', and endowed with due exertion and energy, there arises in his mind a keen desire to conquer other kingdoms ; and it is when Human Exertion becomes helped by Destiny that it accomplishes

all his purposes. And towards the final result it is Destiny that adds to excellence and all the rest of it is accomplished by Human Exertion alone. In the case of the king who has set out on conquest, if the enemy hoppens at the time to be under some calamity, this is due entirely to Destiny ; and in action, it is Human Exertion that is most effective ; so. in fact both stand on the same footing.

Further, it has been held that "when Human exertion functions, irrespectively of the ordering of Destiny, then it is with great difficulty that it leads to success". This means that if the man puts forth his efforts when Destiny is against him, then, in regard to all the eight forms of activity, either it accomplishes his purpose only with great difficulty, or it becomes entirely futile. Hence, even though there be prospect of difficulties, yet no one shall rest satisfied with simply resigning himself to Destiny.

When, on the other hand, Human Exertion operates in co-operation with Destiny, then it accomplishes all his purposes—as delineated in the Vedic texts—without difficulty. Thus whenever Human Exertion functions, while Destiny is favourable, it accomplishes all his purpose without any trouble at all. This idea is further confirmed by the following two verses:—'In some cases, when the man has put forth his effort in the field—even though Destiny is against him —it brings him its due reward;—sometimes the field is as if it were dead, and then all effort is futile.' It has often been found that though the man tries again and again, the result does not accrue if the necessary aid in the form of favourable Destiny does not come to his rescue.

Then again, 'even though the man may have his Destiny favourable, yet, in the absence of Exertion, no field can bear fruits without due Human Exertion'. In fact it is only when the result has been gained that the presence of favourable Destiny is inferred. Hence when there is no Result, it follows that favourable Destiny was absent.

Others have held the view that when it has been found that Destiny has been duly operative, and yet the result does not appear, this only indicates that there has been no human exertion

in the case; the case being analogous to that of there being no tree when there is no seed. In this view, Destiny is held to be represented by the Sun, the Moon and the other planets, as also by Vāyu, Agni and Apas; and it is set right by Human Exertion put forth with special care.—(205)

## VERSE (206—210).

OR, HAVING MADE PEACE WITH HIS ENEMY, HE MAY RETURN, ACCOMPANIED BY THE LATTER,—FINDING IN THIS THE DUE FULFILMENT OF THE THREEFOLD REWARD CONSISTING OF AN ALLY, GOLD AND TERRITORY.—(206)

IN HIS 'CIRCLE', HAVING PAID DUE ATTENTION TO THE ALLY WHO FORMS HIS REAR GUARD, AND ALSO TO THE ALLY WHO OCCUPIES THE POSITION NEXT TO THE SAID ALLY, THE KING SHALL OBTAIN THE RESULT OF HIS EXPEDITION EITHER FROM HIS FRIEND OR FROM HIS FOE.—(207)

THE KING DOES NOT PROSPER SO MUCH BY GAINING GOLD AND TERRITORY AS HE DOES BY OBTAINING A FIRM ALLY, EVEN THOUGH THIS LATTER BE WEAK, IF FRAUGHT WITH FUTURE POSSIBILITIES.—(208)

EVEN A WEAK ALLY IS HIGHLY COMMENDED, IF HE IS RIGHTEOUS AND GRATEFUL, HAS HIS PEOPLE CONTENT, AND IS LOYAL AND PERSEVERING IN HIS ACTIONS —(209)

THE WISE ONES DESCRIBE THAT ENEMY TO BE MOST TROUBLESOME WHO IS INTELLIGENT, OF NOBLE RACE, BRAVE, CLEVER, CHARITABLE, GRATEFUL AND FIRM.—(210)

GENTLEMANLINESS, KNOWLEDGE OF MEN, BRAVERY, COMPASSIONATE DISPOSITION, AND CONSTANT LIBERALITY ARE THE QUALITIES TO BE SOUGHT FOR IN A NEUTRAL.—(211)

### *Bhāṣya.*

For all men, agencies of happiness and unhappiness are set up by Destiny, which is also styled 'merit-demerit'; and when men fall into troublesome positions, they pacify the unfavourable Destiny leading to it by special efforts put forth towards the

alleviating of the evil influences; so that they are rendered favourable in the final result.(?)

The '*knowledge of men*' stands for *worldly experience*. The man who is worldly wise is capable of rendering great help.

The '*brave*' man is generally clever in business.

The '*compassionate*' man, is one who is of sympathetic nature, and always saves men from undue greed (?)

The '*liberal*' man is one who is always capable of providing a large amount of wealth. (206-211)

## VERSE (212)

EVEN THOUGH THE LAND (OCCUPIED BY HIM) BE SAFE, FERTILE AND CONDUCIVE TO THE INCREASE OF CATTLE, YET HE SHALL QUIT IT,—NOT MINDING HIS OWN SELFISH INTERESTS.—(212)

### *Bhāṣya.*

Even though the land be as described he shall quit it without delay.

'*Safe*'—free from molestation at the hands of robbers and others.

'*Fertile*'—productive of rich harvests, not dependent entirely upon rain.

'*Conducive to the increase of cattle*',—being in a wild state, and hence abounding in much fruit, or leaves or grass, the land becomes conducive to the increase of cattle; abounding in tradesmen and cultivators, free from famine and pestilence, and capable of maintaining large numbers of men (?)

This does not mean that he shall evacuate in a hurry the territory occupied by him; he should give up only that territory with regard to which he feels that if he continued to stay, the people of the land would try to recover it from him. So that as soon as he finds that evacuation would not mean any financial or strategical harm to himself and his allies, he shall give up the territory even though it possesses all the qualities described above.—(212)

———:O:———

## SECTION (15)

## General Precepts.

### VERSE (213).

HE SHALL SAVE HIS WEALTH FOR THE SAKE OF TROUBLE ; HIS WIFE HE SHALL PROTECT EVEN WITH HIS WEALTH ; AND HIMSELF HE SHALL CONSTANTLY PROTECT, EVEN WITH HIS WIFE AND HIS WEALTH.—(213)

*Bhāṣya.*

The rule here laid down is extremely difficult to follow.

'*For the sake of trouble*',—i.e. for the purpose of removing trouble ; just as smoke set up for the removal of mosquitoes is said to be 'for the sake of mosquitoes'. For that purpose '*he shall save wealth*'; there is no other use for saving wealth ; as wealth has been described as being for the sake of *giving* and *enjoying*. Hence it is with due consideration of this that the king shall regulate his expeditions and haltings and the winning over of the men of the other party.

Even with wealth he shall protect his wife ; the mention of the 'wife' includes all near relatives.

His own self is to be preserved ; and if he cannot preserve himself by any other way, he shall do it even by giving away all his property, or even if it become necessary, by giving up his wife ; for even after having abandoned his wife and property, he may take to the vow of silence and carry on a life of righteousness. Those persons who allow themselves to perish for the sake of wealth or wife,—for them the wife or the property serves no useful purpose, either visible or invisible, because such an act is neither righteous nor unrighteous.

This forsaking of the wife does not apply to young princes ..................(?)

Though this rule has been laid down in the section dealing

with the 'King's Duties', yet, since it serves a distinctly useful purpose, it should be taken as applicable to all persons.

*Objection* : "The king, having acquired a kingdom, and being possessed of much wealth, shall perform the *Ashvamedha* and other elabor ate sacrifices and enjoy unequalled pleasures ; what could the discontented people do to him (in consideration whereof he should give up the conquered territory)?"

There is no force in this obj ction ; even for men possessed of little wealth, many righteous acts are possible, in the shape of the telling of beads and so forth. It is only for certain acts of a peculiar character that wealth is necessary ; and under the circumstances stated it would not be right to displease the people ; hence such an act shall not be done in a hurry.—(213)

And the reason for it is as follows :—

## VERSE (214).

SEEING ALL KINDS OF TROUBLES FREQUENTLY CROPPING UP SIMUTANEOUSLY, THE WISE PERSON SHALL EMPLOY ALL THE EXPEDIENTS, COLLECTIVELY AS WELL AS SEVERALLY.—(214)

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Troubles*'—misfortunes due to human as well as divine agencies ; when these appear simultaneously, in connection with what forms the subject-matter of the present context, then, the *wise man shall employ all the expedients*', '*collectively*'—i.e. gifts preceded by conciliation, dissension preceded by conciliation, fighting accompanied by conciliation, gifts and dissension,—or gifts along with the others, and so on. That is, he shall make use of that particular expedient which he finds most suited to the occasion ; and he shall not sit cast down with the troubles.—(214)

How this shall be done is explained in the next verse.

## VERSE (215)

(a) THE EMPLOYER OF THE EXPEDIENTS, (b) THE END TO BE ATTAINED BY THE EXPEDIENTS AND (c) THE EXPEDIENTS THEMSELVES,—TAKING HIS STAND UPON ALL THESE THREE, HE SHALL STRIVE FOR THE ACCOMPLISHMENT OF HIS PURPOSE.—(215)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Sādhayēt kāryamātmanaḥ*' is another reading for the last quarter of the verse.

'*The employer of the Expedients*'—i.e. himself ; having obtained himself, he shall accomplish his purpose, as if he were his own friend.

'*All expedients*'—collectively and severally.

'*The end to be attained*'—this also refers to all kinds of business in general.

'*Taking his stand upon*'—having resorted to ; this *resorting to* is accomplished by pondering over them,—as to whether the expedients are efficient enough, what would be the proper thing to do, by what means is such and such end to be attained,—all this he shall duly ponder over.

'*All*'—refers to '*the three*',—and means *entirely.*

The meaning thus comes to be that—'for the accomplishment of his purpose he shall employ that particular expedient which may be capable of accomplishing it'.

As a matter of fact, the ends to be attained by means of the Expedients are endless in number ; so that it is not possible to mention them all in detail ; and hence they have been mentioned briefly and collectively. And all this shall be duly pondered over. It is with reference to the peculiar nature of the ends that it has been declared as follows :—

'The careful man makes peace ; the careful man has recourse to his own prowess ; both these should be equipped with statesmanship, without which one would be as good as a thief.'—(215)

## SECTION (16)

## Subsequent Routine.

### VERSE (216).

HAVING THUS DISCUSSED ALL THIS WITH HIS MINISTERS, THE KING SHALL TAKE EXERCISE AT MIDDAY; AND HAVING BATHED, SHALL ENTER THE INNER APARTMENT FOR THE PURPOSE OF TAKING HIS FOOD.—(216).

*Bhāṣya*

'*Thus*'—in the manner described above;—'*the king, having discussed all this*'—business described above, what, should be done in normal times and also in abnormal times, and what, under what circumstances—'*with his ministers*';—'*at midday*,' '*he shall take exercise*' and '*bathe*'. Throgh the mention of *bathing* is rather out of place in the present context, yet it has been mentioned in view of its tending to auspiciousness (and success). For the purpose of *bathing*, and for that of *eating*, the king shall—before bathing—enter the inner apartment. It is with a view to lay down this special fact that the author has had recourse to this form of summing up.—(216)

### VERSE (217)

THERE HE SHALL EAT THE FOOD THAT HAS BEEN THOROUGHLY TESTED BY SUCH SERVANTS AS ARE HIS OWN VERY SELF, AS ARE CONVERSANT WITH THE PECULIARITIES OF TIME, AND ARE UNCORRUPTIBLE,—WITH SUCH SACRED TEXTS AS ARE DESTRUCTIVE OF POISON.—(217)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*There*'—in the inner apartment.

'*Who are his own very self*',—i.e. who are as watchful of his safety as he himself would be.

'*Who are conversant with the peculiarities of time*'—who know what food and drink to give at what age and under what conditions.

'*Uncorruptible*'—who cannot be alienated; thoroughly trustworthy.

'*Servants*'—physicians and others.

The food shall be first '*tested*'—i.e. tasted by them; and then he shall eat it.

The 'testing' shall be done by expert physicians by means of fire, the partridge and such other things. If poison has been mixed with the food, it becomes discolred upon drying, which shows its impurity; and when poisoned food is thrown into the fire, it loses its odour, or becomes too sour; there is a discolouring in the flame of the fire also; and if birds are given the food, they suffer in various ways; e.g. the *Kokila* dies at the mere sight of poisoned food; the *Jīvaka* becomes withered, by merely looking at poison; the eyes of the *Chakora* (partridge) become destroyed,—and the *Muṣka* (?) begins to perspire.

He shall also repeat over suspected food those sacred texts that are believed to be destructive of poisons.—(217)

## VERSE (218)

**HE SHALL PURIFY ALL HIS THINGS BY MEANS OF LIQUIDS DESTRUCTIVE OF POISONS; AND HE SHALL BE CAREFUL TO WEAR ALWAYS SUCH GEMS AS ARE ANTIDOTES AGAINST POISON.—(218)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*All his things*'—all such things as clothes and the like that are to be used by the king,—'*he shall purify by means of liquids destructive of poisons.*'

'*Such gems as are antidotes against poison*'—e.g. the gem on the snake's hood, which may have been thrown out of the mouth of the *Garuḍa*-bird.

'*Careful*'—he should never miss it.

'*Always*'—at times other than that of eating also.—(218)

## VERSE (219)

**Thoroughly tested women, whose toilet and ornaments have been examined, shall serve him attentively with fans, water and incense.—(219)**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Thoroughly tested*'—examined by means of tests, as regards their character, honesty and behaviour ;—'*women*'—maids, maid-servants ;—'*with fans, water and incense*'—by means of these,—'*shall serve him*'—attend upon him ; and they shall have taken their baths and performed toilets carefully ;—'*attentively*'—not having their minds diverted elsewhere.

'*Toilet and ornaments examined*',—every possibility of tricks of toilet in regard to nails, hairs and the like being thoroughly examined ; sometimes weapons may be concealed, in these, by means of which they might strike the king without the least hindrance. The '*ornaments*' have to be examined, because these may be besmeared with poison, and with these they might touch the king's person.—(219)

## VERSE (220)

**He shall exercise similar caution with regard to conveyances, beds, seats and food, as also to bath, toilet and all kinds of ornaments —(220).**

### *Bhāṣya.*

'*Similar*'—i.e. as regards the removal of poison &c.—'*caution, he shall exercise*'.

The '*bath*' referred to here is the full bath when the head is washed with such perfumes as the *Rochana* (the yellow pigment obtained from the bile of the cow) and the like.

The '*seat*' has been mentioned here by way of illustration ; the sense being that he should exercise the same caution with regard to the conveyance and other things that he does while seated on a carefully prepared seat.—(220)

## VERSE (221)

HAVING DINED, HE SHALL AMUSE HIMSELF IN THE INNER APARTMENT, IN THE COMPANY OF THE LADIES; AND HAVING AMUSED HIMSELF, HE SHALL IN DUE TIME AGAIN ATTEND TO BUSINESS.—(221)

*Bhāṣya.*

In that same inner apartment, he shall, with a view to divert himself, sport, as long as it pleases him, with the '*ladies*',—his newly-wed wives.

'*In due time*'—i.e. after such time as is proper for such diversion; this is to be construed with what follows.

'*Having amused himself*'—i.e. after having shaken off his fatigue;—'*he shall*'—either alone by himself, or in the company of ministers,—'*again attend to*' such business as may present itself.—(221)

## VERSE (222)

DULY ROBED, HE SHALL AGAIN INSPECT THE FIGHTING MEN, AS ALSO ALL KINDS OF CONVEYANCES, WEAPONS AND ACCOUTREMENTS.—(222).

*Bhāṣya.*

Having come out of the inner apartment, he shall robe himself and '*inspect the fighting men*'—i.e. receive their salutes;—'*again*'—even though he may have inspected them in the morning, yet he shall inspect them again, every day. '*Āyudhīya*'—those who live by their weapons and are, consequently, very careful regarding them.

'*All kinds of conveyances*';—the inspection of these leads to their improvement, and makes the men in charge of them careful regarding their charge. Such supervision of servants is to be accompanied by proper punishments and rewards(?)—(222)

## VERSE (223)

HAVING ATTENDED TO HIS TWILIGHT DEVOTIONS, HE SHALL, WELL-ARMED, LISTEN, IN AN INNER ROOM, TO THE DOINGS OF PERSONS MAKING SECRET REPORTS, AND ALSO OF HIS SPIES.—(223)

*Bhāṣya.*

Though the attending to the twilight-devotions has already been enjoined for the three higher castes, yet it is re-iterated here, either with a view to show that for a time the king shall desist from the business of his people, or for the purpose of indicating the time for the next act.

'*In an inner room*'—in secret.

'*Persons making secret reports*',—i.e. reports pertaining to secret acts, done inside houses &c.; as also such '*spies*' as may happen to arrive at the time.

'*Doings*'—acts ; what they may have seen, heard or done. For this purpose all these persons shall be seen at this time.

This shall be done in such a manner that other people may not know it, and that he may be enabled to take steps to meet the circumstances reported to him. It has been declared that—'whenever any business presents itself, it shall be attended to, and not postponed ; as by the lapse of time it might become difficult, or even impossible.'—(223)

## VERSE (224)

REPAIRING TO ANOTHER APARTMENT, AND HAVING DISMISSED THOSE PEOPLE, HE SHALL AGAIN ENTER THE INNER APARTMENT, SURROUNDED BY THE WOMEN, FOR THE PURPOSE OF TAKING HIS FOOD.—(224).

*Bhāṣya.*

From the aforesaid room, he shall go to another apartment.

'*Those people*'—the secret reporters and the rest.

'*By the women*'—maid-servants,—'*surrounded, he shall again enter the inner apartment.*—(224).

## VERSE (225)

THEN, HAVING EATEN A LITTLE AGAIN, AND HAVING BEEN RECREATED BY THE SOUND OF MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS, HE SHALL SLEEP AND RISE AT THE PROPER TIME, FREED FROM FATIGUE.—(225)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*Kiñchit*,' '*a little*'—is an Indeclinable.

'*Musical instruments*'—such as the Flute, the Lute, the Tabor, the Kettle-drum, the Conch and so forth;—'*by the sound*' of these, soft and pleasing to the ear—'*becoming recreated*' '*he shall sleep*'-for some time ; i.e. pass a proper stretch of time in sleeping.—'*Freed from fatigue*'—i.e. having shaken off all physical discomforts—'*he shall rise*', for attending to his affairs.—(225)

VERSE (226)

THE KING, WHO IS FREE FROM DISEASES, SHALL ACT UP TO THIS ORDINANCE ; BUT WHEN INDISPOSED, HE SHALL ENTRUST ALL THIS TO HIS SERVANTS.—(226)

*Bhāṣya.*

'*This*'—what has gone before ;—beginning with the verse 'at midday or at midnight &c. &c.';—all that has been laid down here, '*he shall act up to*',-as far as he can do so. '*When indisposed he shall entrust it to his servants*'—employ them to do it. In this manner having arranged for his own safety, he successfully carries upon his own business, as also that of his subjects.—(226)

Thus ends Discourse Seventh.

# INDEX

## Adhyayas V. and VI.

### A


| | | Page. |
|---|---|---|
| Abstention from unrighteous appropriation—necessary for all | ... | 268 |
| Abstraction—destroys attachment ... ... ... | ... | 242 |
| Āchamana—purificatory—thrice ... ... ... | ... | 163 |
| ,, — ,, once—for woman ... ... | ... | 163 |
| ,, — ,, ,, ,, shudras ... ... | ... | 163 |
| ,, — after sleep ... ... ... ... | ... | 169 |
| ,, — ,, sneezing ... ... ... | ... | 169 |
| ,, — ,, food ... ... ... ... | ... | 169 |
| ,, — ,, spitting ... ... .. | ... | 169 |
| ,, — ,, telling a lie ... ... ... | ... | 169 |
| ,, — ,, drinking water ... ... ... | ... | 169 |
| ,, — before reading Veda ... ... ... | ... | 169 |
| Administration—Internal ... ... ... ... | ... | 354 |
| Administrator—of two, three, five or 100 villages ... | ... | 354 |
| *Adhyakṣapracharu*—quoted ... ... ... | ... | 317, 329 |
| *Agastya*—killed animals in sacrifice, for feeding dependents | ... | 27 |
| Agni—the king is ... ... ... ... ... | ... | 277 |
| Agnihotra ... ... ... ... ... | ... | 271, 331 |
| ,, —king cannot control ordinances relating to ... | ... | 280 |
| *Ahava* ... ... ... ... ... ... | ... | 337 |
| Alliance ... ... ... ... ... ... | ... | 377 |
| ,, —of two kinds ... ... ... ... | ... | 378 |
| Allies—brought together and alienated by Ambassador | ... | 321 |
| Ambassador ... ... ... ... ... | ... | 314 |
| ,, —qualifications of ... ... ... | ... | 319 |
| ,, —commended, if loyal &c ... ... ... | ... | 319 |
| ,, —peace and war dependent on ... ... | ... | 320 |
| ,, —brings together allies ... ... ... | ... | 321 |
| ,, —alienates allies ... ... ... | ... | 321 |
| ,, —transacts business by which people are disunited | ... | 321 |
| ,, —to explore the transactions of the foreign king | ... | 321 |
| ,, —to find out all about the foreign state ... | ... | 322 |

PAGE

*Amshupatta*—cleansed by Pel-fruit ... ... ... ... 146
'*Anadhyātmavit*'—explained ... ... ... ... 256,257
Anger—absence of—necessary for all ... ... ... ... 258
Animals—one-hoofed—forbidden ... ... ... ... 15
,, —unknown ,, ... ... ... ... 22
,, —solitary ,, ... ... ... ... 22
,, —five-nailed ,, ... ... ... ... 22
,, — —among—porcupine to be eaten ... ... ... 23
,, — ,, ,, Hedge-hog ,, ... ... ... 23
,, — ,, ,, Alligator ,, ... ... .. 23
,, — ,, ,, Rhinoceros ,, ... ... ... 23
,, — ,, ,, Totoise ,, ... ... ... 23
,, —having one line of teeth ,, ... ... ... 23
,, —killing—for food... ... ... ... ... 27
,, —commended—may be killed for the purpose of sacrifices ... 27
,, — ,, ,, ,, for feeding dependents 27
,, — ,, ,,—killed by *Agastya* ... ... ... 27
,, —eatable—sacrificial cakes made of ... ... ... 27
,, —killing of—for sacrifice—prescribed in connection with sacrifice named '*Sadrimshat—samvatsara*' ... ... 27
,, —no sin incurred in eating eatable ... ... ... 43
,, —eater and eaten—created by the Creator ... ... 43
Animal—not consecrated with sacred texts never to be eaten ... 47
,, —consecrated ,, ,, to be eaten ... ... 47
,, —may be made of butter—for sacrificing ... ... 47
,, — ,, ,, flour ,, ... ... ... ... 47
,, —never to be killed needlessly ... ... ... 47,48
, —created for sacrifice ... ... ... ... 49
,, —killing of—at sacrifices—is no 'killing' ... ... 49
,, —killed for sacrifice—attain advancement ... ... 49
,, —may be killed only (a) at *Madhuparka*, (b) for sacrifices, (c) and for Rites in honour of pitṛs ... ... ... 52
,, —the killing of—at these—one carries himself and the animal killed to the most excellent state ... ... 52
,, —killing of—which is not sanctioned by the Veda—shall not be done by the Householders ... ... ... 53
,, —shall not be by one living with the Teacher ... ... 53
,, — ,, , ,, by the Hermit ... ... ... 53
,, —to be killed by Householder for shrāddhas ... ... 53

PAGE

Animal—killing of—which is sanctioned by the Veda—is eternal ... 55
,, — ,, prescribed in Tantras—is modern ... ... 55
,, — ,, ,, —for pleasure—is conducive to unhappiness ... 56
,, —one who inflicts no sufferings on—obtains eternal happyiness ... ... ... ... ... 56
,, —killing of—not conducive to Heaven ... ... ... 57
,, —one who approves killing is the 'slayer' of ... ... 59
,, —one who cuts, is the 'slayer' of ,, ... ... 59
,, —one who kills ,, ,, ,, ... ... 59
,, —one who buys meat ,, ,, ... ... 59
,, — ,, sells meat ,, ,, ... ... 59
,, — ,, cooks meat ,, ,, ... ... 59
,, — ,, serves ,, ,, ,, ... ... 59
,, — ,, eats ,, ,, ,, ... ... 59
,, —flesh of—killed by dogs—is pure ... ... ... 158
,, — ,, ,, carnivorous animals—is pure ... ... 158
,, — ,, ,, Chāṇḍāla ,, ... ... ... 158
,, —won in battle, belongs to the person winning it ... 344
*Anila* ... ... ... ... ... ... 276
Anus—cleansed by earth ... ... ... ... ... 161
*Ānvīkṣikī* ... ... ... ... ... ... 302
Āpastamba—referred to ... ... ... ... ... 190
Army—consittuting the state ... ... ... ... 314
,, —dependent on Minister ... ... ... ... 320
,, —act of ruling rests upon ... ... ... ... 320
,, —disposition according to ground ... ... ... 393, 395
'*Artha*' means 'what is helpful' ... ... ... ... 347
Art of Government ... ... ... ... ... 346
Assault—one of the worst vices arising from anger ... ... 307
,, —to be shunned by the king ... ... ... ... 309
,, —more serious than cruel speech ... ... ... 305
Assistants of the king ... ... ... ... ... 292
Artisan's hand—always pure ... ... ... ... 155
Āshramas—all emanate from the Householder ... ... ... 260
,, —duly kept, lead to the highest state ... ... 260
Ass—forbidden ... ... ... ... ... ... 15
*Aṣṭakā*—animals to be killed for the offering at ... ... 52
Ātmavidyā ... ... ... ... ... ... 302

PAGE

Austerity ... ... ... ... ... ... 307
,, —means of purification ... ... ... ... 126
,, — for those learned in Veda ... ... ... 128
*Avanti*—king of—struck on abdomen by poisoned anklet—by his queen ... ... ... ... ... ... 371
Āyogava—water-offerings withdrawn from, ... ... ... 105

B

Battle—Those killed in—complete all sacrifices ... ... ... 121
Baudhāyana—Dharmasūtra—quoted ... ... ... ... 144
Barriers—broken by mistakes in Punishment ... ... ... 287
Battle—hours of ... ... ... ... 340,341,342,343,344
Bhagala—heretic ... ... ... ... ... ... 105
Bhagavadgitā—quoted ... ... ... ... ... 249
Bhṛgu—sprang from fire ... ... ... ... ... 1
,, —origin of—discussed ... ... ... ... 1,2
Bifurcation ... ... ... ... ... ... 377,381
Bird—unknown—forbidden ... ... ... ... ... 22
,, —pure, in dropping fruits ... ... ... ... 157
,, —carnivorous—forbidden ... ... ... ... 15
,, —living in village ... ... ... ... ... 15
,, —Sparrow ,, ... ... ... ... ... 16
,, —Plava ,, ... ... ... ... ... 16
,, —Hamsa ,, ... ... ... ... ... 16
,, —Chakravāka ,, ... ... ... ... ... 16
,, —village—cock ,, ... ... ... ... ... 16
,, —crane ,, ... ... ... ... ... 16
,, Rajjudāla ... ... ... ... ... ... 16
,, —Dātyuha ,, ... ... ... ... ... 16
,, —Parrot ,, ... ... ... ... ... 16
,, —Starling ,, ... ... ... ... ... 16
,, —carnivorous—forbidden ... ... ... ... 15
,, —living in villages ,, ... ... ... ... ... 15
,, —feeding by striking with beak ,, ... ... ... 18
,, —web-footed ,, ... ... ... ... ... 18
,, —Koyaṣṭi ,, ... ... ... ... ... 18
,, —that scratch with nails ,, ... ... ... ... 18
,, —that dive ,, ... ... ... ... ... 18
,, —that eat fish ,, ... ... ... ... ... 18
,, —Baka ,, ... ... ... ... ... 20

PAGE

Bird—Balākā „ ... ... ... ... ... 20
„ —Kākola „ ... ... ... ... ... 20
„ —Khañjana „ ... ... ... ... ... 20
Blankets—cleansed by soap-berries ... ... ... 146
Body—to be abandoned ... ... ... ... 252
„ —abode of material substances ... ... ... 251
„ —disgusting nature of ... ... ... ... 251
Bodily excretions—Twelve ... ... ... ... 161
Bone—cleansed by white mustard, cow's urine or water ... ... 14
Brahma-meditation possible for Householder also ... ... 215
„ „ Hermit also ... ... ... 215
Brahmasamstha ... ... ... ... ... 213
Brāhmaṇa—why over—powered by death ... ... ... 2,3
„ —overpowered by death, on account of omission of Vedic study 3
„ „ „ „ „ right conduct 3
„ „ „ „ „ slothfulness 3
„ „ „ „ „ defective food 3
„ —to perform Kṛchchhra penance once a year for unintentional eating of forbidden food ... ... ... 25
„ travelling away from home may do what he likes... ... 33
„ —following dead body—purified by bathing with clothes. 125
„ —eating food of dead non-sapiṇḍa—purified in ten days. 124
„ —carrying dead body of non-sapiṇḍa or natural relation—purified in three days ... ... ... 124
„ —purified by touching water ... ... ... 123
„ —drinking of wine by ... ... ... 114
„ —dead—should not be carried by Shūdra ... ... 125
„ —purified by Renunciation ... ... ... 128
„ —three things pure for—(1) not seen, (2) water-washed and (3) commended by word ... ... ... 153
„ —Breath suspension, highest austerity for ... ... 241
„ —gift to learned—is endless ... ... ... 331
„ —would behave like Shūdra, if punishment were not inflicted. 287
„ —King shall be tolerant towards .. ... ... 294
„ —King to wait upon ... ... ... ... 297
„ — „ to discuss state-secrets with ... ... 315
„ —learned—to be entrusted with all business ... ... 316
„ —offering to—is superior to fire-offerings ... ... 331
Brahmince treasure—of Kings—interminable ... ... ...330,334

PAGE

Brāhmaṇahood—attained by son of Gādhi, through discipline ... 300
Brahmā—keeps to his appointed task, through fear of punishment ... 286
'Brahma'—in the sense of *Veda* ... ... ... ... 274
*Brāhmaṇī Vashiṣṭha*— ... ... ... ... 296
*Bṛhaspati*—work of—constitutes 'commerce' ... ... ... 302
*Brāhmaṇa-bruva*— ... ... ... ... ... 334
*Buddha*— ... ... ... ... ... 302
Breath-suspension— ... ... ... 241
" " —consumes all sin ... ... ... 241
" " —destroys all taints— ... ... ... 242
Butter—sugar—sesame—needlessly cooked—forbidden ... ... 8

C

Calf—pure—in making the cow to flow ... ... ... 157
Camel—forbidden ... ... ... ... ... 23
Cane—purification of ... ... ... ... 145
Castes—would be corrupted by mistakes in punishment ... ... 987
Censcriousness— to be shunned by king ... ... ... 304
" —explained ... ... ... ... 305
*Chāṇḍāla*— ... ... ... ... ... 285
Chaṇḍāla—Shraddha for ... ... ... ... 107
City—Constituting the State ... ... ... ... 314
'Circle'—consists of (1) Intermediary, (2) Ambitious king, (3) Neutral King and (4) Enemy also of Minister &c. ... ... 375
*Chandra*—king created out of ... ... ... ... 275
*Chāṇakya*— ... ... ... ... ... 302
*Chārvāka*— ... ... ... ... ... 302
Commerce—Art of—to be learnt by the king ... ... 301
" " described ... ... ... ... 302
'Conduct'—stands for protecting the people and so forth ... ... 274
Consolidation—to be discussed by the king with ministers ... 313
Councillors— ... ... ... ... ... 314
Creatures—all governed by punishment ... ... ... 284
" —protected " " ... ... ... 284
Chariots—won in battle—belong to the person winning them ... 344
*Chakravāka*—bird—forbidden ... ... ... ... 16
Chhatrāka— ... ... ... ... ... 5
" —forbidden for the Hermit ... ... ... 201
Child dying before two years of age—to be burned ... ... 85
" " —shall have no sanctification by fire ... ... 85

PAGE

Child dying—shall have no water offered to it ... ... 85
,, ,, —no water-offerings—till three years of age ... 86
,, ,, —having teeth cut—water offerings opposed ... 86
Churṇikā (grammar) quoted ... ... .. ... 181
Cock—of villages—forbidden ... ... ... ... 16
,, —wild—permitted ... ... .. ... 17
,, —eater of village—becomes outcast ... ... ... 25
,, —unintentionally eating—one should perform the *Kṛchhra Sāntapana* or *Yati-Chāndrāyaṇa* ... ... ... ... 25, 26
Conchshells—cleansed by white mustard, cow's urine or water ... 147
Concentration—destroys all sins ... ... ... ... 242
,, —what is ... ... ... ... 243
Contemplation—all attributes that are not independent i. e. Sattva, ... Rajas and Tamas ... ... ... 242
Control of senses—necessary for all ... ... ... 268
Crane—forbidden ... ... ... ... 16
Cruelty of speech—to be shunned by king ... ... ... 305
,, —one of the worst vices arising from anger ... ... 307
,, —assault more serious than ... ... ... 309
,, —more serious than misappropriation of property ... 309
Curd and its preparations—permitted .. ... ... 14
Customs—duties ... ... ... ... 360

D

Dānavas—subserve others' purposes—only when pressed by punishment 286
,, —kept from destroying would— ,, 286
*Daṇḍa—is ruling, governing* ... ... ... ... 302
Darsha—and Paurṇamāsa not to be omitted by the Hermit ... 195
*Dātyūha*—bird—forbidden ... ... ... ... 16
Dead body—of Shudra to be carried by Southern gate ... ... 117
,, —of Brāhmaṇa ,, Western gate ... ... 117
,, —of Kṣattriya ,, Northern gate ... ... 117
,, —of Vaishya ,, Eastern gate ... ... 117
Death—overpowers learned and righteous Brāhmaṇas—why? ... 2, 3
,, —overpowers the Brāhmaṇa—through neglect of Vedic Study 3
,, ,, ,, —Right conduct ... ... 3
,, ,, ,, —Slothfulness ... ... 3
,, ,, ,, —Defective Food ... ... 3
,, —Impurity due to ... ... ... ... 66
,, —Purification of ... ... ... ... 66

PAGE

Death—Signs of approaching ... ... ... ... 216
Debts—Three—should be paid off before Renunciation ... ... 219
„ — „ —manner of paying ... ... ... 220
„ — „ —without paying off, if one seeks liberation, he fa'ls ... 222
Destiny—inscrutable ... ... ... ... 408
Dharma—three—departments of ... ... ... 213
Discrimination—necessary for all ... ... ... 268
Dog— pure, in catching of prey ... ... ... 157
„ —not pure itself ... ... ... 158
„ —flesh of animals killed by—is pure ... ... ... 158
Domestic duties of the king ... ... ... 327
Death—vice more harmful than ... ... ... 310
Decrees—of king—issued by beat of drum—shall not be transgressed 280
*Devas*—subserve other's purposes—only when pressed by punishment 286
'*Dharma*'—denotes 'what ought to be done' ... ... 273
Dice ... ... ... ... ... 305
„ —one of the most pericious of vices ... ... ... 307
Discipline—necessary for kings ... ... ... 299
„ —want of—destroyed Vena and other kings ... 300
„ —evil affects of—want of— ... ... ... 300
„ —good effects of ... ... ... 300
„ —what it consists in— ... ... ... 300
*Durantāni* ... ... ... ... 303
Duties of kings—not all based upon Veda ... ... 273
Drinking—one of the most pernicious of vices ... ... 307
„ —more perincious than gambling ... ... ... 308
Duty—Science of—superior to Science of Politics ... ... 273
„ —tenfold—for all ... ... ... ... 267
Duties in battle—of king ... ... ... ... 339
Earthenware—cleansed by re-baking—i. e. being placed in fire ... 147, 148
„ —to be thrown away, when touched by wine, urine, blood, pus and ordure ... ... ... 147, 148
Eightfold business—described ... ... ... 372
Elephants—won in battle—belong to him who wins them ... 344
Envy—to be shunned by the king ... ... ... 305
Evil—sources of ... ... ... ... 1
Excretions—Twelve ... ... ... ... 161
Exertion—human—importance of ... ... ... 408
Experience—in business—defined ... ... ... 311
Expressions—the Ambassador should understand ... ... 319

Exudations from trees—forbidden ... ... ... 7

F

Feathers—purification of ... ... ... ... 145
Fish—eating of—forbidden ... ... ... 20
„ —forbidden—always ... ... ... 20
„ —eater of—is 'eater of all flesh' ... ... ... 21
„ —to be avoided ... ... ... 21
„ —*Pāṭhīna*—may be offered to Gods and Pitṛs and eaten as such 22
„ —*Rohita*— „ „ „ „ 22
„ —*Rājīva*— „ „ „ and eaten on all occasions 22
„ —*Simhatuṇḍa* „ „ „ „ 22
„ —*Sashalka* „ „ „ „ 22
Fivefold group—described ... ... ... 373
Finance Minister ... ... ... 314
„ —qualifications ... ... ... 317
Flour-cakes—needlessly cooked—forbidden ... ... 8
Food—objectionable—described in detail ... ... ... 5
„ —of impure origin forbidden ... ... ... 5
„ —of the Gods—forbidden ... ... ... 8
„ —cooked by the householder for himself, and not for Gods and Pitṛs—is unfit for eating ... ... ... 8
„ —uncooked also—not to be eaten without making offerings ... 10
„ —distilled from pure flowers, fruits and roots—permitted ... 14
„ —penalty for eating forbidden ... ... ... 25
„ —unintentionally eating forbidden—one shall fast for a day ... 25
„ —for unintentional eating of—the Brāhmaṇa to perform *Kṛchchhra* once in a year ... ... ... 26
„ —special expiatory rites to be performed for *intentional* eating of ... ... ... ... 25
„ —stale ... ... ... ... 29
„ — „ — may be eaten if mixed with oils and not spoilt ... 29
„ — „ —may be eaten, if it is a sacrificial remnant ... 29
„ —made of barley—may be eaten, even though stale and not mixed with oils ... ... ... ... 31
„ —made of wheat—may be eaten, even though stale and not mixed with oils ... ... ... ... 31
„ —made of milk ... ... ... ... 31
„ —all movable and immovable things are—for the vital spirits ... 41
„ —all things created by Prajāpati, as ... ... 41
„ —the immovable is—for the mobile ... ... 42
„ —the fangless are—for the fangled ... ... 42

Food—the handless are—for those with hands ... ... 42
„ —cowards are—for the brave ... ... 42
„ —eaten out of—by parrots and eatable birds, are cleansed by scattering earth ... ... ... 149
„ —eaten out of—crows and vultures—to be thrown away ... 150
„ — „ — „ —only the portion touched. to be thrown away ... ... ... 150
„ —blown upon—cleansed by scattering earth ... ... 149
„ —sneezed at „ „ ... ... 149
„ —defiled by human hair and insects—cleansed by scattering earth 149
„ —defiled by black birds—prohibited ... ... 149
„ —covered by large number of insects—to be thrown away ... 150
„ —defiled by hair, purfied by the touch of gold, silver, gems and kusha ... ... ... ... 151
„ —begged by student is always pure ... ... ... 155
Force—sixfold ... ... ... ... 393
Fortification ... ... ... ... 323
Fortress—afflicted if king swerves from duty ... ... 290
Forts—different kinds ... ... ... ... 323
„ —' Bow ' ... ... ... ... 323
„ —' Earthen ' ... ... ... ... 323
„ —' Aquatic ' ... ... ... ... 323
„ —' Arborial ' ... ... ... 323
„ —' Human ' ... ... ... ... 323
„ —' Hilly ' ... ... ... ... 323
„ —' Hilly '—recommended specially ... ... ... 323
„ —protects king from injury ... ... ... 324
„ —advantages of ... ... ... ... 324
„ —to be equipped with weapons ... ... ... 325
„ — „ graces ... ... ... 325
„ — „ conveyances ... ... 325
„ — „ money ... ... 325
„ — „ Brāhmaṇas ... ... 325
„ — „ Artisans ... ... 325
„ — „ Machines ... ... 325
„ — „ fodder ... ... 325
„ — „ water ... ... 325
„ —in centre—spacious palace for the king ... ... 325
Forgiveness—necessary for all ... ... 268

G

*Gādhi*—son of—obtained Brahmanahood through discipline ... 300

Gambling—Drinking more pernicious than ... ... 308
,, —more serious than women ... ... ... 308
Gandharvas—subserve others' purposes only when pressed by Punishment 286
Garlic—forbiden .. ... ... ... 5
,, —Eater of—becomes outcast ... ... ... 25
,, —Eating—unintetionally—one should perform the *Kṛchchha* —*Sāntapana* or *Yatichāndrāyaṇa* ... ... 25
*Gautama*—lays down *immediated purrity* in certain cases of death 70,71
,, —on impurity attaching to Miscarrige ... ... 83
,, Quoted— 93, 99, 107, 118, 145, 150, 165, 167, 197, 277, 297
Gods—food of the—forbidden ... ... ... 8
Gestures—the Ambassador should understand ... ... 319
Gift to non-Brāhmaṇa is 'equable' ... ... ... 331
,, —nominal Brāhmaṇa is 'twofold' ... ... ... 331
,, —to a Teacher Hundred-Thousand-fold ... ... 331
,, —to a Brāhmaṇa thoroughly learned in Veda is endless ... 331
,, —to non-Brāhmaṇa—not impossible ... ... 333
,, —bring reward to giver, according to the character of the recipient 334, 335
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, his faith... ... 334, 335
Gods—afflicted if king swerves from duty ... ... ... 290
*Governor*—King regarded as just—when ... ... ... 288
Goods—won in battle belong to the person wining them ... 344
Government—Science of—to be learnt by the king ... ... 301
,, — ,, —relates to *Daṇḍa*, Ruling ... ... 302
,, — ,, —based on Induction ... ... 302
,, — ,, —to be supplemented by Science of Reasoning 302
,, — ,, —to be supplemented by science of Politics 302
,, — ,, ,, ,, soul ... 302
,, —Art of ... ... ... ... 346
Grains—won in battle—belong to the person winning them ... 344
,, —purification of ... ... ... ... 144
,,—meaning of 'large quantity' of ... ... ... 144
Grass—purification of ... ... ... ... 145
Greediness—the root of all vices ... ... ... 306
,, —should be subdued by the king ... ... 306
,, —equal to all vices ... ... ... ... 306

## H

Halting— ... ... ... ... ... 377
,, —of two kinds ... ... ... ... 378,380
*Hamsa*—bird—forbidden ... ... ... ... 16
Hands—cleansed by earth ... ... ... ... 161

*Haṭṭa*—part of village ... ... ... ... 358
Heretic—defined ... ... ... ... 110
Hermit—duties of ... ... ... ... ... 187
„ —to be self-controlled ... ... ... ... 187
„ —to have organs under subjection ... ... ... 187
„ —to retire to forest, when wrinkles appear ... ... 189
„ — „ „ on seeing child's child ... ... 189
„ — „ „ „ son's son ... ... 189
„ —to retire neither too early nor too late ... ... 189
„ —to repair to forest, after renouncing cultivated food and all belongings ... ... ... ... 190
„ — „ „ „ after making over his wife to his son's care ... ... ... ... 190
„ „ „ „ —may take his wife along with himself ... 190
„ —to take with him the sacred fire ... ... ... 190
„ „ „ ritualistic accessories ... ... 190
„ —to go to the forest ... ... ... ... 190
„ —details of the life of ... ... ... ... 192
„ —to offer five daily sacrifices with hermit's food... ... 192
„ —to wear skin ... ... ... ... 192
„ „ a bit of cloth ... ... ... 192
„ —bathe in evening and morning ... ... ... 192
„ —wear matted locks ... ... .. ... 192
„ — „ beard ... ... ... ... 192
„ —grow hair on his body ... ... ... 192
„ — „ parts ... ... ... ... 192
„ —may bathe thrice daily ... ... ... 193
„ —to make offerings out of his food ... ... 193
„ —to give alms „ „ ... ... ... 193
„ —to honour guests with water, fruits and herbs etc. ... 193
„ —remain engaged in vedic study ... ... ... 194
„ — „ meek ... ... ... ... 194
„ — „ conciliatory ... ... ... ... 194
„ — „ quiet ... ... ... ... 194
„ — „ ever liberal ... ... ... ... 194
„ —not to accept gifts ... ... ... ... 194
„ —should be compassionate towards all living beings ... 194
„ —should offer sacrificial oblations ... ... ... 195
„ —should not omit the Darsha and Paurṇamāsa... ... 195
„ —to offer sacrifices, not necessarily with *vrīhi* and other grains specially prescribed ... ... ... 197
„ —to rekindle fire, even without his wife ... ... 198

Hermit—to retire with his sacred fire, if he has been an *Agnihotri* ... 199
„ —to perform the Darshīṣṭi ... ... ... 199
„ — „ „ *Āgrayaṇa* ... ... ... 199
„ — „ „ *Chāturmasya* ... ... ... 199
„ — „ „ *Turāyaṇa* ... ... ... 199
„ — „ „ *Dākṣāyaṇa* ... ... ... 199
„ —to prepare cakes and boiled messes with pure grains fit for hermits ... ... ... ... 200
„ — „ „ and offer them to the gods and take to himself the remnant ... ... ... 200
„ —should eat vegetables ... ... ... 201
„ — „ „ flowers, roots and fruits ... ... 201
„ — „ „ products of pure trees ... ... 201
„ — „ „ oils produced from fruits ... ... 201
„ — „ avoid honey ... ... ... ... 201
„ — „ meat ... ... ... ... 201
„ — „ cabbages ... ... ... ... 201
„ — „ fragrant grass... ... ... ... 201
„ — „ pot-herb ... ... ... ... 201
„ — „ shleshmātaka ... ... ... ... 201
„ — „ should throw away all food before Āshvina ... 202
„ — „ „ his clothes ... ... ... 202
„ — „ not eat any product of ploughing ... ... 203
„ — „ „ village grown fruits and flowers . . ... 203
„ —may live on food cooked by fire ... ... ... 203
„ — „ „ only on what ripens in its own time... ... 203
„ — „ use the grinding stone ... ... ... 203
„ — „ „ teeth alone as mortar ... ... ... 203
„ —may lay by food for a month ... ... ... 204
„ — „ „ six months ... ... ... 204
„ — „ „ one year ... ... ... 204
„ — „ eat during day or night ... ... ... 205
„ — „ „ every fourth time ... ... ... 205
„ — „ „ „ eighth time ... ... ... 205
„ — „ live by the 'Chāndrāyaṇa' method ... ... 205
„ — „ eat only once at the end of every fortnight ... 205
„ — „ „ „ boiled barley gruel ... ... 205
„ — „ subsist only on flowers, roots and fruits fallen on ground by themselves ... ... ... ... 206
„ —live according to *Vaikhānasa* institutes ... ... 206
„ —shall roll about on the ground ... ... ... 206
„ — „ stand on tip-top during day ... ... ... 206

Hermit— ,, beguile his time by standing and sitting ... ... 206
,, — ,, go to water at the *Savanas* ... ... ... 206
(morning, midday and evening) ... ... 207
,, — ,, keep five fires during summer ... ... 207
,, — ,, have sky for shelter during rains ... ... 207
,, — ,, keep wet clothes during winter ... ... 207
,, — ,, gradually increase his austerities ... ... 207
,, — ,, offer libations, after bath, to gods and Pitṛs ... 207
,, — ,, emaciate his body by austerities ... ... 207
,, — ,, deposit *shrauta* fires within himself ... ... 208
,, — ,, be a *silent* hermit, without fires and house, living on roots and fruits ... ... ... 208
,, — ,, not try to obtain pleasure-giving objects ... ... 209
,, — ,, maintain celibacy ... ... ... 209
,, — ,, sleep on the ground ... ... ... 209
,, — ,, not care for shelter ... ... ... 209
,, — ,, live under trees... ... ... ... 209
Hermit shall—receive alms only enough for subsistence ... 209
,, ,, ,, ,, only from Brāhmaṇa-hermits or twice-born householders living in forest ... 209
,, —may bring food from the village ... ... ... 210
,, —shall receive food in hollowed hands or in a potsherd ... 210
,, — ,, eat eight morsels ... ... ... 210
,, — ,, observe restraints ... ... ... 210
,, — ,, attend to Vedic texts leading to knowledge of the Self 210
,, — ,, ,, ,, for purification of the body ... 211
,, — shall go to the North-East, straight on, till his body falls off ... ... ... ... 211
Heaven—attained by kings slain in battle ... ... ... 337
,, —attained by observing the rules of war ... ... 337
Hints—the ambassador should understand ... ... 319
Holiday—to the observed in the city, on account of a marriage in the Minister's family ... ... ... 280
Horses—won in battle—belong to the person winning them ... 341
Honey—forbidden for the Hermit ... ... ... 201
Horse—forbidden ... .. ... ... 15
Horn—cleansed by white mustard, cow's urine or water ... 147
House—cleansed by sweeping and sprinkling ... ... 147
,, —when its wall is touched by chaṇḍāla—cleansed by sweeping and sprinkling ... ... ... 148
,, —cleaning—when a dead body falls or the roof ... 148
Householder—to cook food and offer the 'great sacrifices' ... 9

Householder—cooking and not making offerings, transgresses the law 9
,, —not to eat uncooked food also—without offering to gods and Pitṛs ... ... ... 10
,, —the source of all Āshramas ... ... ... 260
,, —the best of all ... ... ... ... 262
,, —supports other Āshramas ... ... ... 262, 267
Hunting—to be avoided by king ... ... ... 304
,, —defined ... ... ... ... 305
,, —pernicious vice ... ... ... ... 307
,, —women more pernicious than .. ... 309

I

Impurity—due to death ... ... ... ... 66
,, —of relatives due to the death of a child that has cut its teeth 66
,, — ,, ,, ,, that has had its tonsure—even though teeth not cut ... ... 66
,, — ,, —on birth of a child ... ... 66
,, —due to death lasts for ten days—among Sapiṇḍas ... 70
,, — ,, ,, till the collection of bones ... ... 70
,, — ,, ,, one day only ... ... ... 70
,, —periods of—determined by character and learning of the man concerned ... ... ... 70
,, —lasts for three days—if the man is learned in Vedas ... 70
,, —immediate cessation—for special purposes ... ... 70
,, — ,, ,, —only for purposes of Vedic study ... 71
,, — ,, ,, for special acts only ... ... 72
,, —sapiṇḍa relationship as bearing on ... ... 73
Impurity—for artisans, mechanics, slaves and king's officers—ceases immediately—as regards touchability... ... 76
,, —Immediate cessation of ... ... ... 76
,, —Immediate—followed by bathing with clothes on ... 76
,, —Parturient—attaches to parents alone ... ... 77
,, — ,, — ,, mother alone ... ... 77
,, —due to birth among sapiṇḍas is the same as that due to death ... ... ... ... ... 77
,, —disability due to parturient—ceases for father, on bathing 79
,, —other forms of ... ... ... ... 80
,, —due to emission of semen—ceases on bathing ... 80
,, —due to seminal filiation lasts for three days ... ... 80
,, —due to birth of son ceases the same day, so far as receiving of gifts is concerned—if the man is pressed for livelihood ... ... ... ... 81

Impurity—due to touching of dead body of a samānodaka lasts for ten days ... ... ... ... 81
,, —attaching to pupil performing the Pitṛmedha for his dead teacher—lasts for ten days ... ... 82
,, —attaching to women on miscarriage-lasts for as many days as the months of pregnancy ... ... 82
,, —attaching to menstrual flow—ceases after bathing on cessation of flow ... ... ... ... 82
,, — ,, ,, ceases in three days ... ... 83
,, — ,, makes woman unfit for participating in Vedic rites ... ... ... ... 83
,, —attaching to death of child whose Tonsure has been performed—lasts for three days ... ... ... 84
,, — ,, ,, till appearance of teeth—immediate ... 84
,, — ,, ,, till Tonsure—one day ... ... 84
,, —due to death of a fellow-student—lasts for one day ... 87
,, —due to birth attaches to the *Samānodaka* relation comes after three days ... ... ... 87
,, —due to death of a woman whose sacramentary Rite has not been performed—attaching to her marital relations—lasts for three days ... ... ... 87
,, —during—for three days one should take food free from salines and salts ... ... ... ... 89
,, — ,,—one should not eat meat ... ... 89
,, — ,, ,, sleep apart on the ground ... ... 89
,, —attaching to relations living far off ... ... 90
,, —due to death of a relative in a foreign land—if heard within ten days—lasts for the remaining period of ten days ... 91
,, — ,, ,,—if heard after ten days—lasts for three days. 91
,, — ,, ,, ,, after a year—ceases on touching water ... ... ... ... 91
,, —due to hearing of death—after ten days—ceases by plunging into water with clothes ... ... 92
,, — ,, birth of a son ,, ,, ,, ,, ... 92
,, —in case of another death or birth occurring within ten days—lasts for the remaining period of ten days ... 93
,, —due to death of Teachers—lasts for three days ... 94
,, — ,, ,, Teacher's wife—one day and night ... 24
,, — ,, ,, ,, son ,, ,, ,, ... 94
,, — ,, ,, learned companion for three days ... 94
,, — ,, maternal uncle—two days and a night ... 94
,, — ,, pupil ,, ... ... 94

Impurity—due to officiating priest—two days and night ... 94
" — " Relation " ... ... 94
" — " due to death of king—lasts 'till the light' ... 95
" — " " non—learned Teacher—one day ... 95
" — " , ordinary Teacher " ... ... 95
" —lasts for ten days for Brāhmaṇa ... ... 96
" — " Twelve " Kṣattriya ... ... 96
" — " Fifteen " Vaishya ... ... ... 96
" — " one month...Shudra ... ... ... 96
" —not to be prolonged... ... ... ... 98
" —should not interrupt rites performed in fire ... ... 98
" —never attaches to man '*with fire*' ... ... 98
" —precludes *Darshapurṇamāsa and Vaishvadeva* ... 100
" —due to touching of *Chāndālā* ceases by bathing ... 101
" — " menstruating woman " ... ... 101
" — " outcasts " ... ... ... 101
" — " woman in child-bed " ... ... ... 101
" — " dead body " ... ... ... ... 101
" — " toucher of dead body " ... ... ... 101
" — " seeing uncle an things—ceases after water-sipping by repeating solar mantras and Pavamani verses 102
" due to touching fatty human bone—ceases on bathing ... 103
" — " " fatless bone—ceases on water-sipping and touching a cow, and looking at the sun ... 103
" —of a student ceases in three days—after completion of study ... ... ... ... ... 104
" —of student carrying the dead body of his Tutor and other elders, does not affect his observances... ... 117
" —does not attach to kings ... ... ... 118, 120
" — " " those keeping a vow ... ... 118
" — " " performers of sacrificial Sessons ... 118
" —Immediate purification from, for king on the majestic throne ... ... ... ... 119
" —over-for one killed in battle .. ... ... 121
" —in the case of persons beyond 'sapiṇḍa' ... ... 124
" —for Brāhamṇa carrying dead body of non-sapiṇḍa—ceases after three days ... ... ... 124
" — " " maternal relations ... ... 124
" — " in case of eating food of " " ten days .. 124
" — " by following a dead body—ceases on bathing with clothes on ... ... ... ... 125
" —of twelve excretions ... ... 161

Impurity—none-in drops falling from the mouth and not reaching the body ... ... ... ... 165
,, —none-in the hairs of the beard entering the mouth ... 165
,, —none-in what adheres to the teeth ... ... 165
,, —none-if drops of water fall on one who is helping others to wash ... ... ... ... 166
*Indra*—King created out of ... ... ... ... 275
,, —king is— ... ... ... ... 277
Initiatory Cermony—rightly called 'Vedic' ... ... 274
Inspectors—to be appointed by the king ... ... ... 329
,, —to supervise the acts of men serving the king ... 329
,, —duties of—described in Adhyakṣaprachāra ... ... 329
Intoxication—to be avoided by king ... ... ... 304
Injunction—meaning changed by other Pramanss ... ... 114

J

*Jābāla Shruti*—quoted ... ... ... ... 220
*Jambhakavidyā* ... ... ... ... ... 374
Jute—cleansed by white mustard ... ... ... 147

K

*Kārma* ... ... ... .. ... 305
*Kamasammuttha* ... ... ... ... ... 303
*Kāshmira* ... ... ... ... ... 294
*Kātyayana*—quoted ... ... ... ... 273
*Karaka* ... ... ... ... ... 5
,, —forbidden for Hermit ... ... ... 201
Kingdom—afflicted, if king swerves from duty ... ... 290
,, —to be ruled by a Kṣattriya of impartial mind ... 291
,, —constituting the State ... ... ... 314
King—duties of ... ... ... ... ... 273, 294
,, —purification of—immediate ... ... ... 120
,, Important position of ... ... ... ... 273
,, Combines in himself the guardian deities ... ... 120
,, —How to conduct himself ... ... ... 273
,, —possessed by the lords of world ... ... ... 121
,, —How came into existence? ... ... ... 273
,, —No impurity for ... ... ... ... 121
,, —How success accrues to? ... ... ... 273
,, —What ought to be done by? ... ... ... 273
,, —Duty of—of two kinds ... ... ... 273
,, —Duty of—pertaining to visible things ... ... 273

King— „ — „ invisible „ ... ... 273
„ —The title—does not stand for the Kṣattriya *caste* ... 273
„ —Duties of—not all based upon Veda ... ... 273
„ —Kṣattriya alone entitled to be ... ... ... 275
„ —*Non-Kṣattriya* may be ... ... ... 275
„ —to do protection ... ... ... ... 275
„ —by what prompted ... ... ... ... 275
„ —created by God ... ... ... ... 275
„ —created out of constituents of Indra ... ... 275
„ „ „ Vāyu ... ... 275
„ „ „ Yama ... ... 275
„ „ „ Sūrya ... ... 275
„ „ „ Varuṇa ... ... 275
„ „ „ Chandra ... ... 275
„ „ „ Kuvera ... ... 275
„ „ „ principal gods ... 276
„ surpasses all beings in glory ... ... ... 276
„ burns eyes and minds of men— like the sun ... ... 276
„ none on earth can gaze at ... ... ... 276
„ is Agni, on account of his purissace ... ... 277
„ „ Vāyu „ „ ... ... ... 277
„ „ Sūrya „ „ ... ... ... 277
„ „ Soma ... ... ... ... ... 277
„ „ Yama ... ... ... ... ... 277
„ —Kuvera ... ... ... ... 277
„ —Indra ... ... ... ... ... 277
„ —even though an infant, not to be despised ... ... 277
„ —not be regarded as human ... ... ... 277
„ —is the great divinity in human form ... ... 277
„ —fire of—consumes entire families and belongings ... 277
„ —when angry, destroys the man entirely ... ... 278
„ —assumes many forms for proper fulfilment of his duty ... 278
„ „ „ in view of his business ... ... 278
„ „ „ „ powers ... ... 278
„ „ „ „ time and place ... 278
„ —should never be regarded as a relative ... ... 278
„ „ „ „ friend ... ... 278
„ —may treat friends as enemies ... ... ... 278
„ „ „ enemies as friends ... ... ... 278
„ —never to be trusted ... ... ... ... 278
„ —should never be treated as an equal ... ... 279
„ —to be treated with caution ... ... ... 279

King—contains in himself the splendour of all ... ... 279
„ —goddess of fortune dwells in the favour of ... ... 279
„ —victory resides in the valour of ... ... ... 279
„ —death dwells in the anger of ... ... ... 279
„ —grants wealth when properly served ... ... 279
„ —inflicts death when angry ... ... ... 279
„ —contains the splendour of Sun, Moon and Fire ... ... 279
„ —those hostile to—perish ... ... ... 279
„ —destroys those hostile to him ... ... ... 279
„ —should be kept pleased ... ... ... 279
„ —all-powerful ... ... ... ... 280
„ —decrees of—should never be transgressed ... ... 280
„ —ordinance issued by—in accordance with Law and Custom—must be obeyed ... ... ... 280
„ —has no power to control ordinances relating to religious acts 280
„ —Control by—of religious texts—repugnant to *Smṛti* ... 280
„ —purpose of—served by punishment ... ... 281
„ —shall mete out punishment to all who act unlawfully ... 282
„ —to inflict punishment after consideration of time and space ... 282
„ — „ „ „ strength ... 282
„ — „ „ „ Learning ... 282
„ —what is harmful to—is 'unlawful' ... ... ... 282
„ —punishment is ... ... ... ... 283
„ —power of—holds by reason of punishment ... ... 283
„ —if punishment is not inflicted by—the strong would roast the week... ... ... ... ... 284
„ —should punish 'untiringly' all who deserve it ... ... 285
„ —is regarded as *just governor*—when he is truthful of speech 288
„ — „ „ —when he acts after due consideration ... ... ... ... ... 288
„ — „ „ „ he knows the essence of virtue 288
„ — „ „ „ „ „ pleasure 288
„ — „ „ „ „ „ wealth ... 288
„ —meting out punishment rightly prospers in his three aims ... 289
„ —influenced by affection and other feelings, in the matter of punishments, is destroyed by it... ... ... 289
„ —unfair in meting out punishment, is destroyed ... ... 289
„ —mean „ „ „ „ ... ... 289
„ —swerving from duty, is destroyed by punishment ... 289
„ — „ „ afflicts the kingdom, sages and gods and the world ... ... ... ... ... 290
„ —assistants of ... ... ... ... 292

King—cannot administer punishments, if he has no assistants ... 292
" — " " " " is demented ... 292
" — " " " " avaricious ... 292
" — " " " " is not disciplined ... 292
" — " " " " addicted to sensual objects ... ... ... ... ... 292
" —should be assisted by able councillors ... ... 292
" — " " army-commanders ... ... 292
" — " " administrators of justice ... ... 292
" —can administer punishment if he is pure ... ... 293
" — " " true to his word ... ... 293
" — " " acts according to law ... 293
" —can administer punishment if he has wise and good assistants 293
" —to be of just behaviour in his kingdom ... ... 294
" —to inflict rigorous chastisement on his enemies ... ... 294
" —shall be straightforward with his loved friends ... ... 294
" — " tolerant towards Brāhmaṇas... ... ... 294
" —fame of—spreads, if he behaves justly ... ... 294
" —fame of—diminishes, if he has no control over himself ... 295
" —created the protector of all castes and orders ... ... 295
" —incurs sin if he fails to protect people ... ... 296
" —shall wait upon learned Brāhmaṇas, in morning ... 297
" — " follow advice of Brāhmaṇas learned in threefold science 297
" — " wait upon elderly persons ... ... ... 298
" — " " " Brāhmaṇas, pure and learned ... ... 298
" — " learn discipline from elderly and learned Brāhmaṇas ... 299
" —with disciplined mind—never perishes ... ... 299
" —perishes through want of discipline... ... ... 299
" —even in forests, obtains kingdoms,—if disciplined ... 295
" —shall learn the Triad, from learned persons ... ... 301
" —to learn the Science of Government ... ... 301
" — " " of Reasoning ... ... ... 301
" — " " of the Soul ... ... ... 301
" — " Art of Commerce ... ... ... 301
" —to be anointed after he has passed through stage of studentship 301
" —to subdue his senses ... ... ... ... 303
" —can control subjects by controlling senses ... ... 303
" —shall shun the ten vices springing from love of pleasure ... 303
" — " " eight " " anger
" —addicted to vices springing from love of pleasure—becomes deprived of virtue and wealth ... ... ... 304
" — " " " anger—is bereft of soul ... ... 304

King—ten vices springing from love of pleasure—*to* be shunned by-
enumerated ... ... ... ... 304
„ —should shun hunting, sleeping during the day, censoriousness, women, intoxication, musical triad and listless wandering ... ... ... ... ... 304
„ —should shun tale-bearing ... ... ... 305
„ — „ „ Treachery ... ... ... ... 335
„ — „ „ envy ... ... ... ... 305
„ — „ „ slandering ... ... ... ... 305
„ — „ „ misappropriation of property ... .. 305
„ — „ „ cruelty of speech ... ... ... 305
„ — „ „ „ assault ... ... ... 305
„ — „ subdue greediness ... ... ... 306
„ —to appoint seven or eight ministers ... ... ... 310
„ — „ „ „ of good status ... ... 310
„ — „ „ „ versed in law ... ... 310
„ — „ „ „ of heroic temperament ... 310
„ — „ „ „ of noble family ... ... 310
„ — „ „ „ thoroughly tested ... ... 310
„ —work—involves great issues—cannot be done singly ... 313
„ —has need for ministers ... ... ... ... 313
„ —shall discuss with ministers all matters relating to peace and war... ... ... ... ... ... 313
„ — „ „ the 'state'... ... ... 313
„ —shall discuss with ministers the sources of Revenue ... 313
„ — „ „ the means of protection ... 313
„ — „ „ „ consolidation ... 313
„ —after consulting Ministers individually and collectively—should do what he considers beneficial ... ... ... 315
„ —shall discuss with the learned Brāhmaṇa, the highest secrets of state-craft ... ... ... ... 315
„ —shall entrust all business to the learned Brāhmaṇa ... 316
„ — „ act after consulting „ „ ... 316
„ — „ appoint additional ministers ... ... ... 316
„ — „ „ for his business industrious, clever and skilful men ... ... ... ... ... 317
„ —whose minister is intelligent, loyal and industrious,—deserves the kingdom ... ... ... ... 317
„ —shall appoint as ministers of finance, specially qualified men... 317
„ — „ „ „ in the interior of the palace, timid men ... ... ... ... ... 317
„ — „ „ as ambassador, one who is versed in sciences &c. 319

King—shall appoint as ambassador, loyal, honest, clever, possessed of good memory. ... ... ... ... 139
„ —Treasury dependent upon ... ... ... 320
„ —Realm dependent upon... ... ... ... 320
„ —to take up residence in a country which is open .. ... 322
„ — „ „ „ supplied with food ... 322
„ — „ „ „ inhabited by men of gentle birth 322
„ — „ „ „ free from diseases ... 322
„ — „ „ „ pleasant ... ... 322
„ — „ „ „ where vassals are obedient ... 322
„ — „ „ „ „ living is easily found ... 322
„ — „ „ in fort ... ... ... 323
„ —protected by fort is not injured ... ... ... 324
„ —to have in the centre of the fort, a spacious palace for himself ... ... ... ... ... 325
„ —domestic duties of .. . ... ... 327
„ —to wed a wife of the same caste as himself ... ... 327
„ — „ of noble birth ... ... ... 327
„ — „ charming .. ... ... ... 327
„ —shall wed a wife—beautiful ... ... ... 327
„ — „ appoint a household priest ... ... ... 327
„ — „ select officiating priests ... ... ... 327
„ — „ perform domestic rites ... ... ... 327
„ — „ „ Fire-sacrifices ... ... ... 327
„ — „ „ sacrifices with large fees ... ... 328
„ — „ provide luxuries for Brāhamaṇas ... ... 328
„ — „ have yearly revenue collected by trustworthy men ... 328
„ — „ stick to the scriptures in all business ... ... 328
„ — „ behave like father towards his people ... ... 329
„ — „ appoint efficient Inspectors ... ... ... 329
„ — „ honour Brāhmaṇa-students returned from Teacher's homes ... ... ... ... ... 330
„ — „ Brahmic treasure of ... ... ... 329
„ —duties of—during battle... ... ... ... 336
„ —when challenged, shall not shrink from battle ... 336
„ —War the last resource for ... ... ... 336
„ —best means for securing happiness for—consists of not shrinking from battle, attending on Brāhmaṇas and protecting the people ... ... ... 336
„ —slain in battle, without turning back, proceeds to Heaven ... 337
„ —shall not strike in battle, with concealed weapons ... 340
„ — „ „ „ „ barbed arrows ... ... 340

King—shall not strike in battle, with poisoned arrows ... ... 340
" — " " " " arrows with flaming shafts ... 340
" — " " one on the ground ... ... ... 341
" — " " a eunuch... ... ... ... 341
" — " " a suppliant ... ... ... 341
" — " " one with loosened hair ... .. 341
" — " " " who is seated ... ... ... 341
" — " " " who says 'I am yours' ... ... 341
" — " " " " is sleeping ... ... 341
" — " " " " without armour ... ... 341
" — " " " " naked ... ... ... 341
" — " " " " deprived of weapons... ... 341
" — " " " " a non-combatant ... ... 341
" — " " " " engaged in fighting another person 341
" — " " " " is in difficulties regarding weapons... ... ... 342
" — " " " " in distress ... ... 342
" — " " " " severely wounded ... ... 342
" — " " " " frightened ... ... 342
" — " " " " turned back ... ... 342
" —choice portion of the spoils of war shall be presented to ... 344
" —to take the choice portion of the spoils of war ... ... 345
" —to distribute among soldiers what has been won by all collectively ... ... ... ... ... 345
" —shall strive to obtain what has not been obtained ... 346
" — " preserve what he has obtained ... ... 346
" — " augment what has been preserved ... ... 346
" — " bestow on suitable recipients what has been augmented 346
" — " recognise the four means of accomplishment ... 346
" — " carry into execution the four means ... ... 346
" — " acquire by force ... ... ... ... 346
" — " have his force operative ... ... ... 347
" — " display manliness ... ... ... 347
" — " conceal his secrets ... ... ... 347
" — " follow up the enemy's weak points ... ... 347
" —the world stands in awe of, if his force is operative ... 347
" —shall subdue all men by force ... ... ... 347
" —shall act without guile ... ... ... ... 348
" — " fathom the guiles of others ... ... ... 348
" —to fathom " through the angry ... 348
" — " " through the greedy ... 348
" — " " the frightened ... ... 348

King—to fathom the guiles of the ill-treated ... ... 348
,, —enemy should not know the weak points of ... ... 349
,, —should know the weak points of the enemy ... ... 349
,, — ,, guard his departments ... ... ... 349
,, — ,, guard his weak points like the tortoise ... ... 349
,, — ,, ponder over plans, like the heron ... ... 350
,, — ,, exert his power like the lion ... ... ... 350
,, — ,, snatch like the wolf ... ... ... 350
,, — ,, double in retreat like the hare ... ... 350
,, —engaged in war, should subdue other enemies by means of conciliation &c. ... ... ... ... 351
,, —to employ force only when other expedients fail ... 351
,, —conciliation and force best recommended for ... ... 351
,, —shall preserve his kingdom and destroy the enemies,—like the weeder ... ... ... ... 352
,, —oppressing his kingdom, loses his kingdom and also life ... 352
,, —Life of—perishes by oppression ... ... ... 353
,, —prospers through proper administrator ... ... 354
,, —to appoint an administration for two, three, five or 100 villages ... ... ... ... ... 354
,, —to supply one picket to each administrator ... ... 354
,, —to appoint the lord of 1,10,20,100,1000. villages ... 354
,, —to appoint one lord to each village... ... ... 354
,, —to receive from village lord, the supplies from villages ... 355
,, —shall appoint one minister over all village-lords... . 356
,, — ,, ,, superintendent in each town ... ... 356
,, — ,, protect his people from his officers ... ... 357
,, — ,, confiscate the property of officers taking money from business-men ... ... ... ... 358
,, — ,, fix daily wages for women and menials in his service in proportion to the work done ... ... 357
,, — ,, pay one Paṇa per day to the inferior servant ... 359
,, — ,, ,, 6 Paṇas to superior servants ... ... 359
,, — ,, ,, also one Droṇa of grain per month ... ... 359
,, — ,, ,, also clothing every sixth month ... ... 359
,, —should realise duties from Traders ... ... 360
,, — ,, ,, after due consideration of expenses and risks involved 360
,, — ,, levy taxes after due investigation ... ... 361
,, — ,, ,, as tax, the fiftieth part, in the case of cattle ... 361
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, ,, gold ... ... 361
,, — ,, ,, ,, 8th, 6th or 12th ,, ,, grains ... 361
,, — ,, ,, ,, 6th part ,, trees ... 362

King—should levy as tax, 6th part meat ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, ,, honey ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ... ... clarified Butter 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ... ... perfumes ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ... ... medicinal herbs 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ... ... poisons ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ... ... flowers ... 362
,, —shall levy tax of 6th part on fruits ... .. ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, roots .. ... ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, leaves ... ... ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, vegetables ... ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, grasses ... ... ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, skins ... ... ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, cane ... ... ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, earthenware ... ... 362
,, — ,, ,, ,, ,, stoneware ... ... 362
,, —never to levy tax on Shrotriya ... ... ... 362
,, —should not allow Shrotriya to suffer from hunger ... 363
,, —shall provide fair living for Shrotriya ... ... 363
,, — ,, protect Shrotriya ... ... ... ... 363
,, —Life and kingdom of—augmented, by the acts of Shrotriya... 363
,, —shall levy tax on business ... ... ... 363
,, —to extact, as tax, one day's work in a month from artisans, and mechanics and Shudra ... ... ... 364
,, —shall avoid over-taxing ... ... ... 364
,, —should be severe—mild... ... ... ... 365
,, —shall depute minister, when himself tired ... ... 365
,, — ,, protect the people... ... ... ... 365
,, —Protection of people, the highest duty of ... ... 366
,, —Daily routine of work of ... ... ... 367
,, —to rise and perform ablutions during the last watch of the night ... ... ... ... ... 367
,, —to pour libations into fire, early ... ... ... 367
,, —shall honour the Brāhmaṇas ... ... ... 367
,, — ,, enter the Hall of Audience ... ... ... 367
,, — ,, welcome subjects in the Audience Hall ... ... 367
,, — ,, take counsel with the minister, after dismissing the people ... ... ... ... 367
,, —to hold counsel unobserved, in a retired place ... ... 368
,, —should, when taking counsel, send away the idiot ... 366
,, — ,, ,, ,, , dumb ... ... 369

King—should, when taking counsel, send deaf ... ... 369
" — " " " " animals ... ... 369
" — " " " " aged persons ... 369
" — " " " " women ... ... 369
" — " " " " foreigners ... ... 369
" — " " " " the sick ... ... 369
" — " " " " the maimed ... ... 369
" —shall be careful with regard to women and disgraced persons 369
" — " deliberate on *artha-dharma-kāma* at mid-day or midnight 370
" — " deliberate on the marrying of daughters at midday or midnight 370
" — " " on the guardianship of sons " ... 370
" — " " on the sending of ambassadors " ... 371
" — " " on affairs of the Harem " ... 371
" — " " on the work of spies ... ... 371
" —shall enter Harem protected by the Body-guard ... 371
" — " visit the pure and trusted queen ... ... 371
" — " prohibit association of the maids with strangers with shaven head ... ... ... ... 371
" — " " " " matted locks ... 371
" — " deliberate on 'eight-fold business' ... ... 372
" — " " " 'five-fold group' ... ... 372
" — " " upon affection and disaffection ... ... 372
" — " " on conduct of the circle ... ... 372
" — " " conduct of the intermediary ... ... 375
" — " on the action of ambitious kings ... ... 375
" — " on the action of neutral kings ... ... 375
" — " " " enemy ... ... ... 375
" " deliberate on minister ... ... ... 375
" " Fortress ... ... ... ... 375
" " treasury ... ... ... ... 375
" " army ... ... ... ... 375
" shall regard his immediate neighbour as 'enemy' ... 376
" " " the person helping the enemy, as enemy ... 376
" " " the enemy's immediate neighbour, as his friend ... 376
" " " as 'neutral' the king living beyond the immediate neighbourhood of his enemy ... ... 376
" " win over all kings by means of conciliation etc. ... 376
" Six Measures of Policy—for ... ... ... 376
" shall have recourse to Halting, Marching, Alliance, War, Birfurcation or Shelter after due consideration ... 377
" —when to resort to peace? ... ... ... 382
" — " war? ... ... ... ... 383

King—when to resort march against enemy? ... ... 383
„ — „ sit quiet? ... ... ... 383
„ — „ bifurcate his force ... ... ... 384
„ — „ seek shelter? ... ... ... 384
„ —to serve as preceptor the king who is fit to chastise enemies 385
„ —to resort to war, if he finds something wrong with his shelterer 385
„ —so to act as not to allow others to excel him ... ... 386
„ —shall ponder over future and present and past conditions ... 387, 388
„ —Sum total of State Policy—for ... ... ... 388
„ —how to wage war ... ... ... ... 390
„ —to start on expedition during Mārgaśīrṣa ... ... 390
„ — „ „ or towards Phālguna and Chaira ... 390
„ —to march as soon as he finds his forces efficient—even picking up quarrel ... ... ... ... 391
„ —to march when enemy is in trouble ... ... 391
„ —to make arrangements at the base .. ... ... 392
„ —depute spies ... ... ... ... 392
„ —clear three kinds of roads ... ... ... 392
„ —to equip his six-fold force ... ... ... 392
„ —when to advance against enemy's capital ... ... 392
„ —to be on guard against doubtful ally ... 394
„ — „ „ against one who has left him and then come back ... ... .. ... 394
„ —march his army in the form of a staff ... ... 395
„ — „ cart ... ... ... 395
„ — „ Boar ... ... ... 395
„ — „ alligator ... ... ... 395
„ — „ needle ... ... ... 395
„ — „ Garuḍa-Bird ... ... ... 395
„ —when to extend his forces ... ... ... 396
„ —himself to encamp in the 'Lotus array' ... ... 396
„ —where to station Commander-in-Chief ... ... 396
„ — „ „ General ... ... ... 396
„ —to regard that quarter as 'East' or 'front' from where he apprehends danger ... ... ... ... 396
„ —shall station loyal pickets with arranged signals ... 397
„ — „ make a small army fight in close combination ... 398
„ —may extend large army ... ... ... 398
„ —to fight with horses and chariots on even ground ... 399
„ — „ „ boats and elephants on marshy ground ... 399
„ — „ „ bows on bushy ground ... ... 399
„ — „ „ swords etc. on firm ground ... ... 399

King—shall have vanguard consisting of the men from Kurukṣetra ... 400
" — " " Matsya ... ... ... 400
" — " " Pāñchāla ... ... ... 400
" — " " Shūrasena ... ... ... 400
" — " encourage and test his army ... ... ... 400
" —shall mark the behaviour of his men, while fighting ... 401
" —to halt after having laid siege ... ... ... 402
" —when besieging, shall harrass the enemy ... ... 402
" —shall destroy tanks, ditches and walls ... ... 402
" — " alienate from his enemy all who are alienable ... 403
" —to keep himself informed of enemy's doings ... ... 403
" —to conquer his enemy by means of conciliation, gift and dissension, not by war ... ... ... ... 404
" —to avoid war ... ... ... .. 404
" —to fight when other expedients fail ... ... 404
" —how to consolidate conquered territory ... ... 406
" —on conquest, shall grant remissions and proclaim amnesties ... 406
" —shall set up in the conquered territory a member of the defeated king's family—with whom treaty should be made ... 407
" —to honour the conquered king and all leading men ... 407
" —to depend upon destiny and exertion—the latter being more important ... ... ... .. 408
Knowledge and Action—combination—necessary for Liberation ... 261
" —necessary for all ... ... ... ... 268
*Kṛchchhra—Sāntapana*—to be performed for unintentionally eating garlic, mushroom, village-pig &c. ... ... 25
*Kṛchchhra*—to be performed once in a year—for the eating of forbidden food... ... ... ... ... 26
*Kṣāra*—explained... ... ... ... ... 89,90
Kṣattriya—purified by touching weapons and conveyance ... 123
*Kṣattriya*—with Vedic training—to do the protecting of all ... 274
" —alone entitled to kingship ... ... ... 275
" —a substitute of—may be accepted—in hisabsence ... 275
" —duty of—not to shrink from battle ... ... 336
" —killed in battle piecesr the sun ... ... ... 338
" —turning back in battle and slain, takes up his master's sins ... ... ... ... ... 343
" — " " " all his merit goes to his master ... ... ... ... ... 343
*Kusha*—purification of ... ... ... ... 145
*Kuṭaja*— ... ... ... ... ... 287
*Kuvera*—king created out of ... ... ... 275

*Kuvera*—king is ... ... ... ... ... 277
,, —obtained lordship of wealth, through discipline ... 300

L

Land—cleansed by cleaning, smearing, sprinkling, scraping and lodging of cars ... ... ... ... 149
,, —containing bones should be dug out and some earth thrown away ... ... ... ... ... 149
Law—Punishment is—born of the Lord ... ... ... 281
,, —administered by punishment ... ... ... 284
,, —spoken of as '*Shāstra*' ... ... ... 311
Leader—Punishment is ... ... ... 283
Learning—to be taken into consideration, in meting out punishment 283
,, —stands for *Vedic* learning ... ... ... 285
*Lord*—is Prajāpati ... ... ... ... 276
Leather—purification of ... ... ... ... 145
Leeks—eather of—become outcast ... ... ... 20
,, —eating nnintentionally—one should preform *Krchchhra Sāntapana* or *Yati-chāndrayaṇa* ... ... ... 25
Libcration—attained by knowledge and action combined ... 213
,, —mind to be turned towards ... ... ... 220
Life—What shortens ... ... ... ... 267
Linen—cleansed by white mustard ... ... ... 14

M

*Madhuparka*—Eating of meat at—discussed ... ... 38
,, —animals to be killed for ... ... ... 52
Mahābhārata— referred to ... ... ... 192,211,249
Manu—King—obtained kingdom through discipline ... ... 300
'*Kāmsa*'—lit.ral meaning of ... ... ... ... 64
Man—free from guile—is hard to find ... ... ... 286
Marching ... ... ... ... ... 377
,, —of two kinds ... ... ... ... 378
*Maula*—Minister of Finance—described ... ... ... 312
*Māyā*—in the sense of *treachery* ... ... ... 348
Meat— unconsecrated—forbidden ... ... ... 8
,, —of the slaughterhouse ,, ... ... ... 18
,, —dried ,, ... ... ... ... 18
,, —Lawful and forbidden ... ... ... ... 32
,, —Eating and avoiding of ... ... ... 32
,, — ,, ,,—laws relating to—apply to Shudras also ... 32
,, —never to be eaten unless offered to the gods ... ... 33

Meat—Consecrated—to be eaten ... ... .. 34
,, —may be eaten at the wish of Brāhmaṇas ... ... 34
,, — ,, ,, when one is invited legally ... ... 34
,, — ,, ,, life is in danger ... ... ... 34
,, —nature of injunction of eating consecrated—discussed ... 35
,, —eating of—at *Madhuparka*—discussed ... ... 38
,, —may be eaten even by the Student—when life is in danger ... 40
,, —even forbidden—to be eaten when life is in danger ... 41
,, —to be eaten in cases of illness also ... ... ... 41
,, —to be eaten at sacrifice—is the Divine Law ... ... 43
,, —no sin incurred in eating—when bought and then offered to gods or Pitṛs ... ... ... ... 43
,, — ,, ,, ,, obtained by oneself and then offered to Gods and Pitṛs ... ... ... ... 43
,, — ,, ,, ,, presented by others ... ... 43
,, —to be offered to Gods to be placed on a clean spot—with the formula 'this is for the Gods' ... ... ... 44
,, —Buying of—discussed ... ... ... ... 44
,, —not to be eaten unlawfully—in normal times ... ... 45
,, —the sin of eating needlessly—greater than that of killing animals ... ... .. ... ... 46
,, —not eating—when legally invited—one incurs sin ... 46
,, —never to be eaten, unless consecrated with sacred texts ... 47
,, —consecrated with sacred texts—to be eaten ... ... 47
,, —not obtainable without killing ... ... ... 57
,, —to be avoided—as not obtainable without killing ... 57
,, —one should abstain from eating all ... ... ... 58
,, —by avoiding improper—one avoids disease and unpopularity 58
,, —buyer of—is 'slayer of animals' ... ... ... 59
,, —seller ,, ,, ... ... ... ... 59
,, —cooker ,, ,, ... ... ... ... 59
,, —server ,, ,, ... ... ... ... 59
,, —cutter ,, ,, ... ... ... ... 59
,, —eater ,, ,, ... ... ... ... 59
,, — ,,—without worshipping Gods and Pitṛs—is great sinner ... 62
,, —merit of avoiding—equal to that of performing *Ashvamedha* every year ... ... ... ... 62
,, —abstention from—more meritorious than subsisting on fruits and roots and food of Hermits ... ... ... 63
,, —'meatness' of ... ... ... ... 64
,, —why called *māṁsa* ... ... ... ... 64
,, —no sin in eating—being the 'way of living beings' ... 64

Meat—abstention from—conducive to great rewards ... ... 64
Meditation—means of recognising Inner Soul ... ... 246
,, —a mental attitude... ... ... ... 255
Men—sufferings of ... ... ... 235, 236, 237, 238
Menstruation—means of purification for women of uncl:an mind 128
Merchandise—spread out for sale is pure ... ... ... 155
Milk-rice—needlessly cooked—forbidden ... .. ... 8
Milk—of women—forbidden ... ... ... ... 13
,, —preparations of— may be eaten, even when kept long ... 31
,, —of sheep—forbidden ... ... ... ... 11
,, —the irregular cow—forbidden ... ... ... 11
,, —cow without calf ,, ... ... ... 11
,, —wild animals forbidden ... ... ... 11
,, —buffalo—permitted ... ... ... ... 11
,, —curdled—of the cow—forbidden ... ... ... 7
,, —of the cow—unfit for eating for ten days ... ... 11
,, —camel—forbidden ... ... ... ... 11
,, —one-hoofed animals—forbidden ... ... ... 11
Mind—contaminated by evil intentions ... ... ... 130
,, —purified by truthfulness ... ... ... 130
Miscarriage—so called after third month ... ... ... 83
Metals—baser—won in battle belong to the person winning them ... 344
Minister—in charge of all village-Lords ... ... ... 356
Misappropriation of Property—to be shunned by the king ... 305
,, ,, —one of the worst vices arising from anger ... ... ... 307
,, ,, —cruel speech more serious than ... 309
Ministers—of Finance—to be '*maula*' ... ... ... 312
,, —Testing of—deprecated by some ... ... 313
Moon—keeps to its path, through fear of Punishment ... ... 286
Ministers—to help king in discussing Peace and War, State, Sources of Revenue, Means of Protection and Consolidation ... 313
Musical Triad—to be shunned by king ... ... ... 304
Mines and stores ... ... ... ... 317
Ministers—to be consulted generally and collecting ... ... 315
,,—additional—expert in collecting revenue and thoroghly tested 316
,,—of finance —shoulb be brave expert, logh-bore and honest ... 317
,,—in the interior after palace—should be fimid ... ... 317
,,—of mines and stores ... ... ... ... 317
,,—army dependent on ... ... ... ... 320
,,—qualifications of ... ... ... ... 310
,,—nursity of appointing at least 7 ord ... ... 311

Ministers—methods of testing ... ... ... ... 312
*Mūla* (Radish)—unfit to be eaten ... ... ... 6
Mule—forbidden... ... ... ... ... 15
Mushroms—forbidden ... ... ... ... 5
,,—by eating—twice-born person becomes outcast ... 25
,,—unintentionally eating—one should perform the *kṛchchhra sāntapana* or *yati chāndrāyaṇa* ... ... ... 25

N

*Nahuṣa*—king—perished through want of discipline .. ... 300
*Naya* .. ... ... ... ... ... 301
'Needlessly cooked' food—described ... ... ... 8
*Nimi*—king—perished through want of discipline ... ... 300
*Nivīta* ... ... ... ... ... 332
*Nirukta*—describes *Chhatraka* ... ... ... 5
*Niyoga*—permissible only under orders of elders ... ... 181

O

Onions—forbidden ... ... ... ... 5
,,—eater of—becomes an outcast ... ... ... 25
,, —unintentionally eating—one should perform the *kṛchchhra-sāntapana* or *yati-chāndrāyaṇa* ... ... ... 25
Option—in the case of Veda and in that of Smṛti—discussed ... 19

P

Pāṇini... ... ... ... ... ... 84
Parāshara—referred to ... ... ... ... 107
Parrot—forbidden... .. ... ... ... 16
'*Padmā*'—in the sense of *greatness* ... ... ... 279
*Pāñchāla* ... ... ... ... ... 294
*Paijavana*—king—perished through want of discipline ... 300
*Pāṭala* ... ... ... ... ... 287
Palace—for king in fort—should be well—guarded, equipped with seasons &c. ... ... ... ... 325
Peace and war—to be discussed by the king with his ministers ... 313
,,—dependent upon Ambassador ... ... ... 320
Policy—six measures : Alliance, War, March, Halt, Bifurcation and Seeking Shelter ... ... ... ... 376
Politics— science of—inferior to science of Duty ... ... 273
,, — ,, —is not what is meant by '*Naya o vinaya*' ... 301
Priests—to be appointed by the king ... ... ... 327
*Prajāpati*—created Punishment ... ... ... 283
*Pṛithu*—king—obtained Kingdom through discipline ... ... 300

Protection—of all—to be done by the Kṣattriya ... ... 274
Protection—means *guarding* ... ... ... 275
„ —means *Saving from trouble* ... ... ... 275
„ —to be done by the king ... ... ... 275
„ —means of—to be discussed by the king with Ministers 313
'Personality'—consists of Inner soul, Internal organ, Intellect & Body 129
„ —nature of ... ... ... ... 237
Pigs—village—eating of—forbidden ... ... ... 20
„ „ „ —makes one outcast ... ... 25
„ „ —unintentionally eating—one shall perform *Kṛcchra Sāntapana or Yaticāndrāyaṇa* ... ... 25
*Pitṛs*—at rites in honor of—animals to be killed ... ... 52
*Plava*—bird—forbidden ... ... ... ... 16
*Prajāpati*—created all things as food for the Vital Spirit ... 41
*Prājāpatya*—Sacrifice—at which all belongings are given away ... 223
„ — „ —not human sacrifice ... ... 223
*Prāṇāyāma*—(see under Breath suspension) ... ... 34
*Proṣita*—meaning of the term ... ... ... 34
Prompting agent—defined ... .. ... ... 60
Prompter—not the doer ... ... ... ... 60
Punishment ... ... ... ... ... 281
„ —created by the Lord ... ... ... 281
„ ...is Law born of the Lord ... ... ... 281
„ —is an incarnation of divine glory ... 281
„ —is the protector of all creatures ... ... 281
„ —origin of—described ... ... ... 281
„ —created by Prajāpati ... ... ... 281
„ —is not an inferrior form of Law ... ... 281
„ —not created out of material substance ... ... 281
„ —created before the king ... .. ... 281
„ —fear of—makes beings subserve the experiences of men 281
„ — „ —keeps men from swerving from duties ... 281
„ —capable of being inflicted upon immovable things ... 282
„ —to be meted out to all who act unlawfully ... 282
„ —to be meted out after due consideration of time and place 282
„ — „ „ „ strength ... 282
„ — „ „ „ learning ... 282
„ —wrongly inflicted—brings trouble to the king ... 283
„ —is 'King' ... ... ... ... 283
„ —is 'Man' ... ... ... ... 283
„ —is 'Leader' ... ... ... ... 283

Punishment—is 'Ruler' ... ... ... ... 283
" —is 'Surety' of the Law of the four stages ... 283
" —king's power is held by ... ... ... 283
" —has no regard for even powerful men ... ... 283
" —brings powerful men under its control ... ... 283
" —all business is led by ... ... ... 283
" —is 'ruler' in figurative sense ... ... ... 283
" —governs all creatures ... ... ... 284
" —protects " " ... ... ... 284
" —lies awake while all else sleeps ... ... 284
" —regarded by the wise as law itself ... ... 284
" —does the administering of law ... ... 284
" —of two kinds—(1) inflicted by the king and (2) inflicted by Death-God ... ... ... 284
" —makes all people happy, when rightly inflicted ... 284
" —destroys all things, when wrongly inflicted ... 284
" —if not inflicted,—the strong would roast the weak ... 284
" —evil effects arising from non—infliction of ... 285
" —absence of—would make Crows Eat sacificial Cake 285
" — " — " " dogs lick offering—materials 285
" — " — " lead to disappearance of rights of ownership 285
" — " — " " confusion among high and low 285
" — " — " make animals vie with Gods ... 285
" —all people kept under control by ... ... 286
" —fear of—makes the world subserve man's purposes ... 286
" —only when pressed by—*Devas* subserve the experiences of others 289
" — " —*Dānavas* " " " 286
" — " —*Gandharvas* " " " 286
" — " —*Rākshasas* " " " 286
" — " —*Birds* " " " 286
" — " —*Reptiles* " " " 286
" —fear of—keeps the Sun to his appointed task ... 286
" — " " Moon " " ... 286
" — " " Brahmā " " ... 286
" — " " Raini-God " " ... 286
" — " " Danavas from destroying the world 286
" —mistakes in regard to—would corrupt castes ... 287
" — " " " break all barriers ... 287
" — " " " lead to disruption of regions 287
" —evil effects of non—infliction of ... ... 287
" —dark and red-eyed—stalking about—destroys sins ... 388

Punishment— „ „ , saves people from being misled 288
„ — „ „ „ —provided Governor discerns rightly ... 288
„ —of two kinds· (1) inspiring fear, (2) bringing pain ... 288
„ —to be inflicted, with consideration of time and place ... 288
„ —is a tremendous force ... ... ... 289
„ —cannot be controlled by undisciplined minds ... 289
„ —destroys the king who swerves from duty ... 289
„ —wrongly meted out, destroys king ... ... 290
„ „ „ „ kingdom ... ... 290
„ „ „ „ all animals ... ... 290
„ „ „ afflicts sages and Gods ... 290
„ —to be meted out in kingdom and outside, all according to Law 291
„ —cannot be justly administered unless the king has assistants 292
„ „ „ if the king is demented ... 292
„ „ „ „ avaricious ... 292
„ „ „ „ has not his mind disciplined 292
„ „ „ „ is addicted to sensual objects 292
„ —can be justly administered by king who is pure ... 293
„ — „ „ „ true to this word 293
„ — „ „ „ acts legally ... 293
„ — „ „ „ has good and wise assistants 293
Pure—things to be regarded as,—until defilement is definitely known 153
„ —water collected on ground is ... ... ... 154
„ —Artisan's hand is ... ... ... ... 155
„ —Merchandise spread out for sale is ... ... ... 155
„ —Food begged by the student is ... ... ... 157
„ —Woman's mouth is ... ... ... ... 157
„ — „ „ „ —for kissing ... ... 157
„ —Bird is—in dropping fruits ... ... ... 157
„ —Calf is,—in causing flow of milk ... ... 157
„ —Dog is,—in catching prey ... ... ... 157
„ —Flesh of animal killed by dog is ... ... ... 158
„ — „ killed by carnivorous animals is ... ... 158
„ — „ „ „ Chandala is ... ... ... 158
„ —cavities above the navel are ... ... ... 158
„ — „ below „ —not ... ... ... 158
„ —Bodily excretions, not ... ... ... 158
„ —Flies—to touch ... ... ... ... 159
„ —Waterdrops „ ... ... ... ... 159
„ —Shadow „ ... ... ... ... 159

Pure—Shadow—even of Chandala and other things ... ... 159
" —Cow " ... ... ... ... 159
" —House " ... ... ... ... 159
" —Sun's rays " ... ... ... ... 159
" —Earth " ... ... ... ... 159
" — " —passed over by Chandala also ... ... 159
" —Air " ... ... ... ... 159
" —Fire " ... ... ... ... 159
Purification—immediate, for king on throne ... ... 120
" — " for those killed in battle ... ... 120
" — " " riot ... ... 120
" — " " by lightning ... 120
" — " " by king ... ... 120
" — " those who die for Brāhmana ... 120
" — " " for cows ... 120
" — " those for whom king desires it ... 120
" —Means of ... ... ... ... 123
" —by touching water, for the Brāhmana ... ... 123
" — " conveyance and weapons for—the Kṣattriya 123
" — " goad or leading strings, for the Vaishya ... 123
" — " stick, for the Shudra ... ... 123
" —for corporeal beings by wisdom ... ... 126
" — " " —Austerity ... ... 126
" — " " —Fire ... ... ... 126
" — " " —Food ... ... ... 126
" — " " —Clay ... ... ... 126
" — " " —Mind ... ... ... 126
" — " " —Water ... ... ... 126
" — " " —Smearing ... ... 126
" — " " —Wind ... ... .. 126
" — " " —Action ... ... 126
" — " " —Sun ... ... ... 126
" — " " —Time ... ... ... 126
" — " " —Time, predominantly ... 126
" —of wealth, most important ... ... ... 127
" —by only clay or water is not enough ... ... 127
" —of learned men—by Tolerance ... ... 128
" —by Liberality ... ... ... ... 128
" —of secret sinners, by repeating sacred texts ... 128
" —of those learned in Veda, by Austerity ... ... 128
" —in general, by clay and water ... ... 128
" —of Rivers—by current ... ... ... 128

Purification—of woman of unclean mind—by menstruation ... 128
,, —of Brahmans—by renunciation ... ... 128
,, —of limbs—by water ... .. — 129
,, —of mind—by Truthfulness ... ... 129
,, —of soul—by learning and austerity ... ... 129
,, —of cognition—by knowledge ... ... 129
,, —of substances ... ... ... ... 132
,, —of igneous substances, by ash, water and clay ... 132
,, —gems ,, ,, ... 132
,, —things made of stone ,, ,, ... 132
,, —metals ,, ,, ... 132
,, —meaning of ... ... ... ... 133, 137
,, —of stainless golden vessels—by water ... ... 138, 140
,, —of what is produced in water— ,, ... ... 138
,, — ,, made of stone— ,, ... ... 138
,, — ,, ,, —silver if not encased by, water 138, 140
,, —of metallic vessels—according to Shaṅkha ... 139
,, —of copper—by ackaline substances ... ... 140
,, — ,, —water ... ... ... 140
,, — ,, —liquid acids ... ... ... 140
,, —Iron—by alkaline substances &c. ... ... 140
,, — ,, — ,, ,, ... ... ... 140
,, —Brass— ,, ,, ... ... ... 140
,, —Pewter ,, ,, ... ... ... 140
,, —of Liquids—by throwing out a small quantity ... 14·
,, —for solids—by sprinkling ... ... ... 141
,, —for wooden things—by scraping ... ... 141
,, —by water,—of sacrificial cups and spoons ... ... 143
,, —by hot water—of *charu* ... ... ... 143
,, — ,, —*sruk* ... ... ... 143
,, — ,, —*Sruva* ... ... ... 143
,, — ,, —*sphya*, .. ... ... 143
,, — ,, —winnowing basket ... ... 143
,, — ,, —cart ... ... ... 143
,, — ,, —Pestle and mortar ... ... 143
,, —of grains in large quantities—by sprinkling with water 144
,, — ,, —in small quantities—by washing with water ... 144
,, —determined by time, place &c, ... ... 144
,, —of leather—like that of clothes ... ... 145
,, —Tree—barks— ,, ... ... 145
,, —Vegetables, roots and fruits—like grains ... ... 145
,, —Kusha, chowries, grass, cane, hair, feathers ... 145

Purification—Silk—by saline earth ... ... ... 146
,, —Woolen stuffs— ,, ... ... ... 146
,, —Blankets—by soapberries ... ... ... 146
,, —Amshupaṭṭa—by *Bel fruit* ... ... ... 146
,, —Linen—by white mustard ... ... ... 146
,, —Jute—stuff— ,, ... ... ... 147
,, —Conch—shells—by ,,—and cow's urisne or water ... 147
,, —Horn ,, ,, ,, ... 147
,, —things made of Bone— ,, ,, ... 147
,, —of Tusk—by white mustard, cow's urine or water ... 147
,, —grass—by sprinkling ... ... ... 147
,, —Straw— ,, ... ... ... 147
,, —House—sweeping and sprinkling ... ... 147
,, —Earthenware—re-baking ... ... ... 147
,, — ,, — ,, i. e. placing on fire ... 148
,, —of land, by cleaning, sweeping &c. ... ... 149
,, —of food eaten by birds— ... ... ... 149
,, — ,, smelt by cows—by scattering earth ... ... 149
,, — ,, Blown upon ,, ... ... 149
,, — ,, sneezed at ,, ... ... 149
,, —,, defiled by hair ,, .. ... 149
,, —,, insects ,, ... ... 149
,, —none for food eaten by cows or crows & vultures ... 150
,, —of things defiled by untouchable substance by application of earth and water until smell and stain disappear ... 151
,, —of excretory orifices done by earth and water ... 160
,, —earth and water to be used for- -of bodily excretion ... 160
,, —of urinary organ—by applying earth ... ... 161
,, —anus ,, ... ... ... ... 161
,, —Hands ,, ... ... ... ... 161
,, —for students, double of that for Householders ... 162
,, —Hermits—treble ,, ,, ... ... 162
,, —Renunciates—quadruple ,, ,, ... ... 162
,, —after passing urine ... ... ... 162
,, —after stools ... ... ... ... 162
,, —before reading Veda ... ... ... 162
,, —before taking food ... ... ... 162
,, —bodily—by sipping water ... ... ... 163
,, —for one who touches an unclean thing, when carrying something 168
,, —for vomitting ... ... ... ... 168
,, —purging ... ... ... ... 168
,, —after taking food... ... ... ... 168

Purification—after sexual intercourse ... ... ... 168
Purity—necessary for all ... ... ... ... 268

Q

Quantity— large'—meaning of ... ... ... ... 144

R

Rain-god—keeps to his appointed task, through fear of Punishment. 28
'*Rājan*'—does not stand for the *Kṣattriya caste* .. ... 273
,, —denotes one who has been annointed and possesses rights of sovereignty ... ... ... ... 273
, stands for 'Lord of Men' ... ... ... 273
*Rākṣasas*—subserve other's purposes only when pressed by punishment 286
,, —honour those who wait upon elderly persons ... 295
Realm—dependent on king ... ... ... ... 320
Reasoning—science of—to be learnt by the king ... ... 301
Revenue—sources of—to be discussed by the king with ministers ... 313
Ruler—Punishment is ... ... ... ... 283
Renunciate—on death—pierces the sun ... ... ... 338
*Rajjudāla*—bird—forbidden ... ... ... ... 16
*Raktapaṭa*—heretic ... ... ... ... 105
Restriction—always subservient to an enjoined act ... ... 36
Rice—sesamum—needlessly cooked—forbidden ... ... 8
'Renouncer of the Veda' ... ... ... ... 260
,,—what he should do? ... ... ... ... 270
,,—destroys sin ... ... ... ... 271
,,—attains highest state ... ... ... ... 271
Renunciation—does not mean absolute Inaction ... ... 214
,,—means surrendering of all notions of 'I' and 'mine' ... 214
,,—after third part of life ... ... ... ... 217
,,—exact time for ... ... ... ... 220
,,—procedure of ... ... ... ... 221,223
,,—to be taken to by whom ... ... ... 269
,,—not for shudra ... ... ... ... 272
Renunciate, Wandering Mendicant—duties of ... ... 217
,,—not fixed time for becoming ... ... ... 217
,,—after body has fully ripened ... ... ... 218
,,—one should become—after passing from stage to stage &c &c. 218
,, ,, ,, after having paid off all three 'debts' ... 219
,,—not to dwell in one place for a second night ... ... 221
,,—to go forth after performing Prājāpatya sacrifices giving away all belongings ... ... ... ... 223

Renunciate to go forth after repositing the three fires in himself ... 223
,,—Brāhmaṇa to go as ... ... ... ... 223
,,— ,, after giving fearlessness to all living beings ... 224
,,—to depart from home ... ... ... ... 225
,, ,,—equipped with sacred things, kusha &c. ... 225
,, ,,—indifferent to pleasures ... ... ... 225
,,—to wander about alone ... ... ... 226
,,—to be without fires and without home ... ... 226
,,— ,, disinterested ... ... ... ... 226
,,— ,, steady ... ... ... ... 226
,,— ,, silent ... ... ... ... 226
,,— ,, calmly disposed ... ... ... ... 226
,,—marks of—Potsherd, Tree-roots, course cloth, solitude, equality towards all ... ... ... ... 227
,,—not to rejoice at death or life ... ... ... 228
,,—to await his time ... ... ... ... 228
,,—to place foot sight-purified ... ... ... 228
,,—to drink water cloth-purified ... ... ... 228
,,—to utter speech truth-sanctified ... ... ... 228
,,—to act with pure mind ... ... ... ... 228
,,—to patiently bear harsh words ... ... ... 229
,,—not to insult any one ... ... ... ... 229
,,—not be inimical towards any one ... ... ... 229
,,—not to retort in anger ... ... ... ... 229
,,—to bless when cursed ... ... ... ... 229
,,—never to utter untrue word ... ... ... 229
,,—to remain sheltered in spirituality ... ... ... 230
,,— ,, disinterested ... ... ... ... 230
,,— ,, free from longings ... ... ... 230
,,— ,, with himself as his sole companion ... ... 230
,,—to wander forth seeking bliss ... ... ... 230
,,—never seek alms by portents &c. ... ... ... 230
,,— ,, ,, ,, ,, Astrology and Palmistry ... ... 230
,,— ,, ,, ,, ,, counsel and discussion ... ... 230
,,—not to go near houses inhabited by hermits ... ... 231
,,— ,, ,, filled by Brāhmaṇas ... ... ... 231
,,— ,, ,, other mendicants ... ... ... 231
,,—shall keep hair, nails and beard clipped ... ... 231
,,—shall be equipped with staff and water-pot ... ... 231
,,— ,, constantly wander about ... ... ... 231
,,— ,, be self-controlled ... ... ... 231

Renunciate shall be not cause pain to any living being ... ... 231
,,— ,, have non-metallic vessels free from holes ... 232
,,— ,, clean vessels by water ... ... ... 232
,,— ,, have gourd for vessels ... ... ... 232
,,— ,, wooden vessels ... ... ... ... 232
,,— ,, Earthenware ,, ... ... ... 232
,,— ,, vessels of split cane ... ... ... 232
,,— ,, go for alms only once ... ... ... 232
,,— ,, not seek for a large quantity ... ... 232
,, —by collecting alms becomes attached to objects of sense ... 232
,,— ,, go for alms when no smoke is issuing ... ... 233
,,— ,, ,, ,, ,, when the pest'e has ceased to ply ... 233
,,— ,, ,, when fire is extinguished ... ... ... 233
,,— ,, ,, ,, people have eaten ... ... ... 233
,,— ,, ,, dishes have been removed ... ... ... 233
,,—not to be sorry at refusal of alms ... ... ... 233
,,—not rejoice at getting alms ... ... ... 233
,,—shall have only what suffices for sustaining life ... 233
,,—shall remain free from all attachment ... ... 233
,,—disdain honorific presents ... ... ... 234
,,—shall eat a little food ... ... ... ... 234
,,— ,, sit in solitude ... ... ... ... 234
,,— ,, restrain senses ... ... ... ... 234
,,— ,, destroy love and hatred ... ... ... 235
,,— ,, not injure living beings ... ... ... 235
,,—becomes fit for immortality ... ... ... 235
,,—shall reflect upon the conditions of men arising from their acts ... ... ... ... 235,236
,,— ,, ,, ,, pain caused by Demerit ... ... 238
,,— ,, ,, ,, Happiness due to Merit ... ... 238
,,— ,, recognise by meditation the Higher Self ... ... 238
,,—to walk after scanning the ground ... ... 240
,,—shall perform expiation for unintentional injuring of living things ... ... ... ... ... 240
,,—shall destroy all taints by Breath-suspension ... ... 242
,,— ,, ,, sins by concentration ... ... ... 242
,,— ,, ,, attachments by abstraction ... ... 242
,,— ,, ,, by contemplation, all attributes that are not independent i. e. *Sattva*, *Rajas* and *Tamas* ... 242
,,—by meditation recognise the Inner Soul ... ... 246
,,—not fettered by acts, when equipped with true insight ... 247

Renunciate—when not equipped with true insight, falls into cycle of births ... 247
,,—attains the position of the Highest, by abstention from injury ... 248
,,— ,, ,, by non-attachment to sense-objects ... 248
,,— ,, ,, by acts prescribed in Veda ... ... 248
,,— ,, ,, by vigorous austerities ... ... 248
,,—to discard the body ... ... ... ... 251
,,—reaches the eternal Brahman ... ... ... 253
,,—obtains lasting happiness ... ... ... 253
,,—becomes freed from 'pairs of opposites' ... ... 254
,,—reposes in Brahman ... ... ... ... 254
,,—to recite *Vedānta* texts ... ... ... ... 257
,,—shakes off evil ... ... ... ... 259
,,—attains the supreme Brahman ... ... ... 259
Results mentioned in Vedic texts ... ... ... 249
Roads—three kinds of ... ... .. ... 393

S

Sacrifices—at—cakes were made of Eatable beasts and birds ... 27
,, —meat to be eaten at—is Divine law ... ... 43
,, —at '*Sitā*'—sacrificial animal to be made of butter or flour 47
,, —'*Khañjikā*' ,, ,, 47
,, —'*Chaṇḍikā*' ,, ,, 47
,, —'*Sitā*', '*Khañjikā*' and 'Chaṇḍikā' have no sanction in the Veda ; are based on usage only ... ... 48
,, —Animals created for ... ... ... 49
,, —Conducive to the well-being of world ... ... 49
,, —Killing at—is no 'killing' ... ... ... 49
,, —Animals to be killed for ... ... ... 52
,, —at—cups and spoons cleaned by water ... ... 143
,, —at—*Sruva*, *Sruk*, *Sphya*, etc. cleansed by hot water ... 143
*Samānodaka*—relationship—ceases when the origin and name become unrecognisable ... ... ... ... 73
*Samvarta*—referred to ... ... ... ... 107
*Saṅga vidyā* ... ... ... ... ... 374
*Sapiṇḍas*—impure, at death, for ten days ... ... ... 70
,, —relationship—as bearing on Impurity ... ... 73
,, — ,, ceases with the seventh degree ... ... 73
,, — ,, extends among persons of the same family ... 73
,, —includes six ancestors and six descendants... ... 73
,, —degrees—to be counted from the person from whom the two lines bifurcate ... ... ... ... 74
,, —relationship—between Brāhmaṇa and Kṣattriya and Vaishya 74

*Supiṇḍas*—,, of Kṣattriya with Brāhmaṇa extends to three degrees only 74
,, —within the pale of one's own caste—extends to seven degrees in the case of every caste ... ... ... 75
Satī—not recommended ... ... ... ... 178
Self-control—necessary for all... ... ... ... 268
Sexual intercourse—no sin in—being the 'way of living beings' ... 64
,, ,,—abstention from—conducive to great results ... 64
Shaṅkha—quoted ... ... ... ... 156
Shēlu—forbidden ... ... ... ... 7
Shatapatha-Brāhmaṇa quoted ... ... ... 220
Shlcshmātaka—forbidden for all ... ... ... 7
,,—,, hermit ... ... ... 201
Shrāddha—animals to be killed at ... ... ... 52
,,—none for suicides ... ... ... 108
,,—,, one intentionally exposing himself to danger ... 109
Shūdra—amenable to laws relating to meat-eating ... ... 32
,,—dead body of—to be carried by southern gate ... 117
,,—purified by touching stick ... ... ... 123
,,—not to carry dead body of Brāhmaṇa ... ... 125
,, ,, ,, Kṣattriya or Vaishya ... ... 125
,,—purificatory *āchamana* for ... ... ... 163
,,—should shave once a month ... ... ... 164
,,—food of—to consist of leavings of the twice-born ... 164
,,—not entitled to four stages ... ... ... 272
,,—obtains the rewards of all stages by *service and begetting children* 272
,,—entitled to Householdership only ... ... ... 272
*Shukta*—artificially soured substances—forbidden ... ... 14
Silk—cleaned by saline earth ... ... ... 146
Sin—means of removing ... ... ... 241
*Smṛti*—authority restricted—does not extend to signification of words 60
Soul—purified by Learning and Austerity... ... ... 130
,,—,,—reaches Brahmic regions ... ... ... 130
Soured substances—forbidden ... ... ... 13
,,—among—curd alone permitted ... ... ... 14
Sparrow—forbidden ... ... ... 16
Starling—forbidden ... ... ... 16
*Sthānāsanābhyām*- - ... ... ... 206
Steadiness—necessary for all ... ... ... 268
Straw—cleansed by sprinkling ... ... ... 147
Student—during pupillage—shall not make water-offerings ... 104
,,—carrying the dead body of his Teacher and other elders does not

suffer from impurity in regard to his observances ... 117
Student—Purifications for—double of that for Householder ... 162
,,—Life-long—not only incapable men ... ... 221
Substances—purification of ... ... ... 66
Suicide—not entitled to Shrāddha ... ... ... 109
,,—forbidden of widow ... ... ... 178
Shrotriya—not to be taxed ... ... ... 362
,,—not to be allowed to suffer ... ... ... 363
,,—should be provided with fair living ... ... 363
,,—,, protected ... ... ... 363
,,—augments king's life and kingdom ... ... 363
Science of Government—based upon induction ... ... 302
,, ,, —to be supplemented by Science of Reasoning and Science of Politics and Science of the Soul ... ... 302
Science of Government—to be learnt by the king ... ... 301
,, ,, ,, —relates to Daṇḍa, Ruling ... ... 302
,, ,, ,, —Reasoning ,, ,, ... ... 301
,, ,, ,, —soul ,, ,, ... ... 301
*Sarvartugam*— ... ... ... ... ... 326
*Shāstra*—in the sense of Law ... ... ... ... 311
Sacrament—stands for the 48 Rites of Conception and the rest ... 274
Sages—afflicted, if king swerves from duty ... ... 290
*Shūdra*— ... ... ... ... ... 285
Senses—to be subdued by king ... ... ... 303
*Smṛtis*—do not sanction control, by king, of religious acts ... 280
Sleeping—during the day—to be shunned by king ... ... 304
,, ,, ,, —explained as *procrastination* ... 305
Slandering—to be avoided by the king ... ... . 305
Soul—science of—to be learnt by the king ... ... 301
*Shūra*—defined ... ... ... ... ... 311
Solar orb—Piercing of—meaning of ... ... ... 339
Soma—king is ... ... ... ... ... 277
*Sudās*—king—perished through want of discipline ... ... 300
Sun—keeps to his path, through fear of punishment ... ...
*Sumukha*—king—perished through want of discipline ... ... 300
Surety—of the Law of Four Stages—Punishment is ... ... 283
Status—defined ... ... ... ... ... 311
*Sūrya*—King created out of ... ... ... ... 275
,, —king is ... ... ... ... ... 277
State—to be discussed by the king, with his Ministers ... 313
,, —defined—as consisting of Army, Treasure, City, Kingdom. 314

State—highest secrets of—to be discussed by the king with the learned Brāhmaṇa ... ... ... ... 315
Stores and Mines—Ministers in charge of ... ... ... 317
*Sthāna*— ... ... ... ... ... 314
Seeking shelter—of two kinds ... ... ... ... 381
Superintendent of Towns to supervise the work of other officers ... 357

T

Tale-bearing—to be shunned by king ... ... ... 305
Tantra—prescribing killing of animals—is modern ... ... 55
Tax—fiftieth part on gold ... ... ... ... 361
„ „ cattle ... ... ... ... 367
„ —8th, 6th or 12th—grains ... ... ... 361
„—6th— Trees ... ... ... 362
„—„ Meat ... ... ... 362
„—„ Honey ... ... ... 362
„—„ Herbs ... ... ... 362
„—„ Clarified butter ... ... ... 362
„—„ Perfumes ... ... ... 362
„—„ Poisons ... ... ... 362
„—„ Flowers ... ... ... 362
„—„ Fruits ... ... ... 362
„—„ Roots ... ... ... 362
„—„ Leaves ... ... ... 362
„—„ Vegetables ... ... ... 362
„—„ Grass ... ... ... 362
„—6th part on Skins ... ... ... 362
„—„ Earthenware ... ... ... 362
„—„ Stoneware ... ... ... 362
„—„ Cane ... ... ... 362
„—not to be lievied on Shrotriya ... ... ... 362
„—to be levied by king—on business ... ... ... 853
„—one day's work per month, as—from artisans, mechanics and Shudras364
Test—of ministers ... ... ... ... 312
„—*re* virtue ... ... ... ... 312
„—*re* wealth ... ... ... ... 312
„—*re* love ... ... ... ... 312
„—*re* fear ... ... ... ... 312
„—of ministers—deprecated by some ... ... ... 313
Threefold Science—Brāhmaṇas learned in—to be attended upon by the king ... ... ... ... 297
„ „ ... ... ... ... 298

Threefold Science to be learnt by the king ... ... ... 301
Time—source of purification ... ... ... ... 126 127
Ṭiṭṭibha—forbidden ... ... ... ... 15
Treachery—to be shunned by the king ... ... ... 305
Treasury—constituting the State ... ... ... 314
Triad—to be learnt by the king .. ... ... 301
,,— stands for Three Vedas ... ... ... 301
Tonsure—during first year—optional ... ... ... 68
Twilight prayers ... ... ... ... 297
Truthfulness—necessary for all ... ... ... 268
Treasury—dependent on king ... ... ... 320
Tusks—cleansed by white mustard, cow's urine or water ... 147
Twice-born person—to cremate his wife's body with the sacred fire 184
,,—after giving away the sacred fire to his dead wife, may marry and kindle the fire again ... ... ... 184,185
,,—should never omit the fire-sacrifices ... ... 185
,,—accomplished student, after Householdership, should dwell in the forest ... ... ... ... 187
,,—seeking Liberation without paying 'Three Debts' sinks downwards ... ... ... ... 222
,,—from whom no danger accrues to any living being, is free from all evil ... ... ... ... ... 225

U

Umbrellas—won in battle—belong to the person winning them ... 344
*Upavīta* ... ... ... ... ... 332,333
Urinary organ—cleansed by Earth ... ... ... 161
*Usṭa* part of village ... ... ... ... 358
*Utpavana*'—explained ... ... ... ... 141

V

'Vaishya—purified by touching goad and strings ... ... 123
Vālmikī—Rāmāyaṇa—referred to ... ... ... 197
*Vashiṣṭha*—quoted ... ... ... 23,145,148
*Vāstuka*—unfit to be eaten ... ... ... ... 86
Vegetables—Purification of—by water ... ... ... 145
Vessels—sacrificial—purified by water ... ... ... 143
Veda—is the refuge of the ingnorant ... ... ... 258
V,, — ,, for those desiring Immortality ... ... 258
*Veda-sanyāsika* ... ... ... ... ... 260
*Vivaraṇa*—quoted ... ... ... ... 97
*Vaishravaṇa* ... ... ... ... ... 276

*Varuṇa*—king created out of ... ... ... ... 275
,, —king is ... ... ... ... ... 277
*Vashiṣṭha* ... ... ... ... ... 296
*Vāyu*—king created out of ... ... ... ... 275
,, —king is ... ... ... ... ... 277
*Veṇa*—king—perished through want of discipline ... ... 299
*Vittesha* ... ... ... ... ... 276
*Vinaya* ... ... ... ... ... 300
*Vishrāmitra* ... ... ... ... ... 301
Vices—Ten—to be shunned by the king ... ... ... 303
,, —Eight—,, ,, ... ... ... 303
Vice—more harmful than death ... ... ... 310
Vices—Ten, springing from love of pleasure—enumerated ... 304
,, —Eight arising from anger—enumerated ... ... 305
,, —Among—arising from love of pleasure,—Drinking, Dice, Women and Hunting are the most precious ... ... 307
,, —Among—arising from anger—assault, cruel speech and Misappropriation of Property are the worst ... ... 307
Vidūratha—king—struck by his queen with weapon hidden in her hair ... ... ... ... ... 371
Villages—each—to be placed unde- a lord ... ... 354
,, —troubles to be reported by village-lord to the lord of ten villages ... ... ... ... 355
,, —lords—gradation among—of ... 1, 10, 20, 100, & 1000 355
,, —lord to secure for taking supplies from the villages ... 355
,, —lord of Ten—to enjoy 'Kula' or part of village ... 355
,, —lord of Twenty— ,, 20 Kulas ... ... 355
,, —lord of 100—one entire village ... ... ... 356
,, — ,, 1000—one Town ... ... ... 356
,, —work of lords of—shall be inspected by one minister ... 356
Vyapṛti ... ... ... ... ... 241
Vyāsa—permits eating of fcıbidden fruit, in vayā ... ... 41

## W

Wages—and emoluments of servants ... ... ... 359
Wandering Mendicant—(see under '*Renunciate*')
,,—listless—to be shunned by king ... ... ... 304
War—of two kinds ... ... ... ... 378
,, —details of ... ... ... ... ... 390
,, —army dependent on minister of ... ... ... 320
,, —and peace—depend on ambassador ... ... 320
,, —the last resource of kings ... ... ... 336

Water offering—none for suicides ... ... ... 109
" " —women joining heretics ... ... ... 110
" " — " that are too free ... ... ... 100
" " — " who injure child in their womb ... ... 110
" " — " injuring their husband ... ... 110
" " — " drinking wine ... ... ... 110
" " — " for incendiaries ... ... ... 107
" " — " keepers of baths ... ... ... 107
" " — " professional mourners ... ... 107
" " — " none for persons born in in vain ... 104
" " — " born from intermixture ... ... 104,105
" " — " addicted to asceticism ... ... 104
" " — " those killed by kings ... ... 106
" " — " " " horned and fangled animals ... 106
" " — " who have abandoned themselves ... 104,106
"—purifies limbs ... ... ... ... 128
"—collected on ground is pure, if sufficient to allay cow's thirst ... 154
" " "—until contaminated ... ... ... 154
" " in canals " ... ... ... 154
Wine—no sin in drinking—being the 'way of living beings' ... 64
" —abstention from—conducive to great rewards ... ... 64
" —drinking by Brāhmaṇa, discussed ... ... ... 114
" —permitted for women ... ... ... ... 116
" —prohibition—applies to the entire Brahmaṇa—caste ... 116
" —prohibited for Brāhmaṇa males and females ... ... 111
Wisdom—described ... ... ... ... 289
" —necessary for right discernment of humand ends ... 289
Wealth—won in battle belongs to winner ... ... 344
Women—to be shunned by king ... ... ... 304
" —a pemrlitions Wice ... ... ... ... 307
" —gambling worse than ... ... ... 306
" —more harmful than Hunting ... ... ... 303
" —won in battle, belongs to winner ... ... 344
" —joining heretics—not entitled to offerings ... ... 110
" —injuring child in womb " " ... ... 110
" — " their husband " " ... ... 110
" —drinking wine " " ... ... 110
" —who are too free " " ... ... 110
" —purificatory *āchamana* for ... ... ... 163
Woman—duties of ... ... ... ... 171
" —not to act by herself ... ... ... 171
" —no independence for ... ... ... 171,172

Woman—in childhood, dependent on Father ... .. 172
,, —in youth ,, husband ... ... 172
,, —in old age ,, sons ... ... 172
,, —should never seek separation from Father ... ... 172
,, ,, ,, ,, husband ... ... 172
,, ,, ,, ,, sons ... ... 172
,, —departing from Father, Husband or Son, makes both families disreputable ... ... ... 172
,, —should be always cheerful ... ... ... 172
,, — ,, alert in household work ... ... 172
,, — ,, keep utensils clean ... ... ... 172
,, — ,, be closefisted in spending ... ... 172
,, —to attend upon her husband throughout life ... ... 172
,, —shall not disregard her husband even after his death ... 173
,, —giving away by the father is the source of ownership over 174
,, —sacrificial offerings at the marriage of,—only conducive to good luck ... ... ... 174,175
,, —Husband is the sole imparter of happiness', for ... 175
,, —should aways serve her husband, even though he be imperfect 176
,, —no separate sacrificing for, ... ... ... 176
,, —no observances for, ... ... ... ... 176
,, —becomes exalted in heaven, by attending upon her husband 176
,, —should never do anything disagreeable to her husband ... 177
,, —should never even mention the name of another man, after her husband's death ... ... ... 178
,, —to macerate her body by living on fruits etc after her husband's death ... ... ... ... 178
,, —suicide forbidden for ... ... ... 178
,, —being '*sati*' not obligatory for ... ... ... 178
,, —to take to spinning etc., if not provided for by her husband before his death ... ... ... 179
,, —to remain patient, till death ... ... ... 180
,, — ,, chaste ,, ... ... ... 180
,, — ,, self-controlled till death ... ... 180
,, —faithful to a single husband acquires excellent uncrit ... 180
,, —even though childless, need not marry again ... 180
,, —*Niyoga* meant for, only under order of elders ... 181
,, —Goes to heaven, even though childless by remaing firm after widowhood ... 181
,, —should not, for getting by a child, disregard her husband wedding another ... 182
,, —for, second husband not ordained ... ... 182

Woman—child begotten of second man does not serve the purposes of, 182
" —by rejecting her husband and marrying another becomes disgraced ... 182
" —'remarried' contemptible ... ... ... 182
" —failing in duty towards husband, becomes a jackal ... 183
" — " " " tormented by filthy diseases ... 183
" —*not* failing in her duty towards husband called 'good' ... 183
" — " " " attains her husband's regions ... 183
" —good, when keeping thought, word and speech well—controlled. 183
" — " " " " obtains excellent fame ... 183
" —duties of, summed up ... ... ... 183
" —of good behaviour, dying before her husband, to be cremated with the sacrificial fire along with the sacrificial implements ... 184
Woman's mouth always pure ... ... ... 157
Wood—cleansed by sprinkling ... ... ... 147
Wooden articles—cleansed by sprinkling ... ... ... 147
Woolen stuffs—purified by saline earth ... ... ... 146